







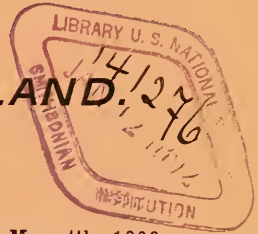
2

2713

THE
HISTORICAL & SCIENTIFIC SOCIETY
OF MANITOBA.

The First Recorder

— OF —
RUPERT'S LAND.



A Paper read before the Society on May 4th, 1890,

BY GEORGE BRYCE, LL. D.,

A Life Member of the Society.

TRANSACTION 40. SEASON 1890-91.

WINNIPEG ·

MANITOBA FREE PRESS PRINT.

1890.

THE FIRST RECORDER.

Sketch of "Judge Thom," an early Red River Celebrity.

Rev. Dr. Bryce, on 4th of May, in the City Hall, Winnipeg, before the Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba, read the following interesting biographical sketch of a remarkable man of Red River of old :—

In the winter of 1882, while staying in London, which the subject of this sketch used facetiously to call "the wen of the world," the writer frequently met a retired old gentleman often known as "Judge Thom," who had more than forty years before made his entree to Red River Settlement as first recorder of Rupert's Land. At the time of meeting in London the judge had entered upon his eightieth year. He was tall, and though walking with a slight stoop, was of commanding presence. He was what people usually call a man of marked individuality. His opinions were all formed; he had views on any matter that came up for discussion; and was very fond of a talk with a passing friend. In conversation with the old gentleman it would be at once noticed that he had a large fund of information, and to any visitor from Manitoba it was surprising to see how the lapse of 30 years' absence from the country had not effaced a line from memory in regard to the affairs of all the families of that time resident in Red River. In fact Judge Thom had a marvellous mind for details. Some would no doubt have called him loquacious, but to most he was a very interesting man. Dr. Thom's broad Aberdonian accent had not been greatly softened by his colonial residence, nor by his subsequent sojourn in London. In speech and ideas the Judge was a strong man, and it will be our pleasing duty this evening to give the outlines of his somewhat eventful life, which ended a little more than two months ago.

EARLY LIFE.

Adam Thom was born in Aberdeen on the 30th of August, 1802, and had the remembrance to the last of having seen in his third year the great rejoicing that took place after Nelson's great victory at the battle of Trafalgar, October 21st, 1805. Indeed Judge Thom was of opinion that a certain weakness of eyes, from which he suffered all his life, was a result of the illuminations that took place in connection with that great event. In the year 1819, young Thom being, as he himself says, "of the same age as Joseph in the pit on his way to the presence of Pharaoh," entered King's College, Aberdeen, where he was a successful student, and graduated by 1824 with the degree of Master of Arts. It was in the second year of his course at Aberdeen that he met with one who, far away on the plains of Rupert's Land, was to be

his intimate friend and companion, whom indeed he was to call his "alter ego." This was John McCallum, of whom we shall speak more fully and who it will be remembered founded the school, which became in time St. John's College in this city. Scotland was then as now sending up its young men to the great metropolis, which contains more Scotchmen than Edinburgh, and in 1825 both Thom and his fellow-student McCallum found themselves earning their bread there, the former in Woolwich and the latter in Blackheath

EMIGRATES TO CANADA.

About this time a great outflow of the British people was taking place to the new world. In the year 1831 upwards of 30,000 people left the British Isles for Canada. Overpressure of population and political discontent were no doubt the chief factors in this great emigration. In the following year a popular movement to Canada was headed in the south of England by Lord Egremont and three ships carried the Sussex colony to the St. Lawrence. To the enterprising mind of young Thom the opportunities said to be afforded by Canada were a great attraction, and so taking the last ship of the season (1832), the "Rosalind," from London, after a rough passage, the vessel even running aground at Anticosti in the St. Lawrence, the young adventurer reached Montreal. Carried away by the new world fever in the following year his friend, McCallum, also accepted the task, under the patronage of Rev. David Jones, the Hudson Bay chaplain at Red River, of founding a boarding school for the children of the Hudson Bay company officers and others at the headquarters of the company, and sailed by the company's ship early in 1833 to come by way of Hudson Bay to the scene of his future labors. Young Thom seems to have at once entered on the study of law in Montreal, and with such diligence, that according to his own account, having his time shortened by one year because of his degree, he was admitted into the profession of law in the year 1836.

A POLITICAL WRITER.

To any of Mr. Thom's friends it was evident that there was in him to the end of his life a strange restlessness of disposition. It agrees completely with this that he should not have settled down to the routine of a lawyer's life. His disposition led him to take great interest in public affairs. He was in mental characteristics something of an independent thinker, and yet his conclusions were usually rather staid and ordinary. His mental bias was evidently that of a radical, while his social

disposition led him to be somewhat subservient to prevailing ideas and customs. In method he was radical; in fact, he was conservative. It will be necessary to bear in mind this somewhat striking inharmoniousness to understand some of the episodes of his life. Affairs in Montreal at this time were in a strained condition. It was shortly before the rebellion of 1837. The British colony in Lower Canada held the reins of power; the French Canadians were in a highly dissatisfied state. Louis Papineau was stirring up his French compatriots. In his seditious career he came out boldly for Republican principles. "The time has gone by," said Papineau, "when Europe could give monarchs to America. The epoch is approaching when America will give republics to Europe." Now Adam Thom, though, no doubt, sympathizing with the just claim of the French Canadians for self government, was intensely British in feeling, and therefore entered with great ardour into the discussions then going on. Well educated, fond of society, which in Montreal was entirely under the control of the ruling powers; and with his career to make, the young lawyer threw himself into the wordy warfare, and wrote the letters signed "Camillus," remembered for many a day for their anti-French fervor and power. It is even said that for a time he occupied the position of editor of the leading English journal of Lower Canada, the "Montreal Herald." His prominence as a publicist naturally drew to him the attention of Lord Durham who arrived in Canada on his mission of pacification on May 29th, 1838. The brilliant Earl of Durham, who did more for Canada in the short six months of his stay in the New World than any other Governor-General in his full term, had the faculty of associating with himself men of the greatest ability. As to the great report, Justin McCarthy says of him in his "History of Our Own Times," "His policy for the Canadas was a great success. It established the principles of colonial government." With him on his staff Lord Durham had brought over as secretaries and assistants three men of exceptional ability—Charles Buller, who had been a member of the British House of Commons, the brilliant, though somewhat wayward Edward Wakefield, and Thomas Turton, a very clever barrister. To this group of able assistants the young lawyer Adam Thom was added, and in the train of the great Liberal statesman he seems to have returned to Great Britain in the autumn of 1838, where he spent the winter in London.

RECORDER AT RED RIVER.

In 1835 the Hudson's Bay company received back from Lord Selkirk's heirs the transfer of the district of Assiniboine, which had been sold to the Earl in 1811. As the population of the settlement had grown by this time to about 5,000 souls, it was deemed wise to have established some simple form of legal institutions. A council of fifteen members appointed by the Hudson Bay company met at Fort Garry on the 12th of February of that year and passed certain ordinances. Among

these was one dividing the settlement into four districts, and establishing a quarterly court of summary jurisdiction in each of these competent to deal with small amounts. Each of these courts was empowered to refer any case of doubt or difficulty to the Court of Governor and Council of Assiniboine, as the Red River Legislature and judicial body was called. The establishment of a court of appeal such as had been decided on, and the fact that the Governor of the colony was sometimes a trader and at other times a military officer led the company to consider the necessity of appointing a trained lawyer to adjudicate in such cases as might arise, and to give legal advice to the company in its complicated business. Alexander Ross argues at some length against the need of this, but his reasons show he had little comprehension of the principles on which alone communities can advance. Sir George Simpson had met the young lawyer and political writer in Montreal, and on the completion of his engagement with Lord Durham offered Mr. Thom the new judgeship then decided on, and the first recorder of Rupert's Land, or he is also called the President of the Red River Court, left England, came by way of New York and reached Fort Garry in the spring of 1839. Sir George Simpson was credited with great shrewdness in making the appointments for the Hudson Bay company. It is evident from the very considerable salary—£700 sterling a year—paid the new judge at a time when incomes were ridiculously low on Red River, as well as from the unanimous opinion of Ross, Dr. Mountain, Rev. John Ryerson, and James Hargrave, the historian of the Hudson Bay company, that Adam Thom was a man of decided ability, upright character, and very extensive reading. It would seem to one now that a lawyer who had practiced longer at the bar, and who had not been so pronounced as a publicist in Montreal, would have made a more impartial judge, but the fact that for ten years he administered law in the courts without complaint would seem to show that the troubles which arose in the later years of his judgeship arose rather from the inevitable conflict between the company and the people than from any fault of his.

HIS "ALTER EGO."

We turn aside for a little to look at the career of Mr. Thom's college friend, John McCallum, who, as we have seen, in 1833 came to Red River to establish what to-day has become St. John's college with its affiliated schools, and it may be premised that in him we have one of the truest and most practical men of the old Red River settlement. With the aid of his superior, Rev. Mr. Jones, buildings were erected between the southwest corner of the present St. John's churchyard and the river bank. In the year 1836 Mr. McCallum married the daughter of Chief Factor Charles, of the H. B. Co. The school steadily grew, and five years after its founding Rev. Mr. Jones returned to England and Mr. McCallum became head of the institution, so that when the old friends from Aberdeen met at Red River, the one,

Judge Thom, was the head of the legal, the other, McCallum, of the educational, interests of the wide extent of Rupert's Land. Originally the boarding-school had been begun under the auspices of the Church Missionary Society, but at the time of the visit of Dr. Mountain, Bishop of Montreal, to Red River in 1844, a change had taken place, for he says, "It is now conducted by Mr. McCallum on his own account with the help of an allowance from the company. It is really a nice establishment, and the premises attached to it have more neatness and finish than is common in young and remote settlements. The youths have a separate garden for their own amusement." Mr. McCallum had by his patience and industry taken such a hold on the community that on the visit of the

BISHOP OF MONTREAL

it was deemed advisable to ordain him, which event took place on 7th of July, 1844. Mr. McCallum's duties not only included the school but for the next three years the incumbency of the parish church, which they reckoned amongst its hearers all the people of Kildonan. Judge Thom had for several years taken up his abode at Lower Fort Garry, where his wife and children lived with him. In the year 1846 the British Government being in the midst of the contention with the United States over the Oregon question and probably on account of the enforcement of the company's claims thought it wise to send out the 6th Royal regiment to Red River. The Lower Fort being required for the troops Judge Thom was compelled to seek quarters elsewhere and seems to have lived, for a year, three or four miles 'his side of the f.r.t. In 1847 he purchased the house, then just built by Chief Factor Charles, in which the Bishop of Rupert's Land now lives, and which is well known as Bishop's Court. Judge Thom refers with peculiar pleasure to the changes which had made him "door neighbor" to his old friend, McCallum, "with nothing but a paddock between." The school was now at its height for there were in it more than fifty paying pupils, including girls. From it came A. K. Isbister, one of the most distinguished men born in Rupert's Land, and to the "McCallum school" members of the older generation of Red River settlers look back with fond affection. Sad indeed was it for education and religion on Red River that Mr. McCallum died in 1849. Judge Thom became his executor and Bishop Anderson, the first Bishop of Rupert's Land, arrived just in time to perform the funeral services of the worthy teacher.

ST. JOHN'S COLLEGE.

On Mr. McCallum's death the school immediately began to decline. Bishop Anderson was so busy with the other duties of his office that the institution was suffered to languish. In 1855 a reorganization was attempted, a number of the leading people of the country were formed into a college board, the name of St. John's college was chosen, and the coat of arms, with the beautiful motto "In Thy Light Shall we see Light," adopted.

In three or four years the want of success compelled the closing of the college. In 1865 the present Bishop of Rupert's Land arrived at Red River. The McCallum school buildings had become a ruin. On his leaving on his first journey in his diocese the bishop gave orders that they should be pulled down. This was partially done, but the central building was thought good enough to be preserved. It was accordingly spared, and those who have come to Manitoba even in recent years may remember the house occupied by the Rev. Samuel Pritchard—the remnant of the McCallum buildings. Bishop Machray refounded St. John's College in 1866, from which time it has had an ever increasing and prosperous existence. Mr. McCallum's widow and daughter, who are still living, invested a sum of money for St. John's college and the excellent anemometer, a good microscope and other instruments have been supplied from this source. Judge Thom always took a deep interest in St. John's college, being one of its honorary fellows and was also a benefactor of Manitoba college.

JUDGE THOM IN PUBLIC.

From his high position and public sympathies, Judge Thom became a most influential man in the Red River settlement. He had a marvellous gift of language, and in such a primitive society as that of Red River, was sure to be looked up to by many as an oracle. He was exceedingly approachable, and his ardent temperament led him to do all sorts of kind services for those who sought his assistance. When the bishopric of Rupert's Land was founded, he became the registrar; when the Kildonan church wanted a deed he drew it up, and made it so firm in its provisions that when changes were necessary a few years ago in the tenure they were very difficult to make. Though the agent of the Hudson Bay company, and therefore bound to carry out the policy of the company, as to not encouraging the entrance of too many religious bodies on Red River, he is said to have had a hand at the same time in framing the petitions forwarded to London by the Presbyterians of Kildonan. Rev. John Ryerson, on his visit to Red River in 1854, tells of his going down to Kildonan to hear a lecture from Judge Thom "On the state and progress of the Red River Settlement," and the hearer says that the subject was treated "with great elegance, beauty and ability." In the council held at Fort Garry the judge was a leading spirit, and we are told that by the people generally "his influence was regarded as disproportionately great." The council being looked upon as the instrument of the Hudson's Bay Company, it is quite evident that his being a ruling influence in that body would subject him to severe criticism by the people, and that to a certain extent his influence

AS A JUDGE

would be lost. As already stated, the relations of the settlers on the Red River to the Hudson Bay company had become very unsatisfactory. The company, by their charter, no doubt had a monopoly of the fur trade.

But the mass of the people being hunters, and finding it difficult otherwise to gain a living, hardly recognized this—and indeed the company had not enforced their claim. For some reason, according to some, on Judge Thom's advice—it was decided to enforce the right of company. Accordingly, in 1844, Governor Christie issued two proclamations, one of them requiring each settler before the company would carry any goods for him to make a declaration that for the past winter he had not, directly or indirectly engaged in the fur trade; the other proclamation required the writer of any letter, which was sent by post to write his name on the outside, and should he not have made the declaration required as to trading in furs then his letter must be deposited in the office, open, to be examined before being sent. These were tyrannical and severe enactments. Cases are cited in which settlers, traders, and even missionaries were caused much inconvenience and loss by these stringent regulations. The governor and the legal adviser, Judge Thom, naturally received the greater part of popular disapproval. The French half-breeds took the lead in the agitation against the company. A strange story is related as to the way in which the English half-breeds who had hitherto supported the claim of the company, came to throw in their lot with their French fellow-countrymen. A company officer had left his two daughters at Fort Garry to be educated. One of them was the object of the affection of a young Scotch half-breed, and at the same time of a young Highlander. The young lady is said to have preferred the Metis, but the fond parent favored the young Highlander. The Scotchman, fortified by the father's approval, proceeded to upbraid the Metis for his temerity in aspiring to the hand of one so high in society as the lady. As love ruined Troy so it is said this affair joined French and English half-breeds in a union to defeat the company.

THE SAYER AFFAIR.

During the five years after the publication of the proclamation a constant agitation was going on among the French. The leader of this uproar bore a name better known to the present generation as that of his son, Louis Riel the elder was born at Isle a la Crosse, and was the son of a French Canadian father, and a French half-breed mother. He was educated in Lower Canada, came to the Northwest to enter the service of the company, and was for two years a novice in the Oblate order. He afterwards built a water mill on the Seine, three or four miles from St. Boniface, made a canal nine miles long to feed it, and was married to one of the well known Lagimodiere family, and from this union sprang Louis Riel of rebellion fame. The miller of the Seine was a very capable man; had a great power over his fellow-countrymen; and was a born agitator. When popular feeling had been thoroughly roused it happened that in 1849 Guillaume Sayer, a French half-breed trader, bought goods intending to go on a trading expedition to Lake Manitoba. It was determined to arrest Sayer and three of his associates. This

was done, but Sayer only was kept in prison.

As the day of trial drew near the excitement grew intense. Governor Caldwell was known to be inflexible. Judge Thom, it was remembered, had written the famous "Anti Gallic letters" in Montreal; he was, moreover, said to be the director of the policy of restriction, and a strong Company man. The day of trial had been fixed for Ascension day, May 17th, and this was taken as a religious affront by the French. The court was to meet in the morning. On the day of the trial hundreds of French Metis, armed, came from all the settlements to St. Boniface church, and leaving their guns at the door of the church, entered for service. At the close they gathered together and were addressed in a fiery oration by Louis Riel. A fellow countryman writing of the matter says: "Louis Riel obtained a veritable triumph on that occasion, and long and loud the hurrahs were repeated by the echoes of the Red river." Crossing by way of Point Douglas, the Metis surrounded the unguarded court house at Fort Garry. The governor and judge arrived and took their seats at eleven o'clock. A curious scene then ensued, the magistrates protesting against the violence, Riel in loud tones declaring that they would give the tribunal one hour, and that if justice were not done, then they would do it themselves. An altercation then took place between Judge Thom and Riel, and with his loud declaration: "Et je declare que dis ce moment Sayer est libre"—drowned by the shouts of the Metis, the trial was over and Sayer and his fellow prisoners betook themselves to freedom, while the departing Metis cried out: "Le commerce est libre! le commerce est libre! vive la liberte." This crisis was a serious one. Judge Thom, at the suggestion of Sir George Simpson did not take his place on the bench for a year though he still held his position and his emoluments. It was the end of the attempt of the company to enforce its distasteful monopoly.

OTHER CASES.

The constitution of the court at Fort Garry made it quite possible for the recorder to absent himself and for the governor and associated magistrates to carry on the business. About a year after the Sayer affair a very complicated case arose in which what would be called the leaders of society at Fort Garry were involved. It was a quarrel of Company officials. Capt. Foss, staff officer of the pensioners, brought an action for defamation of character against Trader Pelly and his wife and two other persons for connecting his name dishonorably with the family of the gentleman in charge of Fort Garry. Governor Simpson and Judge Thom examined into the case privately, and on the occasion of the trial Judge Thom took his seat again as recorder, though apparently much to the displeasure of Governor Caldwell. After this, for a year with the approval of Gov. Simpson, the recorder did not sit. In 1851 Judge Thom was appointed clerk of the court with the same salary as formerly and so continued to act until the time of his departure for England. Records of other cases than

those mentioned are found to-day in proceedings. Up to the year 1849 the work done by Judge Thom seems to have been very satisfactory and efficient. Col. Crofton testified that in 1847 the legal business was done in a perfectly smooth and successful manner. In 1848 Judge Thom delivered judgment on the Calder case, involving the jurisdiction of the Hudson's Bay company, and that has been quoted with approval as an important opinion in the Supreme Court of Canada by a prominent Q. C. of this city.

RETURNS TO BRITAIN.

Fifteen years of service in the remote and isolated settlement of Red River had enabled the recorder to accumulate a handsome competence. His friend McCallum was dead, and the troubles between the company and the people made it disagreeable for the well abused judge to remain in his new world sphere. He accordingly resigned, and returning by way of York Factory sailed from that port in the company's ship "The Prince of Wales" on September 20, 1854, with his wife and two sons. On the vessel there was the Arctic explorer Dr. Rae, who had just found the first traces of Sir John Franklin; and also Rev. John Ryerson, who has left a written account of the voyage, which proved to be tedious and dangerous, taking nearly six weeks to London. In the second year after his return Judge Thom received the degree of LL.D. from his own university at Aberdeen in recognition of his attainments. He appears to have lived at Edinburgh and Torquay in what might seem to be his declining years, but removed to London in 1870 and took up his abode in his well known residence, 49 Torrington Square, a score of years longer. The family of his departed friend were a constant care to him. For them he always showed a passionate regard. A troublesome lawsuit with a leading banking house in London for misuse of his funds, worried him for years and ended in his losing the case.

HIS LITERARY TENDENCIES.

The Bishop of Montreal, on his visit to Fort Garry in 1844, mentions that at that time Recorder Thom "was deeply engaged latterly in Biblical studies." In 1821 at Aberdeen he had joined the Hebrew class, an extraordinary thing for an aspirant to the legal profession. But like numbers of great students he had become involved in the seemingly hopeless mazes of the interpretation of the prophecies of Scripture. In 1847 he completed for publication his work on the typical character of what he calls "Abraham's 430 years." An active mind like that of Judge Thom must have something on which to work. In not having enough to fill up his time and utilize his energies, he must have some abstruse line of study. His mind seems to have had a bent towards mathematics, and his inclination and probably early training led him to be a minute study of the Bible, even in the original tongues. As showing his bent toward figures, the writer remembers Judge Thom saying that he never got into a London omnibus—many of whose figures run up into

the thousands—without resolving the number into its factors, and combining them in every possible manner. Nothing delighted him so much as to get an appreciative listener and to refer for an hour at a time to the marvellous events of history and to show that they were not isolated, but were part of a great system of development.

HIS GREAT HOBBY.

His reverence and his mathematical bias at length settled on an idea which completely mastered him, and made him in his later years a perfect arithmetical enthusiast. There is lying before the society his large octavo work of 300 pages printed by Remington & Co., London, and which contains his elaborate theory. This work has his essay, which he calls "Emmanuel," in a "pentaglot miniature," i. e., in English, French, German, Italian and Spanish. In the preface it is stated that a lady, evidently one of the McCallum family had placed the means at his disposal for printing an edition for gratuitous distribution to friends and learned bodies. The dedication of this strange work runs thus:

"To
Miss E. J. M.,
The Self-denying Donor
of
Emmanuel's Polyglot Autobiography
To the Appropriate Libraries
All round the Globe."

An investigation of the work shows that his idea is that 33 and 34, which he in some way regards as the alternative numbers representing the length of our Saviour's life on earth, are normal units of all the great events of history. Of course, though he so thoroughly believed in his theory and in its very great value, yet it may easily be seen that it is only a series of arbitrary groupings and fanciful identifications. The wonder is that a mind of such strength could have wasted itself on a path so fruitless and so extravagant.

LAST DAYS.

In summing up the life of the first judge of Rupert's Land, it is evident we are dealing with a man of great activity and capacity. He was perfectly at home in the Greek and Latin classics; he was a Hebrew scholar, and well acquainted with our own literature. He was well versed in law, and gave his opinions with fullness and decision. An active newspaper writer in his earlier days, he always maintained a lively interest in public affairs. It was his misfortune to be crushed between the two strong forces of a great trading company's interest and the natural aspirations of a people after freedom. No doubt this wounded his proud spirit deeply and prevented him ever visiting the Red River again as he would have liked to have done. He was no trimmer; he was not even politic. He had strength of feeling and tenacity of purpose. Though somewhat difficult to work with yet he was open, and at heart kind and considerate. Passing away as he did on the 21st of February of this year, in his eighty-eighth year, in a quiet old age we may well drop a sympathetic tear to the memory of the honest old warrior.



THE
HISTORICAL & SCIENTIFIC SOCIETY
OF MANITOBA.

Surface Geology

— OF THE —
RED RIVER
— AND —

ASSINIBOINE VALLEYS.

A Paper read before the Society Jan. 22nd, 1891,

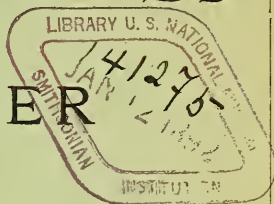
BY GEORGE BRYCE, L L. D.,

A LIFE MEMBER OF THE SOCIETY.

(The Author is much indebted in this paper to Mr. WARREN UPHAM, the American Geologist, in his private conversations, his published brochures, and his Report on Glacial Lake Agassiz published by the Canadian Geological Survey, 1890.)

TRANSACTION 41. SEASON 1890-91.

WINNIPEG:
MANITOBA FREE PRESS PRINT.
1891.



OLD LAKE AGASSIZ.

Surface Geology of the Red and Assiniboine Valleys.

Dr. Bryce Explains the Formation Existing in Manitoba by the Theory of Glacial Action.—Interesting Accounts of the Origin of Stony Mountain and Bird's Hill.

The lecture by Rev. Dr. Bryce before the Historical and Scientific Society Thursday attracted a large audience to the city hall. The chair was taken by Rev. A. B. Baird, and when the meeting was called to order, Rev. Dr. Bryce began his lecture on "Old Lake Agassiz," and the surface geology of the Red River and Assiniboine valleys, speaking as follows :

In the summer of 1887 there called upon the writer, in Winnipeg, a studious looking young man, whose address was given as Mr. Warren Upham, Somerville, Massachusetts. Mr. Upham said that with a companion he was engaged in examining and measuring the various ridges that on the slopes of Pembina Mountains, Tiger Hills and Riding Mountain are found so abundantly, rising one above the other. Mr. Upham explained the object of his visit, and said that the Minnesota geologists had been examining these ridges as far back as 1879, and that indeed Major Keating as long ago as 1823 had called attention to these marked surface features. The study of Mr. Upham and others including our own Canadian geologists has led to the unravelling of the mystery of our prairies and to-day we have reached geologic certainty on almost all essential points as to their formation.

THE ROCK HISTORY.

As well known even to the tyro, the rocks underlying the soil or drift deposit of Manitoba and the Territories are largely limestone and sandstones deposited ages ago. These were formed by the action of climate and water agencies, wearing down the rocks of the great Laurentian belt lying to the east of us in Keewatin and Northwest Ontario. Raised above the water, these rocks, chiefly limestone as found at Selkirk, Stonewall, and generally under our prairies, remained exposed to the action of the weather, and no doubt became honeycombed and loose, and easily removed for a considerable depth. We estimate that one hundred feet or more of this fragile rock thus removed lay over the site of Winnipeg. At length changes in the earth's climate took place, so that while at the time of the formation of these Silurian rocks there had been a high temperature and warm seas in which grew vast colonies of coral, in this later time

following the upheaval of the Rocky mountains, there came a period of great cold. It is not our work this evening to speak of the causes of this change, which took place in what is generally known as the glacial period, but simply to note the undoubted fact.

THE AGE OF ICE.

The beginning of this period of cold was probably not less than from 150,000 to 200,000 years ago. Gradually the land sloping then as now, to Hudson Bay, became covered with snow, and this became too heavy for the sun to melt, and thus rose great beds of ice such as we see in the bosom of the Rocky mountain valleys to-day. Century after century the ice built higher, and extended further south. It is believed that at some points there was a depth of from 6,000 to 10,000 feet of ice, and we know that the icy sway was continued as far south as the latitude 39° n, or nearly to St. Louis, at the mouth of the Missouri river. At length came a time when internal changes of the earth's crust banished the reign of winter for a while from much of this region, but again a second glacial period visited the earth, and the ice in great fields was a second time piled up. The departure of this second vast ice field is what left the surface of our prairies in their present condition; and the beginning of this latter period has been estimated at from 5,000 to 7,000 years ago. Mr. Upham's surmise is that the removal of the ice from the south of the Red river valley down to Hudson Bay may have been done in perhaps one thousand years. Others speak of longer time.

OLD LAKE AGASSIZ.

Some 250 miles south of Winnipeg, on the western boundary of Minnesota, a valley is seen 125 to 150 feet deep, with a width of about a mile and a half. This connects the valley of the Red river with that of the Mississippi, and here the drift of the water shed was cut through by a great river. The valley has been partly filled up again by tributary streams, but in the south end of it is Big Stone lake emptying into the Minnesota river, a tributary of the Mississippi, and in the north of it Lake Traverse running into the upper branch of the Red river. When the ice of the glacial period reached this point in its withdrawal there was no valley, but a lake began to form north of the height of land and bounded by the lobe of the

glacier. Still further north the glacier retreated and formed an ever enlarging sheet of fresh water, which at length found for the time being its outlet southward down the channel described, and deposited from the grinding up of the old Silurian limestones, and also of the hard Laurentian rocks of the east, the drift clay and the boulders in its vast moraines. It is to this wide sheet of water that in memory of the late Prof. Louis Agassiz, the first great upholder of the theory "that the drift was produced by land ice," the name has been given of the glacial "Lake Agassiz."

ITS BOUNDARIES.

Figure 1, gives the limits of the ancient lake at its greatest extent, and it will be seen that Lakes Winnipeg, Manitoba and Winnipegosis now occupy the bottom of the basin which was then of so great size. At the time when this wide expanse was pouring its waters down the Mississippi valley the depth of the lake where Winnipeg now stands was about 500 feet, and the waters laved a coast line high up the steep of Pembina Mountains, Tiger Hills and Riding Mountains to the west. To the east Lake Agassiz extended including the present Lake of the Woods, and spread even to the height of land bounding Rainy Lake. The northern limit was the great ice barrier itself, which was from year to year and century to century slowly receding. While the surplus waters were thus pouring from the southern outlet this place of exit was being gradually deepened, and thus standing for a few years at one level along the coast line one beach was outlined, and then as it receded another at the lower level was formed, and so on. At the same time in the period of highest water there seems to have been a gradual elevation of the coast line as well, arising from inner motions of the earth's crust, and from other causes. No less than

SEVENTEEN BEACHES

have been traced in Manitoba, formed during the time when Lake Agassiz was emptying southward. We have not time to name and describe all of these, but may notice one or two of the most remarkable. At the time when Lake Agassiz formed its first beach, its outlet was 85 feet above the present surface of Lake Traverse, or 1,055 feet above the sea, and its channel was cut through the height of land about 50 feet deep. The beach has been called by Mr. Upham the Herman beach. It is divided into several levels in Manitoba, but at one point its greatest height is attained on the road over Pembina Mountain between Morden and Thornhill in southern Manitoba where it is 1,258 feet above the sea. The second division of this highest or Herman beach is found on Tiger Hills about one mile south of the village of Treherne, and again appears in the well marked sand and gravel ridge one eighth of a mile north of the court house in the city of Brandon, while the same beach is seen some three miles west of the town of Neepawa. Thus from this winding coast line eastward extended the waters of the ice cold lake held in along the northern side by the great glacier

mass itself (fig. 1) The next lower beach formed when the waters of the lake had lowered about 25 feet, no doubt by the cutting down of the outlet at Lake Traverse. This is known as the Norcross beach; and so we might give the elevations and features of the fifteen other beaches whose existence as terraces on the slope of Pembina Mountains has been often pointed out to the writer by the farmers in the several western regions.

DIFFERENCE OF BEACH LEVEL.

One of the most remarkable features of the upper beaches of Lake Agassiz is the gradual ascent in the level of each beach. It is plain that if the lake theory of the formation of these beaches is correct, each beach should have the same normal level. But if raising a horizontal bar pointing north and south, greater upward pressure is exerted at the north end than at the other, the bar will slant upwards toward the north. Some earth pressure seems thus to have raised the north end of these beaches. In the highest or Herman beach it is found that taking its level at Lake Traverse, when Lake Agassiz emptied there, the beach line was from 1055 to 1045 feet above the sea, while at the international boundary line a point 224 miles further north, it was actually 1230 feet above the sea or 175 feet higher. But this elevating tendency in the north was very far from being a constant or steady rise. In the stages of the Herman beach toward its northern limit the elevation varied so that four fairly well marked stages of the Herman beach are traceable. Thus while the Herman beach only differed at the outlet of the lake between 1055 to 1045 feet above the sea, its lowest stage was 1175 feet above the sea at the international line i. e. 130 feet above the outlet level. Ten feet thus marks the variation at the outlet while no less than 45 feet is the difference caused by the northern elevation at the boundary line.

CAUSES OF BEACH ELEVATION.

There has been much discussion as to the causes of this upward motion in the northern end of Lake Agassiz. Probably no one cause entirely accounts for this. The following are the agencies suggested:

(1) The tendency shown by Mr. R. S. Woodward, of the U.S. Geological Survey, of the waters of a glacial lake to gravitate toward the ice sheet. In the case before us the ice sheet probably extended for 1000 miles north and north-eastward, and being from $1\frac{1}{2}$ to 2 miles in depth would have an enormous attractive power. This would raise the waters of the northern end of the lake, and in this way perhaps one quarter of the elevation that took place in the northern beach levels is accounted for:

(2) The re-elevation of the land as the ice belt receded to the north. The pressure from one to two miles' depth of ice would be so great, that according to some geologists a considerable sinking in the underlying earth's crust must take place, and then as the glacier mass melted the re-elevation of the depressed crust would result.

(3) At this period in the history of our earth there were great oscillations taking

place in the earth's crust. These were entirely independent of glacial forces, and if it is found that in other parts of the earth's surface independent crustal movements were going on at this time it will afford an additional explanation of the rise toward the north of these remarkable beaches.

THE WESTERN LAKE SASKATCHEWAN.

But while the great northern glacier was thus withdrawing and giving its waters to Lake Agassiz, to the west of it, beyond the barriers which held it in, other areas were being formed. As seen in fig. 1, an arm of Lake Agassiz ran up the Saskatchewan valley as far as the Elbow. Into the west of this, which is called the glacial Lake Saskatchewan ran the North Saskatchewan River, and into the southern end the South Saskatchewan. The Pasquia hills were the southern barrier for the lake.

LAKE SOURIS AND THE QU'APPELLE RIVER.

West of Turtle Mountain, which is found in fig. 1 on the international boundary and the Tiger Hills, was the glacial Lake Souris, also represented in fig. 1. From the southwest into this emptied what is now the upper part of the Souris River. Into the northern arm of this Lake Souris poured the upper part of the Assiniboine River, while into the west side flowed the mighty river that came down the Qu'Appelle valley. This Qu'Appelle River was at that time running out of the southern end of Lake Saskatchewan from the point we now call the Elbow, down the easily traced channel that leads into the great valley with its overhanging heights, the wonder of all visitors to the Qu'Appelle. Lake Souris had on our side of the boundary line effluents carrying its waters into Lake Agassiz. These were the Pembina river, which ran down the great gorges now so easily traced from the elbow of the Souris river, through Lang's valley, Pelican lake, Rock lake and Swan lake to the crest of Pembina mountains, where it emptied into Lake Agassiz. At a later period, at a point farther north, the Assiniboine river drained, as we shall see, Lake Souris into Lake Agassiz.

LAKE AGASSIZ EMPTIES NORTHWARD.

At length as the great ice belt receded to the north, the escaping waters ceased to find their way into Lake Traverse and the Mississippi. Northward channels to the sea of Hudson Bay were being found, though not those now followed by the Nelson river and its tributaries. During this northward flow, beaches continued to form on the shores of the lake as it sank from stage to stage. There are eleven of these that can be clearly traced in our territory.

MANITOBA BEACHES.

We may follow the course of one or two of these beaches by way of illustration, and thus be able to see the diminishing area of Lake Agassiz. One of them called the Gladstone beach crosses the International boundary line one and a half miles west of the Mennonite village of Blumenort, is again seen a mile east of Carman, crosses the C. P. R. near the Rat Creek bridge west of Burn-

side, and is traced half a mile east of Gladstone, being here found to measure 868 feet above the sea. Another notable ridge is that called the Stonewall beach. The main street of Stonewall crosses this beach. The sand and gravel at this point are only ten feet deep above the underlying limestone, which here rises in a swell above the surrounding country. Mr. Upham says:—

"Lake Agassiz, at the time of the Stonewall beach formation, probably extended on the flat Red river valley to a distance of about twenty-five miles south of the international boundary, being some fifteen feet deep at Emerson and Pembina, while over the site of Winnipeg its depth was about sixty feet."

The Morris beach is found about one mile east of this town, which is forty miles south of Winnipeg, crosses northwest to Starbuck, then northeast to Little Stony Mountain, passes between Stonewall and Stony Mountain, and then north along the west side of Lake Winnipeg a few miles from it.

TWO GREAT DELTAS.

When Lake Agassiz was in its higher stages the rivers running out of Lake Souris as shown in map 1, emptied the waters of the latter lake into the former. And just as we see Red River at the present time carrying its clayey sediment to slack water at Lake Winnipeg and depositing it in a delta, or as on Lake of the Woods the Rainy river brings down vast quantities of sand, which have been spread over the bottom of the southern half of the lake, and have formed along the shore thirteen miles of great sand hills or dunes, so the ancient tributaries of Lake Agassiz formed in the region of Manitoba two great deltas. To these we owe the sandy deposits along the boundary line made in the slope of the Pembina Mountains and the very marked feature of the country known as the sand hills west and south of Portage la Prairie.

THE PEMBINA DELTA.

Lake Souris, as mentioned, originally emptied its waters down Lang's valley and through several enlargements, and tumbling over the Pembina mountain the waters deposited their sandy freight in a delta extending twelve miles from north to south, and seven from east to west, to a depth of 200 feet. This lies mostly to the south of the Pembina river valley, as it is seen at present. The material of the delta is mostly sand and gravel, the gravel being chiefly limestone, but much of it is Cretaceous shale and of granitic and gneissic origin. The formation of the delta seems to have been very rapid and it must have accumulated in sand dunes fifty feet above the surface of Lake Agassiz. But soon the ice sheet receded and allowed Lake Souris to empty itself by way of the Assiniboine into Lake Agassiz, when the water ceased to follow Lang's valley and the period of formation of Pembina delta ceased.

THE ASSINIBOINE DELTA.

Few travellers on the C. P. R. from Portage la Prairie to Brandon but have noticed the remarkable range of sand hills through which the railway cuts its way. Many speculations have been indulged in as to their origin and

construction. Our glacial Lake Agassiz explains it all, and we learn that the Carberry sand dunes are the old delta of the Assiniboine river (Fig 2 A) as it poured forth from Lake Souris and emptied near the site of the present city of Brandon into the waters of the great lake. This delta is of much greater size than that of the Pembina river and was rather later in formation.

ITS LIMITS.

The sand and gravel of this great delta extend seventy-five miles east from the old shore of Lake Agassiz to where now stands Portage la Prairie, northeastward fifty miles to Gladstone, and southeastward, for eighty miles reaching to within nine miles of Carman. When this wide extent of delta material was carried down by the Assiniboine it was deposited on the lake bottom and rose in many places in shoals and low islands above the surface of the lake. The appearance of the sand hills near Glenboro and Cypress is very striking. This delta represents a

vast amount of erosive power on the part of the glacial streams and it has been calculated that the amount of material thus brought down is equal to twenty cubic miles.

THE ASSINIBOINE VALLEY.

The present valley of the Assiniboine is a deep cut through its own old delta, and made after the waters of Lake Agassiz had receded towards their present limits. The force with which the river fell into Lake Agassiz seems to have prevented the deposition of sand and gravel until the station of Douglas, on the C. P. R. is reached, a distance of twelve miles or more from the shore line, where the soil consists of boulder clay; or it is possible that part of the overlying sand of the delta may have here been cleared away by the river as it cut out its later channel. That it has gone on sinking its channel deeper and deeper, until the river runs in a valley 200 to 300 feet in depth is a very noticeable fact. The sands of the old delta have become the plaything of the elements. The fine sand driven about by every

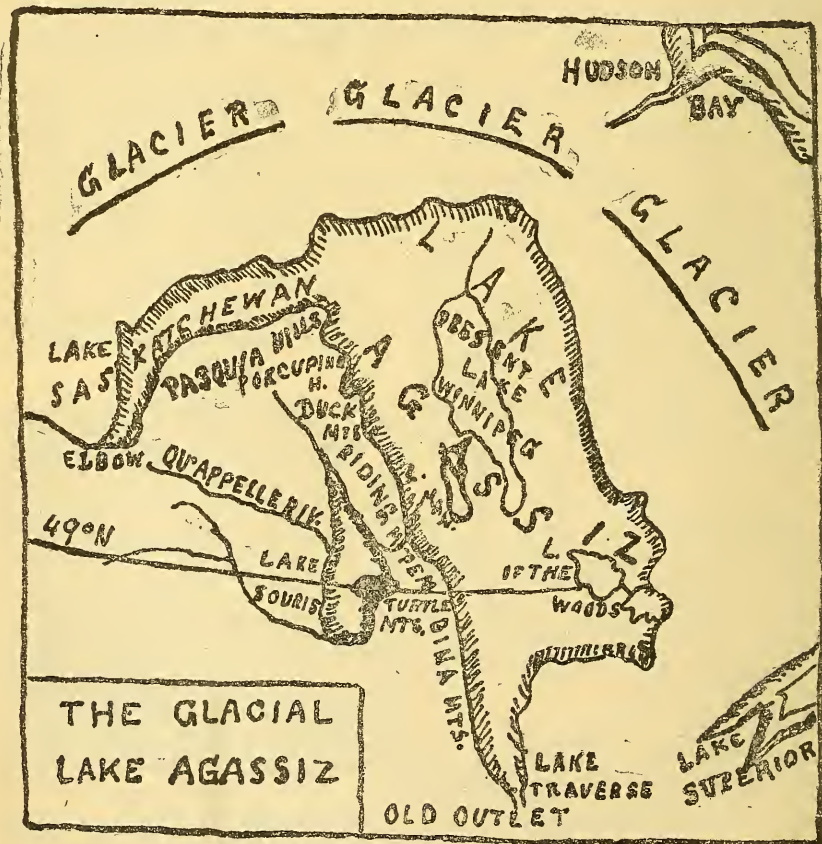


Fig. 1.

wind has assumed the form of dunes from 10 to 75 feet high, either covered with bushes and a few characteristic plants, or too barren to grow even sedges.

THE UPPER VALLEY.

West of Brandon new conditions obtain. After passing the upper end of the delta of Lake Agassiz, another series of delta deposits are reached near Griswold and thence westward, which represent a delta of the old Lake Souris into which the Upper Assiniboine fell. The geology of this region is rather difficult, as valleys are met with through which as the levels changed the waters flowed westward and afterwards eastward. Suffice it to say that this delta was remorselessly hollowed out and eroded by the voracious Assiniboine, which in this case as in that of the Lake Agassiz delta, like the old Saturn of the myths devoured its own children, and now runs with rapid current bordered for no less than 120 miles by the sand hills originally formed by its own waters.

THE GLACIER THEORY.

It but remains to state a little more fully the theory we have assumed as to the formation of our drift deposits. It will be noticed we have postulated a vast field of land ice of great depth, extending all over the north of this continent, even from Labrador to the Rocky mountains. It is just to state that this theory is not held by all. Sir William Dawson, in his "Handbook of Geology," published quite recently, advances the iceberg theory by which to explain our wide prairie drift deposits. He says: "There does not seem to be any evidence necessitating the supposition of a great northern ice cap or its southward progress." He admits, however, that "the glaciating agent of the Laurentian plateau in the Lake of the Woods region cannot have been other than glacier ice;" and further that there are difficulties yet unaccounted for by the theory of the glaciation and deposit of drift on the plains by icebergs." Now to all this we have to say that the thorough measurement and examination of the country by Mr Upham and other observers, and the satisfactory explanation of the chief phenomena seem to justify our thorough acceptance of the glacier hypothesis.

HOW ACCOMPLISHED.

When the great ice cap extending far south near the mouth of the Missouri began to melt it receded in lobes. The mass of northern ice kept a steady pressure southward. As the ice receded great masses of ground up rock were spread around the glacier lobes. The honeycombed and broken surfaces of Laurentian, Silurian and Cretaceous rocks were crushed to powder, or became sand or gravel; gushing out from beneath the glacier the muddy stream carried southward its load and deposited it in the slack water of lakes; along the edges of the retreating ice lobe vast ridges called moraines were formed as we see in any glacier in the Rockies, or Selkirks, or the Alps at the present day. And these formed the barriers containing lakes which resulted from the melting ice. The direction

of these great ridges with a general north to south trend shows this to have been the case, though there are exceptions. The great Missouri Coteau is the terminal moraine of the western glacier as it receded northward. The Tiger Hills, Riding Mountains, Brandon Hills, Arrow Hills and the lake are vast moraines.

STONY MOUNTAIN.

One of the memorials of this glacial formation remains to us in Stony Mountain northwest of Winnipeg. There rising 80 feet above the prairie is a mass of solid Silurian limestone. It used to be a puzzle to us to make out whether this was an enormous drift boulder or was a mass of the old Silurian bed in situ. Observations of late years to the east on Lake of the Woods and Lake Winnipeg have given us hundreds of cases of glacial striae running from N. E. to S. W. showing that the course of the glacier was in that direction. But to the west of Stony Mountain the striae are seen abundantly at Stonewall and are all from N. W. to S. E. We accordingly reason that while the tremendous glacier force was ploughing out and grinding up the rock surface and forming the material of our fertile soil the two forces met south of Stony Mountain, and left the mountain north of the point of impingement, as an archaeological monument of the glacial era. The gradual way in which the ground up material was spread by lake currents over the surface of the underlying rock is shown in Fig. 2, B, where a layer of boulder clay is seen covering the shale of which Pembina Mt. is composed.

BIRD'S HILL

The origin of Bird's Hill, a few miles northeast of Winnipeg, was an object of considerable speculation even to the old settlers. Its structure has been laid bare by the great excavations in it made by the Canadian Pacific and we are now able to make out its origin. It consists of a hill from one quarter to half a mile wide, and its crest is from 805 to 810 feet above the sea. The ridges of this great formation run in lines of gravel and sand from northwest to southeast; the hill called by the old settlers Oak Hummock to the south is a part of the same formation, whilst the prominent eminence called Moose Nose is but a continuation of it. Mr. Upham's explanation is that this whole group of elevations is composed of gravel and sand, irregularly bedded (Sec. Fig. 2 B), which appear to be deposits formed near the mouths of glacial rivers when they flowed between walls of ice and were here and there divided by ice islands. When the ice about and beneath melted, then the deposits sank to the bottom of Lake Agassiz here about five hundred feet deep. Formations such as this are known to geologists as "Osars." On the northern slope of Bird's Hill numerous granite and gneissic boulders are found, but few or none on its southern slope. Osars of this kind are found to the northwest of Winnipeg, in what was known to the old settlers as Grosse Isle, and in that not very far from it called by the later settlers Burns's Ridge. These likewise are

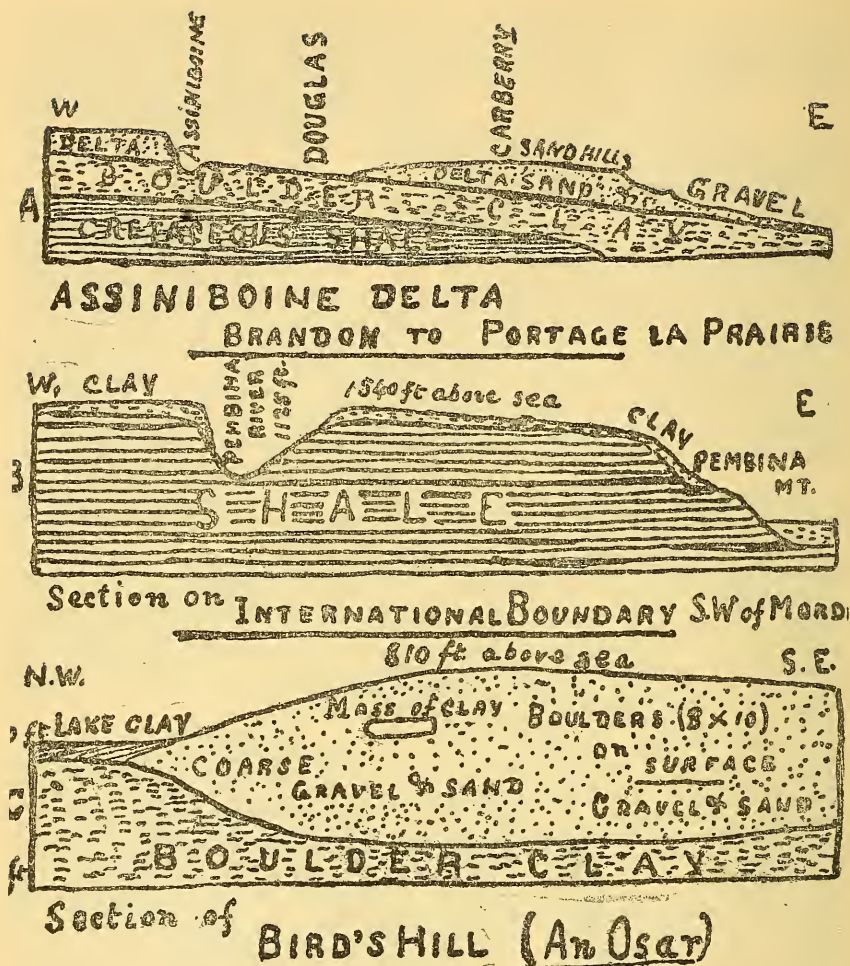


Fig. 2.

covered with boulders which became stranded from icebergs detached from the glacier lobe and floating southward over the surface of the lake.

DID MAN SEE THE GLACIERS ?

An important question is raised as to whether human beings were living on this continent during the glacial period. At the meeting of the American Association for the Advancement of Science, in Toronto in 1889, Prof. Gilbert stated that high up in the beaches of Lake Ontario, where the formation evidently belonged to the glacial period, remains of man in fire circles, burnt stones and the like were discernible in the gravels. In the records of the society for the same year is an article by Miss Franc C. Babbit, of Michigan, stating that she had found

buried in a gravel deposit at Little Falls, in Minnesota, a collection of quartz implements, not water worn and seemingly laid on the surface, at the time dry. These it is maintained by Miss Babbit must have been deposited at the time of the eighth beach in the formation of Lake Agassiz, and of course would seem to indicate the presence of man at that time. Dr. Winchell and the other geologists of Minnesota seem to agree in Miss Babbit's conclusion. The authority is also quoted of a young Canadian geologist, Mr. J. B. Tyrrell, well known to us in this city, to the effect that in Northwestern Manitoba at an elevation of 1,135 feet above the sea he has found sharp edged fragments of quartzite, chipped by human workmanship, inter bedded with the round

ed gravel of one of our Lake Agassiz beaches. We shall await with greatest interest evidence tending to show the presence of man so many thousand years ago at the foot of the receding glaciers.

CONCLUSION.

We have thus met most of the problems of our surface geology. It is by thought and discussion that we reach the truth in such matters. To my own mind the glacier theory of a drift seems absolutely conclusive, though it is possible our applications of it to explain certain phenomena may need further modification. I have to express my indebtedness to our Canadian geologists, but especially to Mr. Warren Upham, for working out so completely

our surface geology, the antecedent of the present state of things. We are wonderstruck at the magnitude of the forces which brought this about and say with Dr. Geikie: "Thus as imperceptibly as it began the long and varied ice age came to an end as it merged into the present geological period."

At the conclusion of the lecture a vote of thanks was tendered Dr. Bryce for the same, on motion of Rev. Prof. Hart, seconded by U. S. Consul Taylor. Interesting remarks on the theory and facts presented were made by the mover and seconder, and also by Messrs. W. G. Fonseca, Dr. Laird, of Wesley College, Mr. F. H. Turnock and others; and the lecturer kindly answered several questions proposed.

THE
HISTORICAL & SCIENTIFIC SOCIETY
OF MANITOBA.

Older Geology

— OF THE —
RED RIVER

— AND —
ASSINIBOINE VALLEYS.

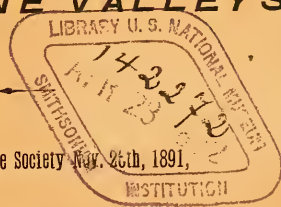
A Paper read before the Society May 26th, 1891,

BY GEORGE BRYCE, LL.D.,

A LIFE MEMBER OF THE SOCIETY.

TRANSACTION 42. SEASON 1891-92.

WINNIPEG:
MANITOBA FREE PRESS PRINT.
1891.



OUR STONY RECORD.

OLDER GEOLOGY OF RED RIVER AND ASSINIBOINE VALLEYS.

Dr. Bryce's Lecture Before the Historical Society.—Explanatory Diagrams.—Occurrence of Salt, Petroleum and Coal.—City Water Supply.

The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba met on Thursday evening, November 26th, 1891, in the city council chamber, to listen to a lecture on "The Older Geology of the Red River and Assiniboine Valleys." The lecturer of the evening was Rev. Dr. Bryce, who said :

Last year the writer had the honor of laying before the Historical Society many facts connected with the "Surface Geology" of these valleys. To night it may serve a good purpose to bring before the society, with as few technical details as possible,

has not been a stranger. Milton hits off this tendency with keen sarcasm in his description of Mammon :—

"Mammon, the least erected spirit that fell
From Heaven; for e'en in Heaven his look and thoughts

Were always downward bent, admiring more
The riches of Heaven's pavement, trodden gold,
Than aught divine, or holy else enjoyed
In visions beatific; by him first
Men als, and by his suggestion taught,
Ransacked the centre, and, with impious hands,
Rifled the bowels of their mother earth
For treasures."



FIG. 1.—North America: The Original Laurentian Island.

the characters of the underlying rocks. Our object is to describe, not so much the mineral or palaeontological features of these rocks, as to give their general relation to the contour of our prairies, the nature of the soil, and to the economic products of the precious metals, building stone, salt, petroleum, coal, natural gas, and water. There is a craze in some quarters for diverting capital into mad speculations, and for organizing companies to ransack the rocks for hidden treasure. To this even Winnipeg in the past

There is of course another standpoint than that of Milton. We need to know the powers and resources of the good, new country in our possession, and we are bound as Western Canadians to make the most of our opportunities. At the same time we ought to examine and develop our land intelligently; and the geologist may often prevent useless expenditure and prick the bubble of wild speculation.

THE LAURENTIAN ISLAND.

Below the drift or soil, with which our former lecture dealt, there are lime-

stone and sandstone beds; but below these again there is the hard Laurentian formation that we must describe. All of us know that when we go east of Winnipeg on the Canadian Pacific Railway, at a distance of forty or fifty miles from the city the prairie is left behind, and a rocky region is entered upon. This rocky region, which we call Laurentian, or in some places Huronian, appears as the surface rock first in R. 7. Tp. 9, some thirty miles east of Winnipeg. This is the furthest extent of the original island stretching from Labrador, north of the great lakes, for more than 1,600 miles, and reaching its western limit at the point named. This formation runs northward along the east shore of Lake Winnipeg and then to the Arctic Sea. See (Fig. 1)

The vast wilderness represented by the dark portion of the diagram is the oldest part of the North American continent, and consists of beds of granite, greenstone, Labradorite, trap, and crystalline limestone. These after being deposited were hardened by a metamorphic process through intense heat; by great pressure they have been bent and twisted. Out of such rocks, hard as they may be, the soil as also the limestones and sandstones of our prairies have been made by the wearing down by streams, and by atmospheric and other agencies. From this island the hard rocks sloped away in all directions, and for us, hundreds of feet below the spot where we are standing to-night became the rocky ocean bed, on which were deposited the limestones and sandstones which we are more fully to describe. The above diagram represents, as we have said, the Laurentian island, the dotted outline being that of the present continent of North America. If priority of formation gives any claim to the continent, Canada has the advantage of her American cousins to the south, in owning the whole of the original Laurentian island.

LAKE WINNIPEG BASIN.

Of exposed rocks, lying upon the Laurentian foundation the lowest are those of the basin of Lake Winnipeg. Many parts of the west shore of the lake are solid rock, uncovered by drift. This west coast has been well observed. An early observer, Dr. Richardson (1851) examined it on his way to the Arctic sea. By this geologist the rock was fixed as Bird's-eye limestone. Sir Henry Lefroy, for the Royal Society, also visited this shore. The best description of it yet given is that by Professor H. Y. Hind, in his report of 1857 to the Canadian government; and, by the way, this report, though made so early, is one of the most reliable sources of information we have of the Northwest. Prof. Hind describes the sandstone layers at Grindstone Point, and also the limestone, which he declares to belong to the Chazy division of rocks. Recently Mr. J. B. Tyrell, of the Canadian Geological Survey, has explored the lake and published notes on its geology. Lake Winnipeg is now definitely known to be a broad trough hollowed out by glacial action, on the east shore consisting of the hard granite and conglomerate of the Laurentian, and on the west in its lower rocks of the Calcifer-

ous, and probably Potsdam series, now classed as Cambrian rocks lying upon the Laurentian.

RED RIVER EXPOSURES.

Along the banks of the Red river in the cuttings made by streams and in quarries, beds of limestone are exposed. One of the most notable of these exposures is the quarry at East Selkirk. Near Lower Fort Garry there are also extensive limestone deposits, and the limestone has been burnt here, and shipped as lime to Winnipeg. Toward the upper end of St. Andrew's parish another rock locality may be noted. The limestones along the river are often buff colored, and as they contain a good deal of magnesia belong to the Dolomitic series. They are of the same age as the Trenton rocks of Ontario, and probably include series corresponding to the Utica shale as well. These rocks have been examined with some care by Messrs. J. H. Panton and A. McCharles, members of this society, and by other local geologists.

STONY MOUNTAIN AND STONEWALL.

Stony Mountain is the most interesting geological monument in the Red River Valley. It is some twelve miles northwest of Winnipeg, and is an outlier of limestone beds, sixty or seventy feet high, on its west side showing a steep escarpment. Its stone has been extensively quarried for building stone and for making lime. The rock in view is of two kinds—the upper forty feet or so on being tested is found to be a dolomite, while the lower is a red limestone, colored by iron. The red layer abounds in fossils, containing coral remains and a great number of ancient bivalves (Brachiopods). One exceedingly hard and quite thin, flinty layer is seen running along the escarpment. This will not burn into lime. The accepted explanation as to the history of Stony Mountain is that it is the survival of the vast beds of rock worn away by the glaciers; and when the two lines of glaciers, one from the northwest, the other from the northeast, met, they left Stony Mountain behind as the island remains at the junction of two rivers. About five miles northwest of Stony Mountain is the village of Stonewall, where there are quarries. This spot is considerably higher than Stony Mountain, so that between the two is the trough ploughed out by the old N. W. glacier. At Stonewall is perhaps the finest example of glaciated rock with which we are acquainted. The glacial striae are seen on the rock surface, wherever the drift, here only eight or ten feet deep, is removed. Mr. J. H. Panton, of this society, has worked out the Stony Mountain and Stonewall geology, and while with all others he makes the lower Stony Mountain beds to be of Hudson River horizon, he is inclined to regard the higher strata here, as well as the upper Stonewall beds, as Niagara limestone. Certainly the lithological characters of these deposits incline one to this opinion. It is somewhat interesting to notice that the rocks underlying our fertile prairies along the Red River are much the same as those below the soil in the part of Ontario stretching down to Ottawa from the Laurentian axis which crosses the St. Law-

rence at Kingston, and those west of the same axis to Hamilton.

THE ROSENFELD BORING.

Perhaps the most useful operation we have had for obtaining an accurate knowledge of our Red River valley rocks was the boring conducted by the Canadian Pacific railway in 1885 at Rosenfeld Station, 60 miles southwest of Winnipeg. By the use of a percussion drill, after boring a little more than a thousand feet, the Laurentian foundation was reached. The logbook kept by the drilling party has enabled the geologists to make out a complete section of the limestone and sandstone rocks, such as we have from no other source. It is true that these rocks at this point are thicker than had been supposed, and there are grounds for

the higher rocks extended over the whole valley and basin, and that some mighty agency hollowed out this vast Silurian and Cambrian trough. Undoubtedly this powerful agent was the great glacier or ice sheet of Lake Agassiz. The whole valley shows signs of this denuding and crushing power in the striae which are observed. The fine drift deposit or soil which covers the rocks on our Red River prairies, if examined with the microscope will be seen to be largely of limestone rocks ground down to powder, as well as crushed rocks from the Laurentian area. The erratics or boulders found in this drift are simply larger fragments of these same rocks. Much of the material which was dug up and hurricd along, no doubt, went down the glacial lake, and was carried away by the Mississippi,

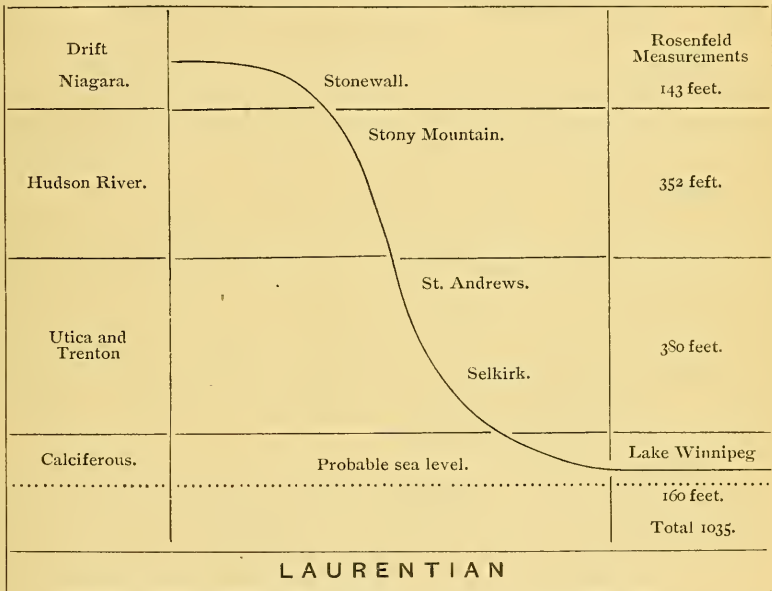


FIG. 2.—Silurian and Cambrian Rocks of Red River.

thinking that as we come northward to Winnipeg they will not be so thick. The revelations made by the drill quite fit in with the geological observations made of the Stony Mountain, Red River, and Lake Winnipeg exposures. It is now possible to make out a general view of the rock formations from the boundary line to the basin of Lake Winnipeg. Figure 2 is an attempt at this, showing the rocks of the various ages, and their localities as observed in this valley and basin. It is based chiefly on Dr. G. M. Dawson's article (Transactions Royal society, 1886).

OUR INFERENCE.

From the facts indicated in the above diagram, it may be inferred, that at one time

into which the Red River then flowed. What the surface of the Laurentian, on which the later rocks rest, may be, is unknown to us. Probably it is not flat like our prairies, but is diversified by what were once great granite ridges which had lakes lying between them.

CHARACTER OF THE ROCKS.

We ought all to be familiar with the character of the rocks from the several exposures mentioned, for the limestones are largely used as building stones in our better buildings. The stone is rather pretty with its mottled varieties of yellow and white, and is at places very hard, being rather Dolomitic in composition. No doubt its greatest defect is the presence in it of fossils which prevent it chiselling

well. The fossils are largely of coralline formation and suggest to us that in Silurian days these rocks were a vast coral reef, and that a tropical climate then prevailed in our northern latitudes. Our limestone in former days was used for headstones, as may be seen in St John and Kildonan cemeteries, but it is ill suited for that purpose, being neither sufficiently hard nor homogeneous. The same thing applies to our volunteer monument erected by the people of the city, and to the Seven Oaks memorial placed in position last summer by the Historical Society. It will no doubt be thought unpatriotic to say that for such purposes our Red River stone is not suitable.

THE ASSINIBOINE ROCKS.

When it is remembered that the word Assiniboine means in Cree the "Stone river of the Sioux," it might be supposed it would be a favorite hunting ground for geologists. And yet this is not the case. While here and there there are gravel beds and boulders at the rapids, the rocks are generally heavily covered with drift. At Burnside, some seventy miles west of Winnipeg, on the Canadian Pacific Railway, on the banks of what is still known as Rat Creek, a diamond-drill was set going in 1874, (see Geological Survey reports, 1874 5,) and the boring revealed rocks of a higher horizon than any we have yet seen. These have been made out to be Devonian, but there is at this point a very thin layer, and this, strange to say, has no Silurian below it, but lies immediately on the Laurentian. To the north west of this point, on the lakes, Devonian rocks have been described by Mr. Tyrell and other geologists. To the west of this we reach the foot of the escarpment marked by the S. E. to N. W. trend of the Pembina, Riding and Duck Mountains. This escarpment marks the eastern edge of the second great prairie steppe, which lies one, two or more hundreds of feet above our Red River prairie level. This upper level has underlying rocks of a still higher horizon, and rocks with which as Canadians we had no acquaintance till we came to the Northwest. Figure 3 may show the sequence of rocks and their localities.

ITS MEANING.

In Fig. 3 it will be noticed, that at two different stages a gap is marked. This is the case in the lower instance at Burnside. Here the borers found, after penetrating 103 feet of drift, beds of Devonian rock 42 feet thick, lying directly on the hard Laurentian (or Huronian). It does not of course follow that everywhere in this region the Silurian rock should be missing as in the case before us. The Laurentian rock struck in boring at Burnside is nearly as high above the sea as the top of the drift at Winnipeg, so that there was evidently a great ridge of Laurentian rock, at this point, standing up as an island or cliff in the old Silurian ocean. Another gap will be noticed between the Devonian and Cretaceous. Here should have been the Carboniferous rocks, containing the coal measures, and the deposits of the New red sandstone period. No doubt the explana-

tion of their absence is, that during those ages when the Nova Scotia and Pennsylvania great coal beds were being formed in the swamps, this region was an island standing above the ocean. It will be seen also that in the Upper Cretaceous rocks occur the deposits of coal, from which are sold in Winnipeg large quantities of Galt Mine coal, while in the Laramie just above these are found the coal beds of the Souris River, which promise to give us cheaper coal of fair quality.

THE CONTOUR OF THE WESTERN COUNTRY.

These underground revelations which we have been enabled to make on the first prairie level, may be embodied in a diagram (Fig 4) showing the relation of the Lake of the Woods, the trough of the Red River, and the Burnside rocks. This figure indicates, taking a section of the country running in direction E. S. E. from Burnside, through the Rosenfeld rocks, and then to the south end of the Lake of the Woods, an enormous Laurentian trough. It shows also that while the Laurentian at Lake of the Woods is 1,060 feet above the level of the sea, this fundamental bed descends in the course of 115 miles to a depth of 265 feet below the sea level at Rosenfeld, or in all 1,325 feet, and rises again at Burnside, 70 miles away, to 700 feet above the sea. The probabilities, as has been said, are, that at Winnipeg the trough is not so deep. It seems highly probable that between the city and Lake Winnipeg there runs from east to west below the Silurian and Cambrian a ridge of Laurentian (or Huronian) rock connecting Burnside and the old Laurentian island, lying to the northeast of us. It may be explained that in the northern half of the Lake of the Woods there occur the metalliferous rocks now called Huronian. We have preferred to use the well known term Laurentian rather than Archæan, which some are now employing to include both Laurentian and Huronian.

PRECIOUS AND USEFUL METALS.

It may be well now to discuss the economic products of the region under consideration. It is evident that if we are to seek for gold and silver this must be done by going eastward toward Lake of the Woods, or on the east of Lake Winnipeg. Many claims have been taken up on the Lake of the Woods, companies formed, and reducing works at Rat Portage begun. From assays made by Mr. Hoffman, the Government analyst at O. tawa, and by others, it is quite certain that there are gold and silver in that region. A number of assays have been made of rock from that district for nickel, but so far as known to the writer without result. As to iron, the deposits on Lake Winnipeg in the rocks lie near the base of the Cambrian, and are very large. Many specimens of Hematite, seemingly of excellent quality, have been exhibited. A good deal of trouble has arisen in the development of our mines from the dispute between the Dominion and Ontario Governments as to the title of the land. Our great lack, however, is that of capital to develop these mineral resources. Probably the requisite means must come from Britain or the United States, for it is unwise to divert

the limited means at the disposal of our people from legitimate business to this precarious industry.

BUILDING STONE

In the possession of the Historical Society are three collections of the building stone of the Red River valley. These almost all belong to the limestone rocks we have been describing, which are of Trenton and Hudson River age. While this stone is perhaps our only present resource, it is plainly rather unsuitable for finer kinds of work. Sandstone also is found at Grindstone Point on Lake Winnipeg, but it is rather brittle. Some marbles occur on Lake Manitoba, and it is altogether likely that as our northern lakes and water courses are explored building stone of superior quality will be obtained.

occur, and in the Rosenfeld boring a great flow of brine was struck. From these indications we can infer that, though the rocks are not visible on account of the drift, salt bearing strata run across the country from Lake Manitoba, east of Poplar Point, east of Oakville, and near the town of Morris. Of course the lower rocks, may have brine filtered through them from above, where the upper rocks are salt bearing. This was actually the case at Rosenfeld, where the strongest flow of brine was met below the Trenton. The force of the brine at Rosenfeld was so great that it rose in a pipe eighteen feet above the surface of the prairie. This Rosenfeld salt was examined by Mr. Hoffman, of Ottawa, and was declared to contain paying quantities of excellent salt. Indeed the old Fort Garry

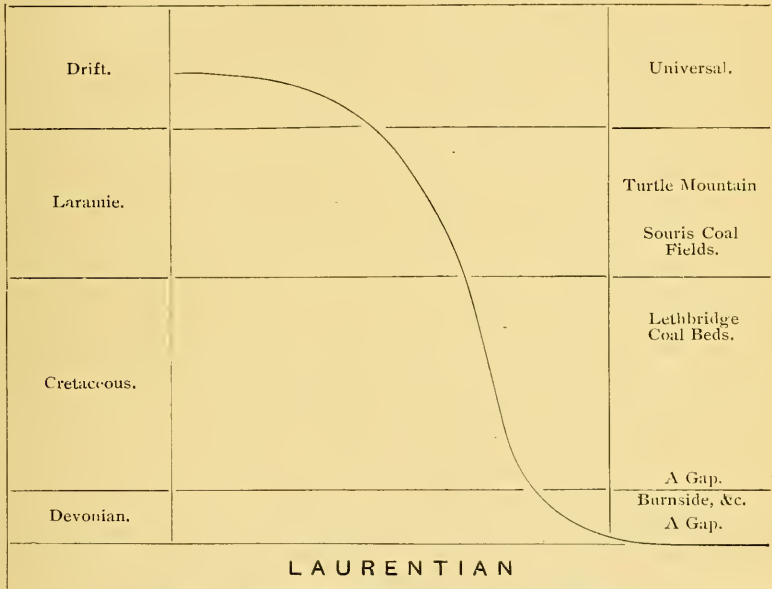


FIG. 3.—Rocks on Assiniboine and Tributaries.

SALT.

Judging by the occurrence of salt in Western Ontario and looking at our Silurian rocks we should not expect it to occur until we pass some distance west of Stonewall, where as we have seen what appears to be the Niagara limestone is found. Salt in Ontario and New York state is found in the Onondaga or Salina formation lying above the Niagara. Seventy years ago as we learn, there were salt springs known near Pembina. The nearest salt springs to Winnipeg city are in the valley of Riviere Sale, a few miles this side of the railway station of Oakville on the Northern Pacific Portage branch. Other springs are found on Lake Manitoba, while near the Marais river, some 55 miles south of the city well known springs

salt, which was sold twenty years ago, though black with impurities, was of good quality. In old Red River days, a manufactory of salt was carried on from 25 salt wells on Lake Winnipegosis by James Mookman for the Hudson Bay company. The old price was 12 shillings sterling a bushel. No doubt salt making will become one of our industries, but to compete with eastern salt it will probably have to be worked with saw-mills on Lake Manitoba and Lake Winnipegosis, as is done in the Saginaw district of Michigan, where the refuse from the mills is utilized for providing a fuel without cost.

PETROLEUM.

The great value of petroleum to the country, and the fact that on the Mackenzie river

there are petroleum springs, and large areas of maltha or mineral tar, has led to the speculation, even among geologists, that coal oil might be found in our province. In the east, petroleum is found in the Middle Devonian, or Erian, as it is now beginning to be called. Accordingly it is impossible that petroleum should be found east of Lake Manitoba. As, however, Devonian rocks occur, as we have seen, at Buraside and at a number of places on Lakes Manitoba and Winnipegosis, it would seem worth while to search for petroleum in that western region. Companies have been formed, one especially, of which the writer remembers, to bore for oil in the Lake Dauphin district. Theoretically it is right enough to examine this region thoroughly, but surface indications and the opinion of practical miners should be taken as well.

COAL.

The first determined effort to seek coal in Manitoba was made nearly twenty years ago, when a party of the Geological survey spent a summer in the Swan Lake district on the slope of Riding Mountains. Here geology held out hope in the gap between the Devonian and the Cretaceous where the Carboniferous rocks of Eastern Canada and the United States are found. The search proved vain. But in 1872 Dr. G. M. Dawson, the geologist accompanying the boundary expedition, came upon coal beds upon the Souris river. The writer remembers well a company of Winnipeg gentlemen shortly after taking coal claims at the Souris. The coal was unfortunately classed as poor lignite, and was rather despised. As the west was opened up it began to dawn upon explorers that Northwest coal had some value in it. It was found that the "Galt mine" at Lethbridge was of Cretaceous age, and indeed of the same horizon as the famous Nanaimo coal on Vancouver Island. The beds of the Pembina Mountains escarpment seem of the same age, but are of deep sea origin. It was noticed that the Laramie beds lying in the neighborhood of Blackfoot Crossing contained good coal, and the Souris beds proved to be of the same age. The beds on Turtle Mountain, which is another deposit of Laramie age, also contain a fair coal. Some years ago Mr. Hugh Sutherland brought a scow load of coal down the Souris from the coal region, and in another season the railway will carry this coal all over Manitoba. The exposure on the Souris river is one of remarkable thickness, and is very accessible. No doubt as the seam is penetrated the coal will improve in quality.

NATURAL GAS.

A visit of the writer last year to Indiana gave him an excellent opportunity of seeing the importance and uses of natural gas as a fuel and light-producer. Great use is being made of it in some parts of Ohio, and it has been found in large quantities in Ontario near the Niagara river. It is said to arise from the Trenton beds, and is accounted for by the vast number of fossils found in that formation. Its origin is as mysterious as that of petroleum. At Langevin Station on the C.P.R., 35 miles west of Medicine Hat, the

writer saw a stream of natural gas, rising from a boring, which had been used for several years in the section house for fuel. In this case the gas has its origin in the Cretaceous. So far as finding natural gas below Winnipeg is concerned, our underlying rock is Trenton, and it is a perfect mass of animal remains, but there have as yet been no surface indications of there being natural gas in the Red River valley, unless it be the stream struck at Dominion City last summer, and this has not yet been scientifically investigated.

WATER.

A very important question for us is that of water supply. Not only comfort and convenience, but health also, demand that we face this question. Our city water works supply is from the Assiniboine, which contains a large proportion of chemical salts, and is somewhat trying for new comers who use it freely. Wells in a city after a few years become unfit for use. Many well authenticated instances are found of typhoid fever and other diseases coming from the use of water tainted by drainage. A number of our wells, especially those west of Colony creek, are artesian. They are all in the drift and probably gain their water supply from the area exposed by Little Stony Mountain. These can hardly be relied on for supplying us with a plenty of water. Figure 4 is a suggestive one in this connection. Winnipeg is 764 feet above the level of the sea; Lake of the Woods is 1,060 feet. There is consequently a difference in our favor of some 300 feet, and should there be beds of a porous nature in the Laurentian, there would be a sufficient amount of pressure to give us a good head of water. There is no way of assuring ourselves of the presence of water or of natural gas except by boring. It is by no means certain that we should get either, but, judging from the experience, especially of some points in Dakota, it would be worth while trying. As to the other objects spoken of, viz., salt, petroleum, coal, and precious or useful metals, the probabilities are entirely against us. The absence of salt, however, is more favorable to our getting an artesian well of good water.

SUBSEQUENT DISCUSSION.

When the applause which greeted Dr. Bryce on resuming his seat had subsided, President MacBeth invited an informal discussion which followed in the responses of the lecturer to enquiries and suggestions by Prof. Hart, of Manitoba College, Prof. Laird, of Wesley College, and Consul Taylor.

It was first explained that all the formations of the Red River valley, resting on the Laurentian development, corresponded with the upper and lower Silurian of the English geologists. Then, looking westward, Consul Taylor expressed his great unwillingness to believe, that the carboniferous Devonian formation—the seat of bituminous coal in the United States—would be found wanting, or "a fault," between the Red River valley and the cretaceous formation clearly recognizable beyond Brandon. He

would rather expect that by further exploration, the true coal measures as developed at Pittsburgh and by deep-sinking in Iowa and Missouri, would yet be traced from the Pembina to the Riding Mountains of Manitoba. A further point of interest, which Dr. Bryce fully admitted, was that the great Laurentian Island was

valuable minerals in the far Northeast of Canada.

Prof. Laird, in expressing his high appreciation of the learning and exposition of the lecturer, dwelt briefly upon the great accessions to the materials of geological science by the elaborate surveys of the world; and joined heartily in the recognition of Dr.

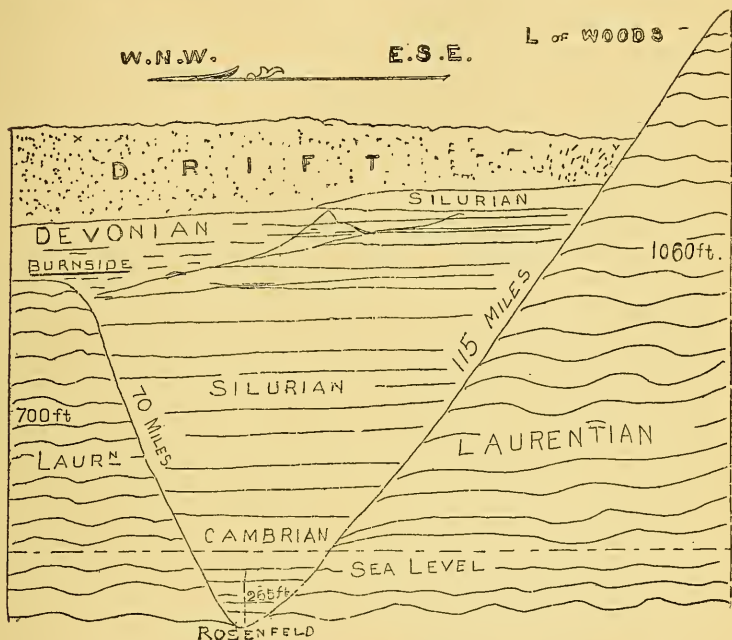


FIG. 4.—Vertical Section from Burnside to L. of Woods.

succeeded northward, as he had illustrated southward through the Red River valley, by the development in even fuller extent of the Silurian and successive geological strata, with the highest probability—unless all geological analogy elsewhere shall fail of application to the districts in the vicinity of Hudson's Bay—of the existence of bituminous coal fields and

Bryce's zeal and intelligence in giving a popular form to a discussion of great public interest.

On motion of Consul Taylor, seconded by Prof. Hart, a vote of thanks was heartily tendered by the audience, and appropriately acknowledged by the lecturer.

APPENDIX.

SIR,—In your issue of Christmas morning appeared a letter from Mr. Tyrrell of the Geological Survey criticizing my lecture on the "Oldest Geology of the Red River and Assiniboine Valleys." I have not until the present time had an opportunity of noticing it. With your permission I shall quote the various criticisms one by one, that none may be omitted.

1. Mr. Tyrrell says: "The original Archæan continental nucleus, spoken of as the 'Laurentian Island,' extends southward into Minnesota, Wisconsin, Michigan and New York, and therefore Canada should not be said to own the whole of this Laurentian Island, but rather the greater part of it. The use of the term Laurentian, instead of Archæan, to include both the Laurentian and Huronian, is not correct, any more than it would be correct to group both men and horses as horses. Laurentian and Huronian were names applied by Sir William Logan to separate geological groups or systems, and as they have not been shown to be the same the one named cannot be used to include them both without causing the utmost confusion."

The use of Laurentian instead of Archæan was simply to prevent confusion in a popular discussion of the subject. I said distinctly as follows: "We have preferred to use the well known term Laurentian rather than Archæan which some are now employing to include both Laurentian and Huronian." The terms, "Laurentian island" and "Laurentian lakes" have now become well known, including as every one knows the Huronian. The distinction between Laurentian and Huronian is not easily drawn. Prof. Chapman (page 298) says: "The stratigraphical relations of two series, Laurentian and Huronian have not yet been clearly made out. The mineral characteristics and especially the presence of conglomerates holding gneissoid and other fragments lead undoubtedly to the conclusion that the Huronian beds are of later formation than the Laurentian, but as pointed out by Dr. Selwyn, the Huronian appear in many places to pass under the latter." It is well known that members of the geological staff form the opinion that the Laurentian series are not metamorphic sedimentary rocks, and their relation to the Huronian is very uncertain. How absurd it is then to be dogmatic, the more that it has been found necessary to invent the colorless word "Archæan" to include the Laurentian and Huronian. As to the extent of the "Laurentian island" the portion of the Laurentian uncovered by Palæozoic which is outside of Canada is utterly trifling compared with the vast area within our borders.

2. Mr. Tyrrell says: "The iron ore on Lake Winnipeg does not occur in "Cambrian" rocks, but, as has been pointed out by the writer several times, in the highly altered schists of the Huronian system. There is no known natural outcrop of "Cambrian" rocks in Manitoba, and the only record of this system in the province is in Dr. Dawson's paper on the boring at Rosenfeld where he correl-

lates the lowest 110 feet of his section with the Lower Magnesian Limestone or Calciferous, adding a (?) to indicate a certain amount of doubt in the correctness of the determination."

Here Cambrian is used to mean the lowest of what were formerly called Silurian, and must now be admitted to be at least Campro-Silurian. Dr. Dawson is correct in identifying the rocks immediately above the Laurentian at Rosenfeld as Calciferous, which is Cambrian. As in the case of the Quebec rocks of Eastern Canada, it is difficult to separate chalky and Calciferous, and especially in Manitoba is it difficult to get a horizon corresponding exactly with that of Ontario. As to the iron bearing rates my statement was that they "lie near the base of the Cambrian," lie on the Laurentian island of which I had been speaking, very near the point of union of the Palæozoic and underlying rocks.

3. Mr. Tyrrell says: "Possibly the most unfortunate sentence in the whole paper is the following: "Lake Winnipeg is now definitely known to be a broad trough hollowed out by glacial action, on the east shore consisting of the hard granite and conglomerate of the Laurentian, and on the west of its lower rocks of the Calciferous, and probably Potsdam series, now classed as Canadian rocks lying upon the Laurentian."

Lake Winnipeg is not definitely known to have been hollowed out by glacial action. It is much more probable that it is an old pre-glacial river valley, of the general character of that of the Mississippi of the present day, with its northern end blocked by drift and alluvial deposits, or a depression has been formed in the bottom of this old valley by movements of the earth's crust; evidence of these crusted warpings being seen in the high beaches along the foot of the Manitoba escarpment. On the east shore of Lake Winnipeg there is no "conglomerate" known in the Laurentian, and in fact it is more or less doubtful whether there is conglomerate anywhere in the Laurentian. On the west shore no "Calciferous" or "Potsdam" is known, and there is no reason to suppose that there are any palæozoic rocks in that vicinity below the St. Peter's sandstone (chazy) which is there found resting directly on the archæan."

The last first. After the explanation in regard to Laurentian it seems mere trifling to deny the presence of conglomerates. Prof. Chapman (page 297) says: "The Huronian representatives although distinct enough in their entirety, closely resemble in many cases the Laurentian rocks of the district, and cannot always be readily separated from them. As a rule, however, the texture is less crystalline or less granitoidal, and slaty or semi-crystal line conglomerates appear among them." Mr. Tyrrell seems to especially object to Lake Winnipeg being so decidedly put down as hollowed out by glacial action. In my lecture of last year I had occasion to point out the distinguished service in geologizing Manitoba, performed by Prof. Upham, of Boston. So completely did Prof. Upham's

theory satisfy the conditions that impartial observers immediately set it down as a proved hypothesis. The fact of its being so is shown in the unusual course of the Canadian Government geological survey in publishing Mr. Upham's report of 156 pages, though the author belonged to a foreign service. This course seems to have displeased some members of our geological staff. To any one who examines the two pages (113 and 114) of observations as to glacial striae, and finds such an entry as "Between the Hudson bay and Lake Winnipeg, along the Severn, Fawn, Poplar and Beren's rivers, on almost all exposed rock surfaces (A. P. Low) the glacial striae run S.W.;" and also (page 115) "On the east shore of Lake Winnipeg between the Narrows and the mouth of Winnipeg river at numerous localities the glacial striae are S.W.," it must be evident that in its course the tremendous ice sheet could not have done other than scoop out Lake Winnipeg. We may, however, admit the possibility of there having been in the pre-glacial age a river valley to begin with.

4. Mr. Tyrrell says: "Finally, it would be interesting to know if the lecturer has any evidence of the "Trenton" age of the rocks beneath the city of Winnipeg, as a specimen received from a well bored at the water works at Armstrong's point consists of soft and argillite, the same as that at Stony mountain, and clearly indicates, in default of evidence to the contrary, the Hudson river age of the rock immediately underlying the drift and alluvium on which Winnipeg is built."

The discussion at this point was as to the occurrences of the "Trenton" rock from which natural gas is supposed to come. Dr. Dawson shows that there is "Trenton" at Rosenfeld south of Winnipeg; it is shown by Prof. Panton and others that the Trenton is found at St. Andrews (north of Winnipeg). Mr. Tyrrell says probably Hudson river bed immediately underlying the drift at Winnipeg; and since Trenton underlies Hudson river it is almost a certainty that the Trenton lies below Winnipeg and can be reached by boring.

5. Mr. Tyrrell says: "It is also stated that 'some marbles occur on Lake Manitoba,' whereas it is quite certain that no such rock is found anywhere around that lake, and, in fact, there is no crystalline limestone or 'marble' known anywhere in Manitoba up to the present time."

Prof. Hind states that he found on St. Martin's lake, which is connected with Lake Manitoba by the short Partridge Crop river, and which is also connected with Lake Winnipeg, "partially metamorphosed sandstone rocks," at one point the "rock approaches the character of gneiss," "an inland consists of gneiss with large quartz veins meandering through it," while further on were found "fragments of silicious limestone." It is locally believed that there is crystalline limestone in that region, and certainly the conditions described by Prof. Hind favor this view. These are all the matters raised in Mr. Tyrrell's criticism, and it will be seen that they are almost all debatable points.

GEORGE BRUCE.

Manitoba college, Winnipeg, Dec. 31.

part but the settlement on Red River, shall be forfeited. Given under my hand, at Fort Daer, Pembina, the 8th of January, 1814.

“By order of the Governor.

“(Signed) MILES MACDONELL, Governor.

“JOHN SPENCER, Secretary.”

Here, then, is the loudly denounced and oft-spoken of proclamation.

“Were the question asked, “Did the Governor act wisely?” subsequent events afford an answer in the negative. No doubt Governor Macdonell, armed with the opinion of the legal gentlemen we have already quoted, regarded himself as fully authorized. No doubt there was need for preventing the starving multitude of settlers being driven away every winter to Pembina. No doubt it was the difficulty, under December and January weather, of their getting sufficient food from the buffalo that urged the Governor to take the strong step he did at Pembina, of obviating the recurrence of the suffering he was then witnessing. Further, it was well known that instructions had been given the Nor'-wester agents, in their western posts (as shown by the evidence of Pritchard, at that time one of their employés), to buy up all the provisions possible and prevent the settlers getting them.

“All these things can be urged and have great weight; but the fact that the idea of law was yet new, that the feeling of the Nor'-Westers was hostile to a certain extent, and that they had the turbulent Bois-Brulés thoroughly under their control and ready to carry out any plans of attack, should have caused great caution on the part of the Governor, so newly created in his chair of authority. Further, all laws of non-intercourse, embargo, and the like, are regarded as arbitrary.

“Expedience would have dictated a more conciliatory and less drastic policy; especially when he was not possessed of a force sufficient to carry out his commands.

“But if the question be transferred to the region of abstract right, the case is different.

“The legal opinions given certainly justify the Governor in the steps taken. He proposed, what is usually considered the right of government, to take possession of supplies if life is at stake, and not only so, but to recompense in full for the amount taken. But it was a claim of supremacy; it meant the diminution of Nor'-wester influence over the Bois-Brulés and Indians, and must be resisted at all hazards.

“The council of Nor'-westers that met at Fort William in the summer of 1814, was presided over by the Hon. William McGillivray, the principal partner of the North-west Company. Mr. Pritchard gives evidence that he received direct information from Mackenzie, one of the North-west agents, that the following plan had been devised to accomplish the ruin of the settlement :

“The intention of the North-west Company was to seduce and inveigle away as many of the colonists and settlers at Red River as they could induce to join them; and after they should thus have diminished their means of defence, to raise the Indians of Lac Rouge, Fond du Lac, and other places, to act and destroy the settlement; and that it was also their intention to bring the Governor, Miles Macdonell, down to Montreal as a prisoner, by way of degrading the authority under which the colony was established in the eyes of the natives of that country.”

“Who shall say after that that the spirit of the Nor'-westers since the days of Peter Pond had been in any way ameliorated ?

“Had they a grievance, the courts of England, where they had much influence, were open to them. But no! Indians and Bois-Brulés must be stirred up, like the letting out of water, to end no one could tell where; and the words of Simon McGillivray, a Nor'-wester partner, in writing from London in 1812: “Lord Selkirk must be driven to abandon the project, for his success would strike at the very existence of our trade,” are seen carried out into action. The smoking homesteads of 1815, and the mournful band of three-score persons taking the route down Red River, across Lake Win-

nipeg, and seeking Hudson Bay, as if the broad continent had no room for ever so small a band of peaceful and industrious settlers, tell their own tale.

"Cuthbert Grant again appears upon the scene, and along with him figure also the leading chiefs of the Nor'-westers. The return of the settlers to their homes in 1815 had filled the minds of their enemies with rage. The contempt of the wild hunters of the plains for the peaceful tillers of the soil can hardly be conceived. They despised them for their manual labor; they named them, by way of reproach, "the workers in gardens;" and their term "pork-eaters," formerly applied to the voyageurs east of Fort William, was now used in derision to the Scotch settlers. During the whole winter the fiery cross of the Nor'-westers had been flying; and they looked forward to a grand gathering in the spring at "The Forks," to give a final blow to the infant colony.

"We have seen how the refugees returned to their devastated homes. Fortunately the crops sown by them had not all been destroyed; and under Colin Robertson, and with their new friends from Scotland, they settled down to endure in the following year the fear and uncertainty of continued threatenings, at last to have the crisis reached in atrocious acts of bloodshed, and to be again driven from their unfortunate settlement.

"The expeditions were both to come from the east and west. Fort Qu'Appelle, some 350 miles west of Red River, was the rendezvous of the force expected from the west. The Bois-Brulés wherever found during the whole winter throughout the territories, at the most distant posts, exhibited signs of unmistakable hostility. A party of these warlike Metis were reported as coming from the far-off Fort des-Prairies, on the Saskatchewan; while from the east, a leading partner, McLeod, was journeying all the way from Fort William, with a strong band to assist in the complete extinction of the colony.

"Of the western levies Grant was, as has been already said, the ruling spirit. He was the leader of the "New Nation."

On the 13th March, 1816, he writes from the River Qu'Appelle the following letter to one of the partners, showing the intentions for the spring :—

My Dear Sir,—I received your generous and kind letter last fall, by the last canoe. I should certainly be an ungrateful being, should I not return you my sincerest thanks. Although a very bad hand at writing letters, I trust to your generosity. I am yet safe and sound, thank God, for I believe it is more than Colin Robertson or any of his suit dare to offer the least insult to any of the Bois-Brulés, although Robertson made use of some expressions which I hope he shall swallow in the spring. He shall see that it is neither fifteen, thirty, nor fifty of his best horsemen, that can make the Bois-Brulés bow to him. Our people of Fort des Prairies and English River are all to be here in the spring; it is hoped we shall come off with flying colours, and never to see any of them again in the colonizing way in Red River, in fact, the traders shall pack off with themselves, also for having disobeyed our orders last spring, according to our arrangements. We are all to remain at the Forks to pass the summer, for fear they should play us the same trick as last summer, of coming back; but they shall receive a warm reception. I am loth to enter into any particulars as I am well assured that you will receive more satisfactory information (than I have had) from your other correspondents; therefore, I shall not pretend to give you any; at the same time begging you will excuse my short letter, I shall conclude wishing you health and happiness.

I shall ever remain,

Your most obedient, humble servant,

Cuthbert Grant.

“J. D. Cameron, Esq.”

“After the settlers returned in 1815, Colin Robertson had organized the colony on his own authority, there having been no opportunity of communicating with Lord Selkirk; and during the same year a new governor there came, Robert Semple, seemingly of Pennsylvanian origin, who had gone in early life

to England. He was an author of some note, an officer of experience, and moreover a man of amiable and generous disposition. Too good a man he was for the lawless region to which he was sent. He was appointed by the Hudson's Bay Company as their governor, and with all the powers conferred by their charter.

"As soon as spring was open the movement was begun. Governor Semple had dismantled the Nor'-Wester Fort, on account of the alarming rumours heard by him, but more especially because of definite information obtained from the letters intercepted by Colin Robertson during the winter. We shall allow an eye-witness of the event to tell his own tale as given on oath in Montreal, in 1818.

"It is the account of a gentleman in the Canadian Voyageurs—the corps that had so distinguished itself in the war against the United States in 1812-15. At the close of the war he entered the service of the Hudson's Bay Company as a trader. He gives a very clear account of the expedition from Fort Qu'Appelle against the colony.

Story of Pierre Chrysologue Pambrun.

"I had been for some time under the orders of Mr. Semple, and on the 12th of April, 1816, I left Fort Douglas under his directions, to go to the Hudson's Bay Company's house on River Qu'Appelle. I set out with as much provisions as would last us six days, when we would get to Brandon House, about 120 miles west of Red River. To this place, according to my instructions, I was to go first, and from thence, if prudent, to the Hudson's Bay fort at Qu'Appelle. On the 1st of May I left Qu'Appelle with five boat-loads of pemican and furs. As we were going down the river on the 5th of May, near the Grand Rapids, I made the shore in a boat, and a party of armed Bois-Brulés immediately came and surrounded me, and forced me to give up the boats and furs, and the pemican. The pemican was landed and the boats

taken across the river. I was kept a prisoner five days. Cuthbert Grant, Peter Pangman, Thomas McKay were of the party who made me a prisoner. I was taken back to River Qu'Appelle, to the Northwest Company's post. I was kept there for five days. Mr. Alexander Macdonnell was in command at this station, and I asked him why I had been made a prisoner, or by whose orders I had been arrested? He said it was by his own. There were about forty or fifty Bois-Brulés at this fort. Cuthbert Grant frequently said they were going to destroy the settlement, and I was told Mr. Macdonnell said the business of the year before was a trifle to what this should be. Cuthbert Grant frequently talked with Bois-Brulés about going, and they sang war-songs as if they were going to battle.

"On the 12th I left Qu'Appelle. We drifted down to the place where I had before been stopped, and the pemican, which had been landed from our boats, was re-embarked by the North-west people. When we got to the forks of the River Qu'Appelle we encamped. The people who were taken with me had been liberated some time before, and had gone away. I had been left a prisoner. The next morning after we had encamped, that is, the people in the two boats which went with Mr. Macdonnell, a number of Indians who were in camp at some distance were sent for, and they came and went into Mr. Macdonnell's tent, who made a speech to them; a party went also on horseback from Fort Qu'Appelle armed, but I was in one of the boats with Mr. Macdonnell. In going down the river they talked freely of breaking up the settlement and taking Fort Douglas; and the people frequently told me that Mr. Macdonnell had said the business of the year before had been nothing to what this would be. Mr. Macdonnell's speech to the Indians was to this effect:

"My Friends and Relations,—I address you bashfully, for I have not a pipe of tobacco to give you. All our goods have been taken by the English, but we are now upon a party to drive them away. Those people have been spoiling fair lands which belong to you and the Bois-Brulés, and to which they

have no right. They have been driving away the buffalo. You will soon be poor and miserable if the English stay; but we will drive them away if the Indians do not, for the North-west Company and the Bois-Brulés are one. If you (addressing the chief) and some of your young men will join, I shall be glad." Mr. Macdonnell spoke in French, and Pangman and Primeau interpreted.

"The chief said, 'That he knew nothing about it, and should not go himself; if some of the young men went, it was nothing to him.

"Mr. Macdonnell then said: 'Well, it is no matter, we are determined to drive them away, and if they make any resistance, your land shall be drenched with their blood.'

"The next morning the Indians went away, and the party drifted down the Assiniboine River to the Grand Rapids. From there, about thirty started, among whom was Mr. Macdonnell, Cuthbert Grant, and a number of Bois Brulés. I was left behind and still a prisoner, but in the evening a spare horse was brought by two of them for me, and I accompanied them on horseback to the North-west fort near Brandon House. When I approached, I saw a crowd assembled about the gate. I suppose there were from forty to fifty persons assembled. Their arms were down by the gate, and as I entered it a number of them presented their guns at me, making use of insulting language. I complained to Mr. Macdonnell of this treatment, and asked him if it was by his orders, and he said he would speak to them about it, but I do not think he ever did. I saw at this fort, tobacco, carpenter's tools, a quantity of furs, and other things, which had been brought over from Brandon House—our fort near by.

"About the 24th or 25th of May the party was separated into smaller divisions, and chiefs appointed. The property was embarked, and the whole set off to go to Portage la Prairie; a part went by water, but the Bois-Brulés generally went by land on horseback. Having arrived at Portage la Prairie, the whole of the pemican and packs were landed and formed into a sort of breastwork or fortification, having two

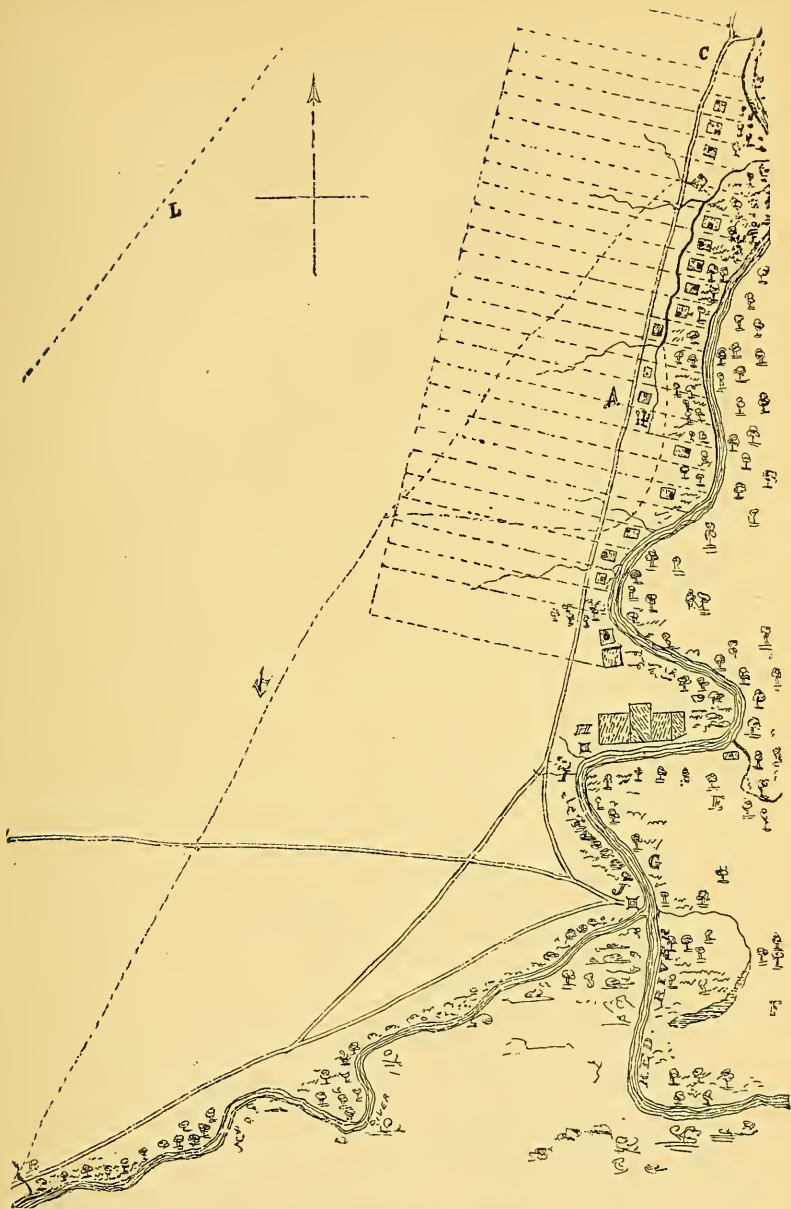
small brass swivels there, which the year before had been taken from the stores of the settlement.

“On the morning of the 17th of June, being at Portage la Prairie still, which is about sixty miles from the settlement, the Bois-Brulés mounted their horses and set off for it; they were armed with guns, pistols, lances, and bows and arrows. Cuthbert Grant was with them, and a number of his race. I remained behind, so did Mr. Alexander Macdonnell and others; about thirty or forty men stayed to help guard the pemican. The object of this expedition was to take Fort Douglas and break up the settlement. If the settlers took to the fort for protection, then the whole were to be starved out. The fort was to be watched strictly at all times, and if any of them went out to fish or to get water, they were to be shot if they could not be taken prisoners. I certainly had, from all I heard, very serious apprehensions for my friends. I do not remember that Cuthbert Grant said anything particular on the morning he went away.”

The Affair of “Seven Oaks.”

The following account of the affair of “Seven Oaks” is taken from “The Selkirk Settlement and Settlers” by Mr. C. N. Bell, F. R. G. S., a member of the Society.

“On Governor Semple’s return to Fort Douglas from visiting the inland posts of the Hudson’s Bay Co., in June, 1816, he again assumed direction of affairs, which had been temporarily managed by Colin Robertson. That he did not altogether approve of the management during his absence is learned from the testimony of an eye-witness, yet living, in the person of Donald Murray, who informs me that Robertson was in great disfavor with the Settlement and Hudson’s Bay Co. officials, and when, on hearing of the probability of an attack by the Northwesters, he started for York Factory in a boat, taking Duncan Cameron, a prisoner, he insultingly hoisted a pemican sack as an ensign instead of the British



RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.

Fac-simile of section of Map (1818).

A—Seven Oaks, where Semple fell.
 B—Creek where Metis left Assiniboine.
 C—Frog Plain (since Kildonan church)
 E to F—De Meuron Settlers on Seine.
 G—Half-breeds (St. Boniface of today).

H—Fort Douglas (1815).
 I—Colony Gardens.
 J—Fort Gibraltar (N. W. Co.)
 K—Road followed by Metis.
 L—Dry Cart trail west of Settlers' lots.

flag which was the usual one used on such occasions. Word was received at the settlement that the Northwesters were determined to destroy both it and the settlers. On the 17th June, Peguis, chief of the Swampy Indians, residing in the district about the mouth of the Red River, waited on Governor Semple to offer the services of his men, some seventy in number to assist in protecting the colonists. This proffered assistance was declined with thanks by Semple, who did not foresee the occurrences of the succeeding two days. Alex. Macdonnell sent a party of about sixty Canadians and half-breeds with a few Indians, mounted on horseback and bearing some provisions, across by land from the Assiniboine to the Red River, the route followed taking them along the edge of the swamps, about two miles out on the prairie from Fort Douglas, and from that point gradually drawing nearer to the main highway, which is now the northern continuation of Winnipeg's Main street, until it joined the latter at a spot known as "Seven Oaks," on account of the seven oak trees growing there, within a hundred yards or so south of a small coolie, now called Inkster's creek. One half of the Metis had arrived at the coolie and passed on to Frog Plain (Kildonan church prairie), taking two or three settlers prisoners to prevent their giving the alarm, when the remainder were discovered by a sentinel, placed in the watch tower of Fort Douglas, with a telescope. He immediately gave an alarm, and Governor Semple left the fort with a small party of company's servants to intercept the Metis, whom he met at Seven Oaks as they arrived at the highway. Semple had by this time been joined by some of his servants and officials, so that he arrived on the scene with about 28 companions.

It is difficult to get at the exact truth of what followed this meeting of the rival traders. A host of affidavits are on record made by men on both sides, who, while agreeing in the main particulars, disagree as to details. However, herewith is given a version of the affair emanating from each side.

TWO ACCOUNTS.

The first is an affidavit made by John Pritchard, who had

been in the service of both the X Y and Northwest companies, but in 1816 was a resident of the Selkirk settlement. He was the father of the Rev. S. Pritchard, and grandfather of Rev. Canon Matheson, of this city.

“On the afternoon of the 19th of June, 1816, a man in the watch-house called out that the half-breeds were coming. The governor, some other gentlemen and myself looked through spy-glasses, and I distinctly saw some armed people on horseback passing along the plains. A man then called out: ‘They (meaning the half-breeds) are making for the settlers,’ on which the governor said: We must go out and meet those people; let twenty men follow me.’ We proceeded down the old road leading down the settlement. As we were going along we met many of the settlers running to the fort, crying, ‘The half-breeds! the half-breeds!’ When we were advanced about three-quarters of a mile along the settlement we saw some people on horseback behind a point of woods. On our nearer approach the party seemed to be more numerous, on which the governor made a halt and sent for a field piece, which, delaying to arrive, he ordered us to advance. We had not proceeded far before the half-breeds, with their faces painted in the most hideous manner, and in the dresses of Indian warriors, came forward and surrounded us in the form of a half moon. We then extended our line and moved more into the open plain, and as they advanced we retreated a few steps backward, and then saw a Canadian named Boucher ride up to us waving his hand and calling out, “what do you want?” The governor replied, “what do you want?” To which Boucher answered, “we want our fort.” The governor said, “Go to your fort.” They were by this time near each other, and consequently spoke too low for me to hear. Being at some little distance to the right of the governor, I saw him take hold of Boucher’s gun, and almost immediately a general discharge of fire arms took place, but whether it began on our side or that of the enemy, it was impossible to distinguish. My attention was then directed to my personal defence. In a few minutes almost all our people were

EITHER KILLED OR WOUNDED.

Captain Rogers, having fallen, rose up and came towards me, when, not seeing one of our party who was not either killed or disabled, I called out to him, 'For God's sake give yourself up!' He ran towards the enemy for that purpose, myself following him. He raised up his hands and, and in English and broken French, called for mercy. A half-breed (son of Col. William McKay) shot him through the head, and another cut open his belly with a knife with the most horrid imprecations. Fortunately for me, a Canadian (named Lavigne), joining his entreaties to mine, saved me (though with the greatest difficulty) from sharing the fate of my friend at that moment. After this I was reserved from death, in the most providential manner, no less than six different times on my way to and at the Frog Plain (the headquarters of these cruel murderers). I there saw Alexander Murray and his wife, two of William Bannerman's children and Alexander Sutherland, settlers, and likewise Antony McDonnell, a servant, were prisoners, having been taken before the action took place. With the exception of myself, no quarter was given to any of us. The knife, axe or ball, put a period to the existence of the wounded; and on the bodies of the dead were practised all those barbarities which characterize the inhuman heart of the savage. The amiable and mild Mr. Semple, lying on his side (his thigh having been broken) and supporting his head upon his hand, addressed the commander of our enemies, by inquiring if he was Mr. Grant; and being answered in the affirmative, 'I am not mortally wounded,' said Mr. Semple; 'and if you get me conveyed to the fort, I think I should live.' Grant promised he would do so, and immediately left him in the care of a Canadian, who afterwards told that an Indian of their party came up and shot Mr. Semple in the breast. I entreated Grant to procure me the watch, or even the seals, of Mr. Semple, for the purpose of transmitting them to his friends, but I did not succeed. Our force amounted to twenty-eight persons, of whom twenty-one were killed and one wounded. The governor, Captain

Rogers, Mr. James White, surgeon, Mr. Alexander McLean, settler, Mr. Wilkinson, private secretary to the governor, and Lieut. Holt, of the Swedish navy, and fifteen servants were killed. Mr. J. P. Bourke, storekeeper, was wounded, but saved himself by flight. The enemy, I am told, were sixty-two persons, the greater part of whom were the contracted servants and clerks of the Northwest company. They had one man killed and one wounded. The chiefs who headed the party of our enemy were Messrs. Grant and Fraser, Antoine Hoole and Bourassa; the two former clerks and the two latter interpreters, in the service of the Northwest company."

BOUCHER'S STORY.

The above declaration and the following are published in a book entitled "Statements Respecting the Earl of Selkirk's Settlement, etc.," written by Selkirk's relative, a Mr Halkett, a director of the Hudson's Bay Company committee, and it is from this source that most historians have drawn their information relating to the Selkirk side of the case.

The man named Boucher, mentioned by Pritchard in his affidavit, was taken as a prisoner to Montreal, and while there made the following declaration, on the 29th of August, 1816, before a justice of the peace :

"Voluntary declaration of Francois Firmin Boucher, accused on oath of having, on the 19th of last June, killed at the colony of the Red River, twenty-one men, among whom was Governor Semple, says: 'That he did not kill any person whatever; that he was sent, four days before the death of Governor Semple, by one of the partners of the North-west Company, Mr. Alexander McDonell, from Portage la Prairie, to carry provisions to Frog Plain, about three leagues lower than the fort at the Forks of Red River. That he and his companions, to avoid being seen by the Hudson's Bay settlers, passed at a distance from the Hudson's Bay fort. That, with a view of weakening the Hudson's Bay party, the Bois-Brules wanted to carry away some of the Hudson's Bay settlers—and, assisted by the deponent to interpret for them in English, they went and carried one off. That, as they proceeded

towards Frog Plain, they observed a group of Hudson's Bay people—upon which a certain number of the men in the service of the North-west Company, called Bois-Brulés, joined the deponent and his companions. That these, thinking the Hudson's Bay people meant them harm, because they advanced with their muskets in their hands, the Bois-Brulés wanted to fire on them; but the deponent opposed their doing so. That at last he advanced alone to the Hudson's Bay party to speak to them, and came so near Governor Semple, that the latter took hold of the butt end of the deponent's gun, and ordered his people to advance; that they, not obeying him, and the deponent saying that if they fired they were all dead men, Governor Semple said that they must not be afraid, that this was not a time for it, and that they must fire. Immediately the deponent heard the reports of two muskets fired by the Hudson's Bay people. That at this moment the deponent threw himself from his horse, still holding the mane, and that the horse being afraid, dragged him in this manner about the distance of a gun shot, where he remained. That, from the moment when he was thus carried away by his horse, the firing became general between the people of the North-west and the Hudson's Bay. That the fire was begun by those of the Hudson's Bay. That the men in the service of the North-west Company were about sixty-four in number (of whom thirty were at the beginning of the firing), assembled for the purpose of taking the Hudson's Bay fort by famine. He is uncertain by whose orders, but supposes it was by the chiefs, that is, Mr. McDonnell, Mr. Grant, Antoine Hoolle, and Michael Bourassa. That he heard Mr. McLean enjoin them to avoid a meeting with the Hudson's Bay people. That after the firing was over he saw a Bois-Brulé named Vasseur near Governor Semple, then wounded in the knee and arm, who was taking care of him, and who, notwithstanding, had taken his belt or sash, his pistol and his watch, and afterwards carried them away. That he himself had at the moment saved one Pritchard from

being killed, and also Francois Deschamps and several other Brulés wanted to kill him.”

AFTER THE FIGHT.

“Many of the settlers are of the opinion that the first shot fired was by Lieutenant Holt, whose gun went off by accident, thus precipitating the conflict. In all, twenty-one persons were killed, the remaining eight escaping into the woods, which at that time extended from the highway to the river bank, and making their way to Fort Douglas, one or two swimming the Red River and passing up the east side until opposite the fort. It is to be noticed that only one actual settler was killed.

“At the fort all was confusion, the settlers—men, women and children—crowding into the houses within its walls. Mr. Bourke managed to regain the fort with the cannon and a small remnant of the men he took out, and the tale they told struck terror into the hearts of all, who expected an attack would be made immediately by the North-westerners. An anxious night was passed, but no attack came, the Bois-Brulés having a wholesome dread of the cannon possessed by the colonists.

“John Pritchard had been taken as a prisoner to the camp ground of the main body of the Metis, which was situated where the Kildonan ferry landing now is, I am informed by Mr. Donald Murray, whose parents had also been taken prisoners on their farm, two lots above that point, on the morning of the tragedy. He begged of Cuthbert Grant, the leader, to be allowed to go to Fort Douglas. After obtaining permission from Grant, he met with a refusal from the rest of the party; but after giving a promise to return, and agreeing to bear a message to the fort people that they must leave the next day for Lake Winnipeg, he was allowed to depart. Grant accompanied him as far as “Seven Oaks,” where the bodies of the killed lay upon the ground, but as it was after nightfall when he passed there, he was spared the sight of the horrible scene.

“Arriving at Fort Douglas, he informed the settlers that the Metis demanded that the colonists should depart, and had promised that if all public property was given up to them, they would give a safe escort to the people and allow them to take all their personal effects. Two other parties of North-westerners were daily expected to arrive in the Red River, one coming from the Saskatchewan and the other from Lake Superior, and it would be necessary to send some of the Bois-Brulés with them to explain the position of affairs.

“The colonists at first refused to agree to the terms of capitulation, and Sheriff McDonnell, who was in charge of the settlement, decided to hold to the fort as long as the men were inclined to protect it. In the morning, however, after they had more fully considered their situation, the settlers concluded to depart, and after several visits of the sheriff to the Metis camp an arrangement was agreed on.

HOW THE INDIANS ACTED.

“A number of Indians under Peguis were camped on the east side of the river and took no part in the troubles, but their sympathies were plainly with the colonists. They went out the morning after the engagement and brought in the bodies of the killed, or as many as could then be found, for a small number, I am informed by eye-witnesses, were concealed in the heavy brush in the vicinity, as wounded men had crawled into thickets and there died. Mrs. Kaufman, who yet lives in Kildonan east (since died, 1892), informs me that she saw the Indians bring in the dead bodies to Fort Douglas with carts, and that Governor Semple and the doctor were buried in board coffins, and the others wrapped up in blankets, the whole number being interred in a grove of trees on the south side of the creek southwest of the fort, and quite near the spot whereon now stands the residence of ex-Mayor Logan. She says the body of one man was naked, the clothes having been stolen before the Indians found it. Mr. Donald Murray also informs me that when the burial took place, Chief Peguis stood near by, with the tears streaming down his face, and he

repeatedly expressed his great sorrow at the sad occurrences taking place. Donald Murray states positively that all these bodies were removed some years after to St. John's Church graveyard, but he is not now able to locate the site of their re-interment. He remembers distinctly that on the morning the settlers handed over the fort to the Metis, all the ammunition for the cannon was carried down to the river and thrown into the water from the end of a boat moored in the stream.

The "Seven Oaks" Monument.

The Manitoba Historical and Scientific Society, in pursuance of its aim of marking the historic spots within their territory with suitable monuments, had in view the erection of a stone on the site of the affair of "Seven Oaks," a spot near the highway, which is a continuation through Kildonan of Main Street, Winnipeg. In 1890 the Countess of Selkirk, the widow of the last Earl of Selkirk, who was the son of the founder of the colony, visited Winnipeg, and offered to erect, under the auspices of the Society, a monument of the battle. This generous offer was gladly accepted, and a site was given by Miss Inkster, sister of Sheriff Inkster, for the purposes of the Society. In 1891 the monument, prepared by Mr. Samuel Hooper, of Winnipeg, was placed in position, and the Society, with a large company, proceeded to the unveiling of the monument on the 19th of June, the anniversary of the battle.

The Unveiling.

The ceremony of the unveiling of the "Seven Oaks" monument in Kildonan took place on the afternoon of June 19th, and was well attended by old settlers of that vicinity and also by citizens of Winnipeg. Lieutenant-Governor Schultz and party drove down in four carriages. With His

Honor were Mr. John MacBeth, President of the Historical Society; Col. Villiers and Col. Howard. In another carriage were Mr. C. N. Bell, Corresponding Secretary of the Society, Lieutenant Williams, and Mr. Ernest Phair, His Honor's private secretary. The ladies of the party were Mrs. Schultz, Mrs. Chief Justice Taylor, Mrs. Howard, Mrs. MacBeth, Mrs. W. J. Tupper, Mrs. Jellyman, of Chicago, Miss McDonald, and Miss Mair. The old families of the Red River settlement were represented by Messrs. Archibald Pritchard, sr., Wm. Fraser, Norman Matheson, Hector Sutherland, Donald Sutherland, Robert Sutherland, Angus Polson, Geo. Munroe, Jno. Bruce, Robert MacBeth, Sheriff Inkster. Miss Inkster, who gave the site for the monument, was among the ladies present. On the platform were the Lieutenant-Governor, Messrs. John MacBeth, C. N. Bell, Chief Justice Taylor, Mr. Justice Dubuc, U. S. Consul Taylor, Canon Matheson, Col. Villiers, and Col. Howard. Among the others noticed on the grounds were Messrs. G. F. Carruthers, C. P. Brown and Mrs. Brown, James Porter, W. D. Russell, T. C. Keenleyside, Dr. Phillips, Prof. Laird, J. T. Huggard, Archer Martin, and W. F. Henderson.

The proceedings were opened with an address by the President of the Historical Society, Mr. John MacBeth, who spoke as follows:—

THE PRESIDENT'S ADDRESS.

Your Honor, Ladies and Gentlemen,—We have met together to-day to unveil a monument, to mark one of the historic spots in our country. Before proceeding further, I, as President of the Manitoba Historical and Scientific Society, wish to tender to the council and members of that body my grateful thanks for doing me the honor of electing me to the honorable position of president. No one more fully appreciates the fact than I do, that my election to preside over a society composed of so many learned and scientific gentlemen as is the one I have just referred to, was not made on account of my fitness for this honorable position, but entirely intended as a delicate compliment to the old settlers of this country by my colleagues. I would be indeed ungrateful if I did not

here publicly tender my thanks to the members of the Manitoba Historical and Scientific Society, for thus honoring the old Selkirk settlers, by electing one of their number, humble and incapable though he may be, to preside on this occasion. On the 19th of June, 1816, just 75 years ago, an unfortunate conflict took place between the rival trading companies, the Hudson's Bay and North-west, in which Governor Semple and twenty men fell. Without entering into the causes which led to this lamentable affair, the Manitoba Historical and Scientific Society are simply erecting this monument to mark, as I said before, a historic spot. I wish here publicly to express the thanks of this Society to her Ladyship the Countess of Selkirk, who, many of you will remember, visited this country and this spot a short time ago, for generously furnishing us with the necessary funds for erecting this monument. I also wish to tender, on behalf of the Society, our grateful thanks to Miss Inkster, who kindly donated to us the land on which this monument stands. I wish also, on behalf of the Society, to thank His Honor the Lieutenant-Governor for his kindness in consenting to unveil this monument; and for myself, as president, to thank him for his kind attention and assistance on this occasion. I cannot conclude these few remarks without expressing the thanks of the Society to the Messrs. Hooper, who made and erected this monument, for their promptness in the execution of their contract. Before proceeding to the unveiling ceremonies, Mr. C. N. Bell, our energetic and capable corresponding secretary, and ex-president, will read a brief sketch of the events commemorated by the monument.

A HISTORICAL SKETCH.

Mr. C. N. Bell was next called upon. He read the following account of the event commemorated by the monument:—

THE BATTLE OF THE "SEVEN OAKS."

Ladies and gentlemen,—I have been requested by the Manitoba Historical and Scientific Society to read a short sketch of the incidents that have made the spot we now stand

upon an historic one in the annals of the Canadian North-west. Without entering into the merits of the dispute that led to the unfortunate affray which took place here, it will be necessary for me to state a few facts in connection with the occurrence, which are established by historical documents and sworn evidence offered in the courts of law in Canada.

Prior to the first years of the present century, the Hudson's Bay Company (speaking in general terms) had not established themselves on the banks of the Red River in any permanent posts. The North-west Company, composed mostly of Montreal merchants, with headquarters at Fort William, on Lake Superior, had a large number of employés engaged in the several branches of the fur trade, and occupied in their trapping pursuits the country extending from Lake Superior to Lake Winnipeg, and the lands adjacent to the Red, Assiniboine, Saskatchewan, Athabasca and McKenzie Rivers. The North-westers claimed a full right to trade in this country by virtue of exploration and occupation. The Hudson's Bay Company claimed exclusive trading privileges in this same district, as part of the territory described in their charter of 1670.

In 1811 Lord Selkirk gained a controlling voice in the affairs of the Hudson's Bay Company in England, and obtained from the Company a grant in fee simple of 116,000 square miles of territory in the Red River Valley, on the condition that he founded a colony on the ground, and furnished from among the settlers, on certain terms, such laborers as were required by the Company in their trading operations. Lord Selkirk immediately after this date made arrangements for establishing a colony, and brought out by way of York Factory a number of settlers, mainly from Scotland. These landed on the bank of the Red River, in the vicinity of Point Douglas, in the autumn of 1812, Captain Miles Macdonnell being placed in charge of the colony as resident governor. The colonists were in succeeding years joined by other parties from the British Isles.

During the first year or two, the officers of the Hudson's

Bay Company and the North-west Company lived on amicable terms; the North-westerners having their Fort Gibraltar on the north bank of the Assiniboine, where that stream joins the Red River. The colonists had their Fort Douglas, on the point just north of the small coulee, which enters the Red River south of George Street, within the present City of Winnipeg. (The building known as "The Bungalow" is on the site.) Soon, however, disputes arose between the chief officers of the two companies as to the rights for trading for furs and provisions, which terminated in a number of attacks on each others posts, under the guise of legal actions. Governor Miles Macdonnell claimed authority as governor of the colony and by direction of Lord Selkirk; and the Wintering Partner of the North-west Company, who was in charge at Fort Gibraltar, was a justice of the peace for the Indian territory, holding his authority under the commission of the Governor-General of Canada.

In November, 1815, Governor Robert Semple assumed control of Lord Selkirk's territory. On the 19th of June, 1816, after a winter passed amidst alarming rumors as to what either party would do in the spring, a mounted band of some sixty North-westerners, when proceeding from the western plains with provisions, left the bank of the Assiniboine about Silver Heights, and struck across the prairie just outside the present city limits, heading for the banks of the Red River in Kildonan. They were conveying provisions for the crews of boats arriving from the inland districts and Fort William, who received supplies at Lake Winnipeg, for use both coming in and going out. As the party travelled towards Kildonan, the lookout men stationed in the watch tower at Fort Douglas noticed the cavalcade, and hastily issued an alarm to the inhabitants of the settlement, who, owing to the alarming rumors current, had for the most part congregated within the fort. Governor Semple, calling on his servants and a few settlers, for some reason never satisfactorily explained, advanced with twenty-seven others, fully armed, across Point Douglas towards what is now known as Inkster's Creek, with

the intention of interviewing the North-westerns. On Governor Semple reaching this place where we now stand, and which derives its name from the fact that seven large oak trees stood here at that time, the North-westerns, who had crossed the creek, returned, meeting the governor's party on the south side, when a conversation took place between the governor and one of the North-westerns regarding the purpose of each others presence. What immediately then took place is practically as follows: According to sworn evidence afterwards given, a gun was accidentally discharged, and both parties thinking that the other had begun the attack, fired into each other. The North-westerns (it has been claimed 30 only were at the moment present), being mounted, spread themselves out in a half circle around the settlers, who were grouped together and received the full effect of their opponents' fire, so that in a few minutes twenty-one of the Semple party and one North-wester lay dead upon the field. The remaining seven or eight escaped to the woods, which here stretched to the banks of the Red River. Governor Semple, Lieutenant Holt, Capt. Rogers, Dr. James White, and Dr. Wilkinson, private secretary to the Governor, were among the dead. The survivors, hastily returning to the fort, announced the sad intelligence, and all was confusion. Closely following upon this event, a demand was made by the chiefs of the North-westerns that the settlers should immediately embark and abandon the settlement, under pain, if they remained, of having the fort destroyed and meeting with death. After some negotiations, the settlers agreed to do this ultimatum, and entering their boats, with such family goods as they could hastily gather together, passed down the Red River and Lake Winnipeg to Norway House, then known as Jack Fish House, where they remained during that winter, returning to the settlement in the following spring, after the arrival of Lord Selkirk, with an armed force, which ensured their protection.

Notwithstanding the petitions of the rival companies, the Imperial Government had, up to this time, declined to interfere between the claims of the two rival companies. The

Government were now compelled to interfere, and sent to the Red River settlement as commissioner, Col. W. B. Coltman, a prominent citizen of Lower Canada, who journeyed through to the Red River Settlement in 1817, and issued proclamations in the King's name, commanding a cessation of hostilities. Col. Coltman held conferences in the Red River settlement and arranged with Lord Selkirk and the representatives of the North-west company that the peace should not again be disturbed, after which he again returned to Montreal and sent in his report (which appears as an Imperial Blue Book 1819), while Lord Selkirk departed via the United States. From this date to 1820-1821 the settlers were not disturbed by any act of violence, and during the years named such pressure was brought to bear on the two rival companies that they amalgamated under the name of the Hudson's Bay company, and have since enjoyed the privileges granted under their charter of 1670.

Thus while the unfortunate affray which here took place caused much suffering and affliction at the time, it was the last of the troubles which had for some years harrassed and disturbed the settlement, and this monument is erected by the Manitoba Historical Society, by means of the generous aid granted by the present Lady Selkirk, to mark the spot on which was enacted a tragedy, which forms one of the most salient points in the history of the Red River Settlement, for the unfortunate occurrence led to the peaceful solution of all the artificial ills that distressed the first agriculturists, who first proved to the world the fertility of the lands of the Red River Valley of the North.

The Historical Society have long desired, and had in view, the marking of several historical sites, such as the Seven Oaks, Fort Douglas and Fort Gibraltar, and have been enabled through the kindness of Lady Selkirk to make this beginning. The work of the Society, in this direction however, will not be completed until a suitable tribute is paid to the intelligence, energy and patriotism of La Verandrye, and the self-sacrificing French-Canadian discoverer and explorer of this province, by

the erection of a stately and handsome monument, bearing on its face some record of his life's work.

CHAS. N. BELL,
Corresponding Secretary.

THE GOVERNOR'S SPEECH.

The Lieutenant-Governor was then asked to address the assembly and unveil the monument. He said :—

Mr. President and Members of the Historical Society, Ladies and Gentlemen :

You have heard from authoritative sources to-day all that relates to the monument before us, and upon that subject I need not touch ; but the present seems to me to be an occasion when we should all acknowledge the value of the services which have been rendered to the people of this province and and of the Dominion by the Historical Society of Manitoba and it is to their great credit that what we see to-day is only one of the many instances I might refer to, where their aid has been of the greatest value in giving permanency to those portions of the history of this country which, already dimmed by time in the memories of living men, are in danger of passing into the realm of vague tradition, or of being wholly lost.

I have been requested by the President and Council of this Society, on the anniversary of the event, to unveil the monument which commemorates it ; and while there may be differences of opinion as to the causes which led to the combat and loss of life these stones record, yet everyone present who is familiar with the early history of this country will agree with me that, even apart entirely from these events, this monument stands upon historic ground, and the Society, in determining the site to mark the battle of Seven Oaks, which extended from the grove which gave it its name to near Fort Douglas, was wise, I think, in placing it near this great highway, which traversing as it does this province from north to south and east to west, is but the enlargement of the trail which connected the great northern waters and woods, the home of the Chippewyan and Cree, with the vast prairies of

the south and west, where dwelt, differing in language only, the divisions of that great and warlike nation, the Dakotahs. I have said that this road, whether as Indian trail or King's highway, in old or more recent times, is indeed historic. Over it, in the dim past which antedates even Indian tradition, must have passed those aboriginal inhabitants whose interesting sepulchral remains near St. Andrew's Rapids and elsewhere, excite wonder and stimulate conjecture, and shew them to have been a race superior in many respects to those which succeeded them. Over this road and near this spot must have passed the war parties of the Assiniboines in their futile effort to oppose with arrow, tomahawk, and spear, the invading northern and eastern Cree, who had doubtless when similarly armed envied in vain the warlike "Stony" his possession of what was later known as the Image and White Horse Plains, with their countless herds of Bison; and when the earlier possession of fire-arms gave the Cree the ascendancy he sought, and that dread scourge, the small-pox, had thinned the Assiniboine ranks, it must have been along this great trail they retreated towards the blue hills of Brandon and to the upper waters of the river which still bears their name. La Verandrye, the first white man who looked on this fair land, must have seen this spot and passed by this trail, and while it was yet a bridle path or cart track, and long before it was known, as it afterwards became, the King's Highway, men who were great in their day and generation and are deservedly still remembered for their important discoveries and their administrative abilities have trodden the path which lies at our feet. Over it has passed discoverer, courier, missionary, Arctic voyager, chief, warrior and medicineman, governor, factor, judge, councillor and commander; along it have been carried wampum and tomahawk, message of peace and war. It has heard the rumble of artillery and the steady march of the Sixth of the Line, the Royal Canadian and 60th Rifles; and along its course the hard-pressed founders of the Selkirk Settlement alternately struggled southwards in search of food or hurried northward for safety

with steps of fear. Over it have travelled the pioneer priests, minister and bishops of the Roman Catholic, Anglican, Presbyterian and Wesleyan churches. The governors of the Hudson's Bay company have, as well as the lieutenants of the governors of the Dominion of Canada, all passed this way. Truly this is an historic place; and from the spot where I now stand could once have been seen nearly all of the old historic strongholds of the Hudson's Bay, the North-west, and the X Y Companies. From it may still be seen places made memorable by the good works of the Rev. Mr. West, Bishops Anderson and Provencher, the Rev. John Black, and other devoted men; within view are the residences of Hon. John Inkster, the father of our worthy sheriff, a member of the old Council of Assiniboia, and that of my brave and valued old friend, Hon. Robert McBeth, also a member, and the father of the President of our Historical Society, whose instincts of hospitality were not to be thwarted by the knowledge that confiscation and worse might follow his shelter of a hard-hunted friend; and I see all around me here worthy children of such worthy sires, the descendants of those pioneer Selkirk settlers whose tale of sorrow, suffering and danger always evokes sympathy and wonder. Mr. President, we are, if I mistake not, near the place where the first plow turned the first furrow—presage of peace, plenty and prosperity—on the eastern verge of that vast prairie which extends to the Rocky Mountains; and having suitably marked the scene of battle, let us bury with the foundation of this monument the feuds, jealousies and strifes of the past which it recalls, and remembering that English and Irish, Scandinavian, German and the descendants of the gallant Gauls and Gaels, as well as those of mixed blood, who have figured so prominently in the annals of this country, are now, by the mandate of our Queen, of one country and one people; and while still heirs of the unsullied patriotism and the invincible courage of our colonial and provincial ancestry, and proud of the heroic past, wherein English vied with French in the defence of their common country, we are Canadians all, from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and we

may look forward with that hope which is justified by the immensity and value of our resources, by the law-abiding, moral and religious character of our people. If we be true to our God and ourselves in the great trust He has imposed upon us, endeavoring to avoid those strifes of race and creed which it was a great part of the life work of the great Canadian who now, amid the sorrow of the nation, sleeps with his fathers at Catarqui, to reconcile, we may be the builders of a nation forming part of an empire greater than any the world has yet seen; and upon this continent to be a Canadian citizen may be even a prouder boast than was that of the citizen of an ancient empire, less great than is ours now, "Civis Romanus sum." Mr. President, I have spoken too long, and will now proceed to execute the duty with which your council has entrusted to me; and in the name of the contributors to this memorial, in the name of the president, officers and members of the Historical Society of Manitoba, I unveil this monument, which marks the scene of the battle of Seven Oaks, in the hope that when these rocks are seen from the historic path near which it is placed, and from the railway which passes close by, types in themselves of the change from the old to the new, it will be remembered that as nature has clothed with verdure this spot, once wet with blood, so should we, except as matters of historic interest and record, clothe with forgetfulness all animosities, jealousies, bitternesses and strifes, and turning to the fair prospects before us as an united people and nation, thank Almighty God that the sad past is indeed past, and implore His blessing upon our efforts for a brighter future.

At the close of his remarks His Honor unveiled the monument, the act being greeted with general applause. The monument is of native Selkirk stone, and the workmanship a credit to the designer, Mr. S. Hooper. It stands nine feet six inches in height, and its size is four feet at the base. On the top is carved a wreath of flowers. The inscription is on the west side, facing Main street. On the upper portion are carved the words, "Seven Oaks," and beneath is the inscrip-

tion: "Erected in 1891 by the Manitoba Historical Society, through the generosity of the Countess of Selkirk, on the site of Seven Oaks, where fell Governor Robert Semple and twenty of his officers and men, June 19th, 1816."

The ceremony of the unveiling was followed by several short addresses.

Rev. Canon Matheson spoke as follows: As a native of Manitoba, and one born within a few rods of this historic spot, I have been asked to say a few words on the occasion of the unveiling of this monument. Three-quarters of a century ago to-day my grandfather took part in the unfortunate conflict which occurred on the banks of this ravine, and was one of the few who survived that sad and fatal day in the annals of the Red River colony. He owed his life to the clemency and intercession of a friendly French-Canadian, and his record of the affair, known as Pritchard's narrative, is perhaps the most accurate which we possess to-day. As the adopted son in the home of that grandfather, I well remember what a close friendship was cherished and maintained to the relatives of that French Canadian for his kind deed to the head of our family in this land. Being, then, one of the direct descendants of a family so intimately connected with the history of the event which we mark to-day, my nature would be impervious to all sentiment were there not something stirred up in my breast by the ceremony of this afternoon. My feeling is one of thankfulness, and that thankfulness is of a three-fold nature. I am thankful, first of all, that we natives can claim such close kinship with the distant past of a country which is destined to have such a glorious future. I am thankful, in the second place, that a wise Providence overruled the disunion of that past, and so soon welded the discordant and oppressing elements of those early days in a community of a happy, contented and self-reliant people. It was well, perhaps, that our colony was thus at its inception baptized in struggle. It tended to make those pioneer forefathers of ours staunch men, staunch and true to lay broad and deep the foundations of that God-fearing little community in which it was our privi-

lege to be nurtured. Our present is a consequence of that past. We live to-day under the grateful shade of the tree which our forefathers planted. We reap in peace to-day the harvest, the seeds of which they sowed in toil and blood.

In the third place I would thank the members of the Historical Society and the Countess of Selkirk; I would thank them on behalf of the natives of the country, if I might be permitted to do so, for rearing this monument to perpetuate the memory of an event in our country's history. This is indeed a pleasing evidence of their interest in and of their close identification with the history of their adopted country. I will say no more, as there are other representatives of those connected with the event we commemorate who may wish to say a word or two. As I look around me, however, a thought comes to me. This monument erected in the parish in which it is my privilege to minister, and standing in my pathway as I go around with the message of peace which passes all understanding, will be a constant reminder to me of what we owe to the God of our fathers who has spoken His peace to this land, which was once the warpath of the plumed and painted savage of our plains. "Seven Oaks," once the scene of a battle bitter in its cruel intent, is now the scene of a battle benign in its benevolence, the scene of a contest in the civilities of a cultured life, the arena for the display of those amenities of social life which make it the meeting place, not of hostile factions but of hospitality's friends, the rendezvous where old times keep ever green the memories and friendships of the past, and where new-comers receive a warm welcome to the land of their adoption.

U. S. Consul Taylor remarked that he attended this interesting occasion with the assurance that he should enjoy the luxury of being a listener to President McBeth, Governor Schultz and Secretary Bell, and not a haunted man, oppressed by an engagement or a call to speak. Still he would endeavor to second what has been so well said of two Selkirk ladies. Firstly, he referred to Cicely Louisa, Countess of Selkirk, and the last of the title he regretted to add, whose visit to the

Selkirk Settlement, now Manitoba, in 1839 was a most interesting event. The consul was present on two occasions, a Sunday service at Kildonan church and a garden party on the site of Fort Douglas, now the residence of ex-Mayor Logan, and when the representatives of the colonists of 1812-16, (actual colonists in the instances of Matheson, and a Bannerman, and a Polson) were presented to her Ladyship her personal knowledge of every family was most wonderful. It was his privilege to be present with Mr. and Mrs. John Fraser at the anniversary of their marriage fifty years before, it being the first union of children born in the colony on the Red River. The Historical Society owes to her Ladyship the suggestion and the fact of the present memorial of Fort Douglas, and its site is the appropriate donation of Miss Mary Inkster of "Seven Oaks," a descendant of the sterling Norse element of the Orkney Islands—that invaluable portion of the population of Central Canada which is native to the soil in the names of Bannatyne, Norquay, Inkster, Clouston, Polson and others equally and honorably memorable. Yesterday—18th of June—was marked by a Norse demonstration—a kindred event in the ethnology of Manitoba. The Icelandic element of the Province, 5,000 strong, assisted by influential deputations from Minnesota and Dakota, including two representatives in the Legislature of North Dakota, celebrated by an imposing procession and exercises the inauguration of self-government in Iceland, 1,017 years ago. The oldest historic Scandinavian stock has found its new home in the great prairie ocean of Northwest America, and so is destined to be repeated in this new world the story of the bold Northmen of yore—the sons of Thor—who rolled the conquests of the Teuton to the gates of Imperial Rome and gave new and wholesome life to the civilization of Europe. So mote it be on the American continent.

Judge Dubue spoke of himself as being, not a descendant of the old settlers, but one of the pioneer settlers of the new generation, he having come here twenty years ago in the month of June. He had been glad to find a very fine country

and the people very hospitable. He said he had been glad to hear the references to the first white man who had come to this country, and referred to the fact that the foundation of a monument to La Verandrye had been commenced in St. Boniface.

Col. Villiers and Col. Howard were called upon to speak, and in a few words they expressed their pleasure at being present, and congratulated the Society on the completion of its enterprise.

Cheers were then given successively for the Queen, the Governor-General, the Lieutenant-Governor, and (at the call of his Honor) for the Historical Society and Lady Selkirk.



TRANSACTION No. 44.

3706.7
JANUARY 24TH, 1893.

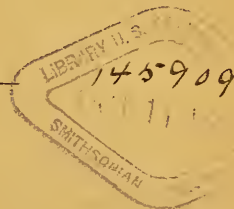
THE
HISTORICAL AND SCIENTIFIC SOCIETY
OF
MANITOBA.

The Social Customs and Amusements in the Early Days
in the Red River Settlement and Rupert's Land.

BY

JOHN MACBETH, ESQ.,

PRESIDENT OF THE SOCIETY.



WINNIPEG:

MANITOBA FREE PRESS PRINT.

1893.



The Social Customs and Amusements of the Early Days in the Red River Settlement and Rupert's Land.

A Paper read before the Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba on the 24th of January, 1893.

Mr. Chairman, Ladies and Gentlemen.

A short time ago during my absence from the City on holidays, a meeting of the Executive Council of the Historical Society was held, and at that meeting it was decided that among other papers that should be read during this present society year, there should be one by myself, and the subject was practically laid down on which I was to write. I, of course, was not there to enter a protest or to exercise my Presidential authority and rule the matter out of order. When I returned I found that protesting was of no avail as there seemed to be positive determination that I should do something for the Society that honored me on two occasions by electing me their President. I felt somewhat guilty of dereliction of duty and submitted meekly and with as much grace as I could.

The delicate subject selected for this paper is a wide one, and I trust that its incompleteness and shortcomings will be attributed to the unworthy hands in which it has been placed rather than to the subject itself.

It must be remembered here that as the population of the settlement was small there was no great diversity of amusements or of social functions in the Old Days, but such as they were they were plain and simple and to the mind of the writer particularly enjoyable.

In order to make a paper of any respectable length it will be necessary to digress from the text assigned me by my colleagues (I know I shall be pardoned by the clergymen present, as it is said that even they digress at times from their subjects.)

I will not here state how far back in the Red River days my own recollection goes, as it is not deemed necessary to state my age, but suffice it is to say that I well remember the "Good Old Days." One of my earliest recollections of festivities (and they were of such a boisterous character as to make a lasting impression on my mind) was the return of the Boatmen—as they were called—from York Factory. A short description of this interesting and at the same time very necessary personage may not be out of place, although most of you are familiar with the character, but few have seen him in his pristine glory.

The Boatman, Voyageur or Tripman, as he was variously called, belonged to that class of settlers who did not farm sufficiently to make them independent of the Hudson's Bay Co. or general merchant. The trips to York Factory were two in the year, known as the summer and fall trips. These were made for the purpose of bringing goods landed at York by the Hudson's Bay ships which brought cargoes of supplies for the interior, including the Red River.

These Boatmen were generally engaged during the winter preceding the voyage. If a man ran short of anything and had not the money wherewith to purchase, or something to exchange for the commodity required, he went to the Hudson's Bay Company's store or to some general merchant or freighter and got an advance and agreed to pay for same by going to York. He was then bound to be ready to start about the first of June. In a crew of eight men there was generally found one who furnished fun for the others or who, from some peculiarity, was made the butt of the party. There was generally a fiddle or two in the crowd and lots of men who could play it. I am told by a gentleman personally cognizant of the fact, that in one instance there was a boat's crew, where the fiddle was passed down from the steersman to the bowsman and every man in the boat could play it. It was said on these trips when a flat stone was found, it was at once utilized as a hall-room floor, and each man in turn "hoed it down" to the enlivening strains of the fiddle. When the different brigades met at York Factory and whilst waiting for their cargoes, I am told by gentlemen who have witnessed the scenes of boisterous hilarity and continued festivities that it simply (to use a purely original phrase) "beggars description."

Upon their return to the Red River and immediately upon unloading their boats, a goodly supply of the "ardent" was broached, and they proceeded to make "Rome howl." It was generally looked upon as a way (a little noisy, if you like) they had of celebrating a safe return from a more or less dangerous and perilous voyage.

In those early days people were "married and given in marriage," and I believe the custom prevails even in our

times of greater advancement and enlightenment; but oh! what a different affair a wedding in the old times was from one of the present day!

At the time of which I speak, a marriage license cost the large sum of thirty shillings (about \$7.50). As there were very few Rothschilds or Vanderbilts in the country then (although many have appeared on the scene lately, especially during the "boom") economy was practised, and the good old fashioned custom was resorted to of publishing the banns.

You will pardon me if I digress for a second. I used the words "thirty shillings" a moment ago, and they remind me of a story told me by that prince of genial and social old timers, the late lamented Hon. John Norquay. The incident which actually occurred, was this. In the early days the currency was pounds, shillings and pence, and when at the time of the transfer it was changed to dollars and cents, it was some time before the old settlers could master the new system. For instance, a certain woman was asked to sell a wavy, several of which her husband had just brought home, and she was offered fifty cents a piece for them. She indignantly rejected the offer, stating emphatically that she could not take less than one and six pence apiece for them, which sum of course was readily and cheerfully given to the intense happiness and delight of the worthy dame. The purchaser you will observe, was ahead a cool 12½ cents on each bird he bought. Now to return to the subject.

A wedding in the olden times in the Red River Settlement was not the tame affair of the present day. It did not consist in orange blossoms, ushers, a wedding breakfast, congratulatory speeches, the orthodox honeymoon trip. A wedding breakfast they certainly had, and several of them for that matter, and dinners and suppers galore. Where such an important event took place in the settlement the friends and relatives of both the high contracting parties were invited. The mode of invitation differed from the present style. Instead of sending out a card something like this "Mr. and Mrs. Smythe request the pleasure of your company at the marriage of their daughter Mary Araminta Jane to Mr. Fred. Augustus Horatio de Jones on Wednesday the 15th of February, 1893, at 12 o'clock, noon, at St. John's Cathedral" they adopted a surer way, especially considering the postal facilities of the times. The father of the bride generally went personally from house to

house and extended the invitation to those he wished to have. I am told that sometimes the bride and one of her bridesmaids did the inviting. This custom certainly did not obtain within our recollection.

The festivities generally commenced the day before the solemnization of the marriage (which usually took place on a Thursday). Eating, drinking, but principally dancing was the order. On the eventful day proper the happy couple drove to church, accompanied by a long procession of invited guests, in carriages and cutters, beautiful horses all bedecked with wedding flowers &c., and every "gallant" accompanied by a "partner." Sometimes, it is said, "partners" were scarce, and sometimes some young belle was not a little embarrassed by the importunities of her several admirers to accompany him to the church. She had, however, to make a choice, often weeks before the event, and although she must necessarily overwhelm several with disappointment and grief she might safely be trusted (as now) to choose the right one. I have a very distinct recollection of only succeeding in getting a "partner" for a wedding, (the last of the kind we attended) at Prince Albert, some years ago, after four or five unsuccessful attempts; and at that time when I was just about that age when I thought—well: that I was not a *very* bad looking fellow.

The return of the marriage party or procession was generally made the opportunity for the young men to give an exhibition of the speed of their horses (and they had splendid horses then) and the man with the slowest invariably brought up the rear at the finish. There was one invariable rule in these drives and that was that no one would dare pass the bridal party in the race, as to do so would be to commit a breach of etiquette which would neither be overlooked nor forgiven.

We have now arrived at the house of the bride's parents which was always used for the feast. The house of a neighbor was always cheerfully given up for the dancers (all unnecessary furniture—including beds sometimes—was bundled out, and now in very truth the fiat went forth "On with the dance, let joy be unconfined." These festivities have been known to go on with unabated vigor and joyous hilarity for three days and three nights. It is true they were rather hard on moccasins but people very often provided themselves with more than one pair, so that when one was worn out a new pair was ready. But the dance went

on until there was nothing but what was worn out except the floor, and sometimes there was very little of that left. Some may perhaps think that the moccasin part of this account is over drawn, but I can assure you seriously that I am, if anything under the mark. Of course you must understand that when I use the word "dancing" I mean "dancing;" not the dances of the modern days; oh no, instead of pianos and orchestras we had the good old fashioned fiddle, and always plenty of able and willing hands to play it. Instead of the effeminate, easy going and dreamy waltz, we had the always exciting and lively "Red River jig," which required not only skill to dance but lots of endurance as well; instead of the modern Cotillon and Quadrille we danced the ever reliable old Scotch Reel or Reel of Four, and instead of the somewhat lazy and languid Lancers we danced the ever popular and swingy old Eight hand Reel.

The next important step after the marriage festivities was the "Kirking." On the Sunday immediately after the marriage the bride and bridegroom accompanied by the groomsmen and bridesmaids, drove to church, their horses still flying the many colored ribbons used on the wedding day, and the bridal party themselves all arrayed in their wedding habiliments. They all sat together and were of course the cynosure of all eyes in the church and it is pretty safe to opine that the clergyman would have to use considerable lung power and do a good deal of "desk pounding" to attract the eyes of his flock from this particular seat to himself; and I fancy that the dresses, bonnets &c. of the bride and bridesmaids would be the chief topic of conversations after church instead of the sermon. The bridal party all dine together that day at the house of the bride.

Now you may perhaps imagine that this would end the festivities, but not so. The bridegroom is still at his father-in-law's, and he must be brought back to the paternal roof, and the new daughter must be welcomed right royally. The day fixed for the groom to take home his bride (always to his father's house where he lived whilst preparing his own home) was Tuesday. It was now the turn of the parents of the groom. They invited, in the same way as before, all their relatives and friends to celebrate the arrival home of their daughter-in-law. It is now the same old story fiddle, "jig," feasting and making merry, generally till sunrise the following morning, when all go home,

put off their wedding garments, and go about their daily work as if they had been peacefully slumbering all night instead of passing a sleepless night, enjoying to the fullest the giddy dance.

During the winter months private parties were frequently given and as everybody knew everybody, they were much more enjoyable than some of the larger and more formal parties of the more recent times.

An "At Home," a "Five O'clock Tea," and the modern "Card Party," were unknown, as was also a "reception day." Instead of having some stated day in the week for receiving calls or *visits* as we called them, every day was a reception day. When one lady wished to visit another she simply went when it was convenient for her to do so, and always found the latch string on the outside of the door. She invariably found the lady on whom she was calling *at home*, if she was not *out*, but never found her *out* when she was *at home*. I was told by a lady a short time ago that the words "at home" had two meanings, one of which was "*not receiving*." I, of course, took her word for it and did not worry over looking through different lexicographies, to ascertain if the words really had two meanings.

Christmas Day in the Red River settlement was not very well observed, but New Year's Day was *the day* that was kept. It was a great day, a red letter day, in fact,—especially for the aborigines. Every Indian who had a flint lock gun would have it loaded up, and it was a very common thing for settlers to be disturbed about day light on the New Year's morning by a volley of musketry outside the door. This was the way that our dusky brothers ushered in the day that would be to them one of continual feasting.

After this preliminary the Indians would divide themselves into squads and start on their visits calling at every house on their way and getting something to eat at each place. If they could not eat all that was given them a receptacle was always convenient in which the remnants were stowed away to be discussed later on. The settlers always prepared beforehand for their numerous callers of this class. When a party of them entered the house the men shook hands all round. The squaws moreover were always determined not to be behind their pale sisters in keeping up the customs that prevailed, of kissing on New Year's day and insisted on kissing anybody and everybody. While I didn't object *seriously* to the

osculatory custom of the times I was always imbued with the idea that the process should be mutually agreeable to the participants, and for that reason I was impelled—however rude it may have been—to make a hasty exit through the front door as our dusky lady friends came in by the back, in order to avoid the terrible ordeal.

In the summer people were generally too busy to devote much time to amusements and pleasure. The gun and fishing rod were the principal means of sport. We used to play a game we called "Bat," which was practically the same as baseball, only we had no "leagues," no "professionals," and no "gambling." We had no croquet or lawn tennis, although we used to wear a negligé costume such as tennis players now affect, shirt and trousers, and I am sure that we wore it for the same reason that the tennis player does—to keep cool in. The one however was to *play* in, the other to *work* in.

The 24th of May was always a great day in those old Red River times. People would gather at Fort Garry from Lake Winnipeg to Portage la Prairie and as far up the Red River as Pembina and St. Joe across the line. We had no military manoeuvres but horse racing was the whole sport. We have on many occasions ridden races from the Fort down what is now Main Street, but was then only a trail, to about where we are now standing.

There was very keen competition in the different events, and every race was run on its merits—the best horse invariably winning the race. There was very little gambling on the events and pool selling was unknown. Neither was there any "jockeying," "pulling horses," or "selling races." There was always much satisfaction among those who took an interest in horse races to know that, if their favorite did not win he was at least fairly beaten.

We knew nothing about Dominion Day, but I can well remember that when the 4th of July was celebrated by our American friends, then resident in Winnipeg, the proper salute was fired and the day generally observed with horse racing and other sports.

A few days ago I came across a short poem written by the Hon. Harvey Rice, an old gentleman in his 81st year, and sung at the first annual convention of the early settlers association of Cuyahoga County, Cleveland, O. The poem seems to me to be very appropriate to the conditions of the people in this country in the good old days.

Give me the good old days again
When hearts were true and manners plain
When boys were boys till fully grown,
And baby belles were never known ;
When doctors' bills were light and few,
And lawyers had not much to do ;
When honest toil was well repaid,
And theft had not become a trade.

Give me the good old days again
When only healthy meat was slain ;
When flour was pure and milk was sweet,
And sausages were fit to eat ;
When children early went to bed
And ate no sugar on their bread ;
When lard was not turned into butter,
And tradesmen only truth could utter.

Give us the good old days again,
When women were not proud and vain ;
When fashion did not sense out-run
And tailors had no need to dun ;
When wealthy parents were not fools,
And common sense was taught in schools ;
When hearts were warm and friends were true,
And Satan had not much to do.

THE HONORABLE HUDSON'S BAY CO.

This paper would be far from complete if something were not said of the social customs of officers and people generally connected with the Hon. Hudson's Bay Co.

Sometimes, it is said, that the affix "honorable" is to the name of some person whose moral character would not entitle him to it, but the experience of the old settlers in their dealings with this Company, would justify the term Hon. Hudson's Bay Co. in every sense of the word. Possibly no individual company or corporation had greater opportunities for imposing on the credulity and ignorance (of business matters) of the unsophisticated aborigines of this country as had this gigantic Hudson's Bay Co., whose forts, posts and establishments were in every conceivable part from Labrador to the North Pole. The company was generally fortunate and wise in the selection of its officers and employes. Young gentlemen sent out from the old country and some selected from among the natives of the country, were gentlemen in every sense of the word. They nearly all started at the foot of the Hudson's Bay ladder and were generally young men of education and culture, and many of them of more than ordinary attainments—young men whose early home training was moulded on principles of morality, honesty and probity. These

gentlemen, beginning, as I have already said, at the foot of the ladder, became in after years, (some of them many years of devoted service) prominent in the administration of the affairs of the company. By fair and honest dealings with the Indians and natives they certainly won their gratitude, esteem and confidence. I am indebted to a gentleman who lived for some years at York Factory, for a description of the life at that place, and to another gentleman who resided several years in the far north for the happenings in the icy regions. Both those gentlemen were connected with the Hudson's Bay Co., but with that native modesty, characteristic of the officers of the Company, they would not allow their names to be mentioned.

With reference to the social customs of officers who were from time to time stationed at the Upper and Lower Forts it may be said that they always joined with the old settlers in their pleasures and amusements, and were always welcome guests at parties, weddings &c. given by the settlers, and it is needless to say that with that unbounded and royal hospitality for which the officers of the company were noted, they were not slow to reciprocate the attentions skewn to them by the old settlers. When the officers set themselves out to entertain they did it in magnificent and princely style, regardless of expense, and those who were fortunate enough to be invited to one of their parties at either of the Forts were always treated with an unbounded hospitality. They never did anything by halves.

LIFE AT YORK FACTORY.

New Year's day at York, as it was at all other posts, was *the* day of the year, and was celebrated with much ceremony. At 5 o'clock in the morning the clerks and staff would be called by the steward to meet the officer in charge in the mess-room which was generally in the residence of the "bourgeois" and then after hand-shakings, compliments and greetings, refreshments were served. After partaking of the good things they retired. After them came in the tradesmen to exchange greetings with the officer in charge. They then gave place to the laborers, in number about 40, who called and also received the hospitality of the Chief Officer. After these came the women and children of the Fort and they in turn were treated to a supply of cake, dried fruit &c., and they went on their way rejoicing.

It was now the Indians' turn. They

generally congregated about the Fort at New Year's to participate in the good things that were going about that time. They were invariably well treated, and if not identical with their white brethren they were fully as pleased and satisfied with their kind reception.

On New Year's evening the officers in charge of the Factory gave a grand dinner and ball. To the latter all the employes of the company were invited, the best of good fellowship prevailed and dancing was kept up until morning. The custom of giving this annual ball was not only kept up at York but at every post in the country, from the remotest station on the Labrador coast to the great Yukon in the Arctic Circle.

Another great event of the year was the arrival of the Hudson's Bay ship at York Factory which occurred about the 20th August and brought all the supplies for the year. This was an event of great rejoicing and was announced by the firing of six big guns. This ship brought one of the two packets received during the year from the outside world. The excitement of opening and reading letters from over the sea was intense; some letters bringing tidings of joy and some of sorrow; some telling of continued health and happiness of friends, and others that some dear relative or friend had gone over to the great majority. Perhaps none were more anxious for the tidings brought over by the great ship than the pioneer missionary and his wife, for not only were they anxious over the arrival of their few supplies of luxuries from friends at home but what news would it bring them from their dear children whom they had to send home to be educated. One can easily imagine how eagerly every word of their semi-annual letters would be devoured, and what happiness good tidings of their dear ones would bring to this self-sacrificing and devoted missionary and his brave wife. All honor, we say, to the devotion of these missionaries to their Master's work, to the men who would sever family ties and associations of their youth to brave the hardships and perils of pioneer missionary work in the frozen regions of an uncivilized country.

The men not engaged in unloading and storing the goods from the ship occupied their time in exchanging news or admiring the nice things brought out for them.

All this time the brigades from the interior were camped along the river bank, and kept up a continuous round of festivities, until their cargoes were deliver-

ed to them, and the sturdy tripmen once more got down to their hard work and commenced their homeward voyage to the Saskatchewan or Red River as the case might be. The arrival home of these boats with their precious cargoes was not only a time of great rejoicing among the voyageurs, as we have already shewn, but it was a great event in the settlement. Everybody knew that a quantity of nice goods had arrived for the Hudson's Bay Co. and the few general merchants, then doing business, and everyone was anxious to have a share of the good things before they were all gone, as the supplies were limited—decidedly limited if compared with the stocks now imported by the average merchant. It is true our wants were not so great or so many as now, but we were just as anxious to get the best that was going then as are the people of more recent times. The fashions were not then quite so fickle or changeable, and I was going to say not quite so absurd or ridiculous in many instances, but on second and calmer thoughts I will not draw a comparison, as it might not be in favor of the more modern styles, and I have grave fears that I might incur the severe displeasure of some of the fair sex and bring down the wrath of others on my devoted head. But I think I hear some of them saying "What do men know about fashions, anyway?" We meekly say "Nothing": they are past finding out and away and beyond the comprehension of the average man.

In the Hudson's Bay posts in the far north there was always an air of excitement in the community, including the Indians, a few days before New Year's, as the Indians began to congregate at the Fort, knowing that they would be participants in the festivities of the season.

On New Year's morning, often before daylight, the officers' quarters are visited by all the employes of the company and by the Indians, all supplied with guns of every description. At a given signal volley after volley was fired until the officer made his appearance: after hand shaking and exchange of greetings refreshments were served in the shape of tea, coffee and cake.

At some posts it was customary for the officer in charge, his clerks and employes, each with a train of dogs, if possible, to go for a drive. They generally started quietly but on the return when everyone was endeavoring to get the lead the excitement was so intense that all regard or respect of superiors was forgotten, and each one with his whip cracking

and yells to encourage the dogs, would strive for first place.

All previous records of a first class dog fight were climaxed by the spectacle that was presented sometimes, when some 75 or 100 dogs got into an entangled scuffle.

A grand dinner and ball was given by the officers in charge in the "Big House" and everybody enjoyed themselves till morning.

In the winter months in the north the days were so short that most of the amusements were indoors, although some of the keener sportsmen indulged in the chase. When card playing became monotonous a little concert was got up and a pleasant hour was spent singing the good old songs.

As an instance of the wonderful adaptability of man to his surroundings at Fort Simpson and Fort Chippewayan billiard tables were made; the legs and top were of spruce, the latter thoroughly levelled with a spirit level. The cushions and balls were of course imported. The cues were of birch and the tips of old tan leather carrying-straps and stuck on with glue. I am told that these tables compared very favorably with those now in use.

It may be surprising that in a country so isolated there should be found a good library but such there was at Fort Simpson, the centre of the Great McKenzie district. This library was formed by subscription from the officers and men and by donations of books from the Hudson's Bay officers well known in the country. In the autumn of each year the officer in charge of the different posts gets a supply of books which are returned the following year and a fresh supply is obtained. This library was a great boon and was very much appreciated.

To attempt to describe the hardships, difficulties and many privations, even to starvation itself, endured by the devoted officers and men of the Hudson's Bay Co., in this unsettled land of wonderful distances would only result in failure. Their dangerous summer voyages and the indescribable hardships of their long winter trips on snowshoes, with their dog trains, sleeping out in the snow, with nothing but the canopy of heaven for a roof, with very scanty bedding and often not enough food to satisfy the cravings of their appetites we have often heard about but we cannot describe. The indomitable courage and unflinching pluck of these men is well known. In the midst of greatest trials, even death, almost certain death staring them in the face, they would invariably rise to the occasion

and successfully combat and overcome the many difficulties in their path. They were *grit* right through and were not made of the stuff that would sit down and mope or indulge in useless repinings under difficulties and privations.

It often seemed to me wonderful how cheerful, contented and happy these men could be in their isolated condition, their long distances from relatives and friends, from whom they can only hear perhaps one a year. Many of these Hudson's Bay gentlemen, having been accustomed to the best society in the civilized centres of the Old World, yet we hear of them quite contented in their solitary posts, often with only dogs and savages for their companions and sometimes entirely alone in the snow-clad regions of the far north.

I well remember meeting one of the Hudson's Bay officers on his return after years of absence from an extended furlough on a visit to relatives and friends in England, some of whom he had not seen for over 25 years. I said to him "Mr. ———, I am surprised that after tasting once again the sweets of civilization after a lifetime of banishment and isolation, that you did not remain in England and spend the rest of your days, in peace and comfort and plenty, instead of returning to again endure the privations and hardships of life in the frozen north." He looked at me in surprise and said "My dear fellow, in England I'm a very small toad in a very large puddle: in my district in the north I'm absolute monarch."

Your patience must be now fully exhausted and I will not further try it, but will conclude by reading a short poem written by Wm. Gerrond Esq., lately of High Bluff, but now of Prince Albert. Mr. Gerrond was Bard of the Portage la Prairie St. Andrew's Society and was always ready with a poem to read on St. Andrew's Day. Many of his efforts were of very considerable merit, and when he expressed the ideas of an old settler in poetry, on the old and new order of things in this country he certainly did it well.

Before reading the poem I may explain that there are perhaps some present who will not understand that the words "me whatever" which occur three times in the poem, was and is yet, a very common expression amongst the natives of this

country, and they really mean, "for my part." For instance instead of saying "For my part I'm going to the Fort," one would say, "Mr. Whatever," I'm going to the Fort. With this explanation I will give you the poem.

WHAT WAS AND IS: AN OLD SETTLER'S
IDEA.

O for the times that some despise,
At least I liked them, me whatever,
Before the Transfer made wise
Or politics had made us clever

Then faith and friendship, hand in hand,
A kindly tale to all were telling,
From east to west, throughout the land,
Contentment reigned in every dwelling.

'Twas then we all in corduroys
Would travel to the church on Sunday
And listen to the good man's voice,
And do as he had said on Monday.

Our women too, both wife and maid,
Had lovely tresses for a bonnet,
A goodly shawl upon the head
Was all she ever put upon it.

Then gold was scarce, twas very true,
But then it was not much we wanted,
Our artificial wants were few,
And we were happy and contented.

But now alas the times are changed,
At least I think so, "me whatever,"
And artificial wants are ranged,
And piled in heaps along the River.

Our women's thrown away the shawl,
And got instead a showy bonnet
With many a costly faiderall
Of feathers, silk and lace upon it.

Our men despising corduroys
In broadcloth grace the church on Sunday
And then go home to criticize
And do as they've a mind on Mouday,

Our good old Faith's supplied with doubt
And friendship killed by speculation;
And sweet content is driven out
And grumbling envy fills her station.

O for the times that some despise,
At least I liked them, me whatever,
Before the Transfer made us wise
And politics had made us clever.

The Historical and Scientific Society
of Manitoba.

THE OLD CROW WING TRAIL

— BY —

HON. JOHN SCHULTZ, M.D., F. Imp. I.

LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR OF MANITOBA,

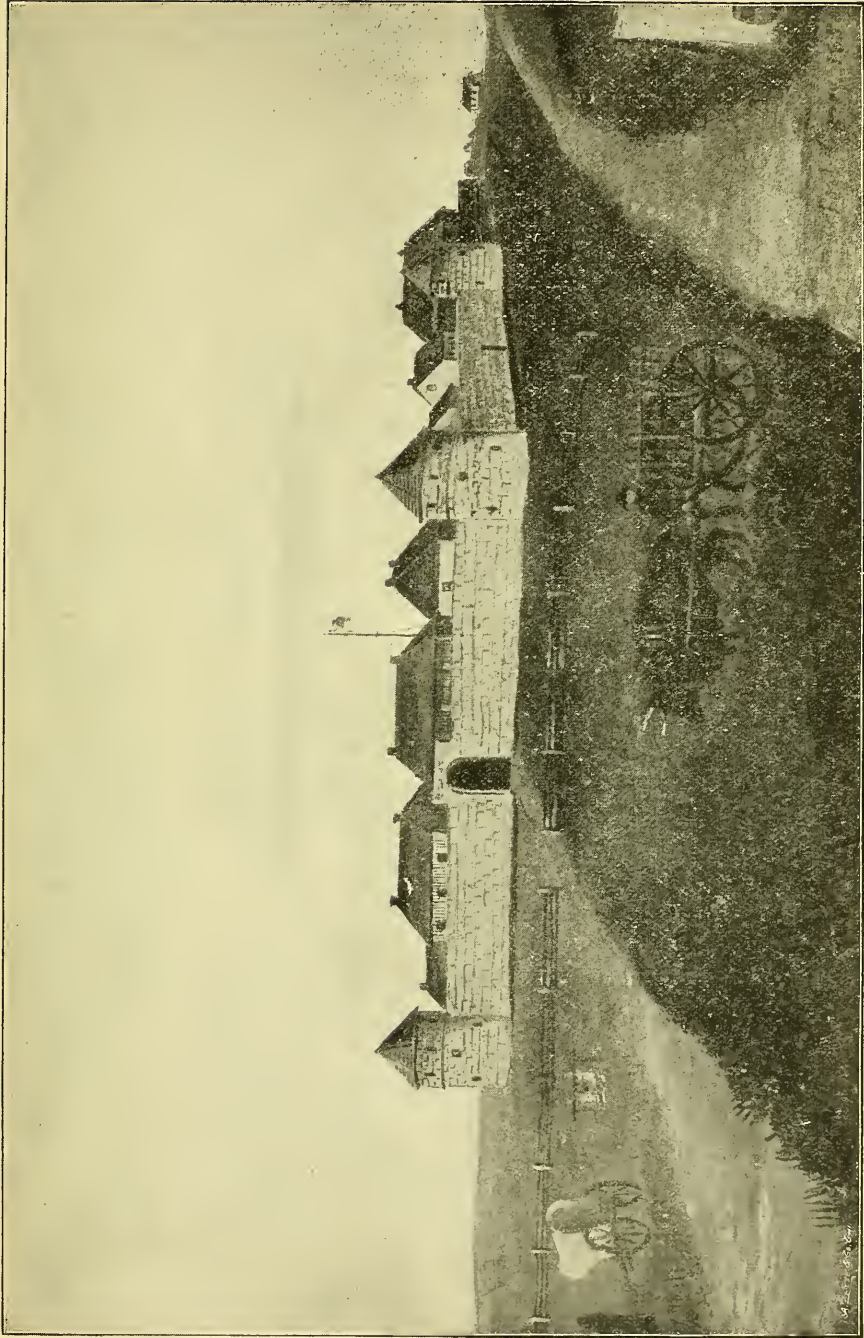
A LIFE MEMBER OF THE SOCIETY.

147527

WINNIPEG :

MANITOBA FREE PRESS PRINT.

1894.



FORT GARRY IN 1860.

The Old Crow Wing Trail.

Mr. President, Ladies and Gentlemen.

It has fallen to my lot to have seen and traversed, with the exception of part of one, all the summer and winter roads which, many years ago, connected the Red River or Selkirk settlement with the outer world, and they may be enumerated as follows :

1. The old North West Company's route, from the mouth of the Kaministiquia through Shebandowan, Lac des Mille Lacs, the beautiful lakes and streams of the height of land between Superior and Lake Winnipeg to Rainy Lake, the lovely river which drains it into the Lake of the Woods, that lake and the river which bears its waters to Lake Winnipeg, which with its rapids, chutes and falls is, I think, unsurpassed in beauty by any river of Laurentian Canada.

2. The Hudson's Bay York Factory route, too well known to need any description, and of which I have only seen a part.

3. The Breckenridge Flats route, skirting the west bank of the Red River to near where it receives the name at the junction of the Sioux Wood and Ottetail rivers, and crossing the Red River at Georgetown or Abercrombie to traverse to the Ottetail Ford the flats which gave the route its name, and enter the rolling lake-dotted country which lay between it and St. Cloud on the Mississippi, 80 miles above St. Paul.

4. The winter monthly mail carriers' dog train route of the old days, which crossing the Red River at Fort Pembina, sought for shelter and night encampment the skirting of Minnesota woods at the sources of the eastern affluents of the Red River, as far as Red Lake, crossing which on the ice it traversed many of the small lakes which form the extreme headwaters of the great Mississippi down to Leech Lake, and thence southward, passing through mazes of small lakes and through the hunting-grounds of the " Pillagers," to the junction of the Crow Wing with the Mississippi River, and then

down the east bank of that stream to Fort Ripley, Sauk Rapids and St. Anthony, to St. Paul.

5. The military stage and early Red River steamer route, which connected St. Paul with Fort Garry in 1860.

6. The Dawson route, which cut off the laborious navigation of the Kaministiquia River by a road to Lake Shebandawan, using thence the old water route of the North West Co., with dams on several streams, better landings and improved portages to the Lake of the Woods and the North West Angle, from which a road had been cut to St. Anne and St. Boniface, thus saving the broken navigation of the Winnipeg River, the crossing of the head of Lake Winnipeg, and the ascent of the Red River.

7. The old Crow Wing Trail, opened in 1844 by a few adventurous spirits under direction of William Hallett, who, having been attacked by the Sioux on their way to St. Paul by Lac Travers and St. Peter, sought safety in returning by this route, many miles of which had to be cut through the woods.

Of these seven routes of travel I have, Mr. President, ladies and gentlemen, chosen the last-mentioned because, unlike most of the others, it may not be traversed to-day. The ploughshare of the Minnesota settler has obliterated its once deeply marked triple track, and even where, like the old buffalo paths of Southwestern Manitoba, these may in some places be distinguished, the fence of the old and the new settler bars the way.

Another reason may be found in the fact that over it I made my first prairie journey, that from one of its encampments I saw the last herd of buffalo ever seen east of the Red River, and that though I am about to describe it as seen by me in a peaceful journey late in the fall of 1860, I was to traverse it again when comparatively disused during the year of the Sioux massacre in Minnesota, as the only hope of reaching Fort Garry from St. Paul, where I then was, when a camp fire was out of the question, each river-ford and bluff

of timber to be avoided, and a stealthy Indian tread to be fancied in the rustle of every leaf.

Coming up from Kingston in the spring of 1860 by way of the lakes to Chicago, one railway only was then in existence in the direction I wished to travel, its termination being Prairie-du-Chien, on the Mississippi. From this point the only connection to St. Paul, then a large frontier town and trading post, was by steamers built for the navigation of the upper Mississippi, and well do I remember my first look at these extraordinary boats; accustomed as I was to seeing the vessels used on the great lakes, where strength and solidity is required, they seemed frail to absurdity in contrast. The supports of the upper decks, scarcely heavier than the trellis work of grape vines, were called stanchions; and I discovered that two inch oak was considered heavy planking for these extraordinary craft. The boiler was on deck, the four feet of hold not of course having room for it, and the power was conveyed to an immense wheel at the stern, which, extraordinary as it looked to one accustomed to the heavy side wheels and screws of the steam craft on other waters, was yet found to serve an admirable purpose when approaching the shallows and sand bars in the upper part of the river.

No ordinary rule of navigation seemed to be followed in the running of these steamers; and watching everything with the curiosity and interest of nineteen, I especially marked the method in which the "heaving of the lead," which was ordered from the wheel-house, as we approached some shallow navigation, was carried out by the mate on the fore-deck. That functionary first seated himself near the bow, with his legs hanging over the unbulwarked deck, and in this position, with a ten-foot pole, the lower four feet of which were painted alternately red and white, he plunged it into the water, announcing as he drew it up "three feet full;" plunged again, he announced "three feet scant;" another effort brought "two-and-a-half feet;" then the bell rang and the steamer's speed was decreased, and when "only two feet" was announced, the

order was given to "back her." Her bow was then turned towards another part of the bar, and when "two feet full" was announced as the result of the next effort, the bell was rung "go ahead," and the steamer "North Star" wriggled with an eel-like motion, which set the glasses jingling in the cabin, and made one feel as though riding an hippopotamus, over the deepest part of the bar, when "two-and-a-half feet," "three feet," "three-and-a-half feet," were announced in quick succession, followed by another dip of the pole which, passing beyond the four foot mark, brought the announcement from the mate, who rose at that moment to put away his pine lead-line: "no bottom."

Fine weather, and the beautiful scenery along the banks of the upper Mississippi, made the trip a pleasant one, and brought us safely to St. Paul; Minnehaha was visited, and the Falls of St. Anthony, as well as the beautiful and historic promontory, then crowned by Fort Snelling; then came the question of the remainder of the journey, over 650 miles, which lay between that city and Fort Garry.

The first stage line had just been given the contract for the carriage of the mails to the then remote military outpost of Fort Abercrombie, with a bonus large enough to induce the contractors to agree to the stipulation demanded by the government, that the mails should be carried in "overland" coaches with four horses; and these military conditions facilitated my traversing that part of the journey. Shortly before this Anson Northrup, a well known Upper river steamboatman, had brought a small steamer, named after himself, during the spring flood up to near the head of the Mississippi River, and from there had portaged the machinery and the boat, in sections, over to the head waters of the Red River, and the boat, which had been rebuilt and christened the "Anson Northrup," was then lying at Georgetown, the Hudson's Bay Company's temporary transportation post, 45 miles north of Abercrombie.

The journey on this stage was a pleasant one; the beautiful Minnesota lakes and rivers, on which temporary stage

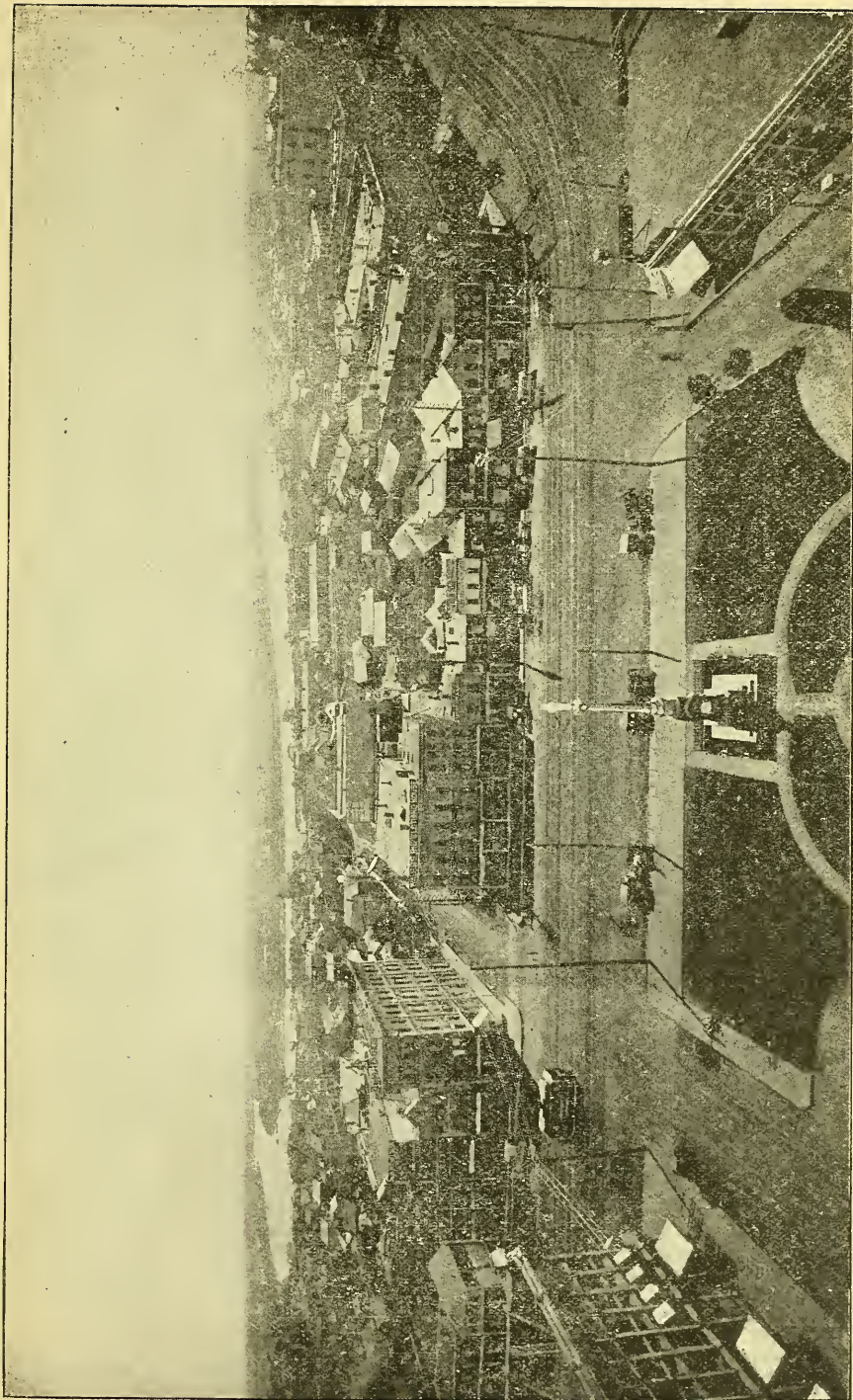
stations had been built, lent a great charm to it, which all have felt who have in summer traversed this route. At Georgetown, so named after Sir George Simpson, I inspected the craft which was to take us by the river about 500 miles to Fort Garry. It was a miniature edition of the Mississippi steamer, but there was an ominous look about the wheel-house, however, which was on all sides heavily protected by four inch oak planks, which the captain did not allay by saying "Of course you have your gun along with you." Further investigation shewed an arrangement by which cordwood for fuel could be so piled while the vessel was steaming on her course as to protect the lower deck from bullets. The good-natured engineer also shewed me a contrivance by which, at a moment's notice, he could turn a stream of hot water and scalding steam upon any body of Indians who might strive to take possession of the boat in case it should accidentally strike the bank, or land for additional fuel. All this was very new, very strange and very attractive to a young fellow who had only heard of such matters from incidental reading of Indian wars and forays, and when further explained, it appeared that the Red Lake Indians, after further thought, had become dissatisfied with the conditions of the treaty made with them by Governor Ramsay, of the then Territory of Minnesota, and proposed to prevent whites passing through or occupying their country till a new arrangement had been made.

Near Abercrombie I met the noted frontiersman George Northrup, in whose log cabin were a few books which showed superior culture. He had made himself familiar with the Ojibway tongue, and his home was secured by the presence of the forces at Fort Abercrombie; he had run the gauntlet of the forays between the Sioux and the Ojibways and yet retained the scalp which, poor fellow, he was afterwards to lose when acting as a scout for the General commanding the column, which, after the Sioux massacre of 1862, followed the Sioux to the crossing of the Missouri. He was to be one of the defenders of the boat; and his knowledge of their lang-

uage was to be brought into play in case of a parley with the irate Indians.

A detention of two weeks at Georgetown waiting for some small portions of machinery, however, saved us from difficulty with the Indians, none of whom we saw on our guarded passage down the river, they having probably gone back to their hunting grounds near Red Lake.

Pembina was reached, then only half a dozen houses ; the boundary line was crossed, then Fort Pembina, (the Hudson's Bay Company's wooden stockade) came in view. Thirty miles below we reached the first of the Red River settlements, the inhabitants congregating on the banks to see the strange steamer passing ; and it was with intense interest that we reached at last the bend of the river which disclosed the twin-towered cathedral of St. Boniface ; another bend, and Fort Garry came in view ; a straight run along the present course of the Winnipeg Rowing Club was traversed, when, turning up the Assiniboine to land where Main Street bridge now is, the groves, church and tower of St. John's could be seen across the almost blank intervening space ; and the steam whistle once belonging to a very much larger steamer, which had been blowing almost continuously for the previous half hour, brought, I think, what must have been very nearly every living human being for two miles around to the sloping bank where the steamer landed. Ascending this bank, Fort Garry, so often heard of, was inspected ; and even then time and an imperfect foundation had left cracks in the stone walls. It seemed, however, a place which a very few men could hold against a number unprovided with artillery ; for the bastions were pierced on all sides, not only for small arms, but cannonades were mounted at each embrasure. The front gate was massive, like the front wall, which faced towards the Assiniboine, and was entirely flanked and protected by bastion projections, so that there was no chance for any force unprovided with artillery to make a rush on the gateway. This gate, however, was only open on special occasions, the business gate of the Fort being on its eastern side, and was simply a sally-



WINNIPEG FROM CITY HALL.

port, where more than two men could not enter abreast. Passing down this side of the Fort was the King's highway, which led off in a northerly direction and was continued to Lower Fort Garry, or the "Stone Fort," and thence to the Peguis Reserve and the two Sugar Points. No building whatever was built upon this road; the houses of William Drever, the two of Andrew McDermott's, A. G. B. Bannatyne's, that of the Ross', Logan's, Bouvette, Brown and Inkster, being, where the land admitted of it, on the banks of the river some distance to the east.

I have said that the Cathedral of St. Boniface then possessed two towers, which have been made familiar to the whole of this continent by the beautiful description of the poet Whittier in the "Red River Voyageur." The Cathedral Church of St. John also possessed its tower, (a square and very massive one); and my first Sunday in the settlement found me one of its occupants during the morning service; and I noticed on the bordered wainscoting which extended up some height above the pews the plain evidence, on its paint work, of the extreme height, and of the gradually decreasing of the waters of the flood of 1852. From near its gate could be seen the residence of the Right Reverend Dr. Anderson, then Bishop of Rupert's Land; a building very little changed, except outwardly, built solidly of logs, and now the residence of His Grace the Primate of all Canada; and between the Church and this house stood the then closed College of St. John.

During my summer's stay I had visited the Peguis Reserve, the King's Highway which led to the Sugar Points of Mapleton, its southern border, crossing then as now the Image Plain; had seen the Kildonan Church, the Middle Church and that of St. Andrew's, and visited the Stone Fort; had seen St. James and Headingley Churches, crossed the White Horse Plains, where I saw its fine church; traversed "Le Grand Marais" to Poplar Point with its church, High Bluff and its place of worship, and that of the Portage, all

monuments of the earnest zeal and tireless efforts of Archdeacon Cochrane. I had seen the "Tepees" of far off tribes who had come to Fort Garry to trade, had laughed with our own Crees and Ojibways, who stood on the bank, at the unsuccessful attempt of two Plain Crees to cross the Red River in a bark canoe, these children of the prairie, whose home is on horseback, having no use for nor acquaintance with the paddle; had seen the Plain hunters come back with their loads of pemmican, dried meat, and the flesh of the buffaloes last seen by the returning brigades; had eaten of the Marrowfat and Berry pemmican, and oh, greater gustatory joy than all else, had partaken of the delicious hump, the odor and taste of which are still fresh in my memory after three and thirty years. The falling leaves and autumn tints of October 1860 reminded me, however, that I must leave for the winter this land of plenty and promise; and as the steamers had long since ceased to run, I began preparing for the trip which I am about to describe.

This road or trail, called by those at this end of it "The Crow Wing Trail," and at the other "The Old Red River Trail," was one which had been used for many years; and while our Metis and Crees were at war with the Sioux, it was considered both safer and shorter than the one on the west side of the River, until Fort Abercrombie was built; and even then was often used, as being less open to prairie fires, with better wood for encampments and high gravelly ridges to render part of it at least almost as good as a turnpike road. Its drawbacks were the many streams, eastern affluents of the Red River, which had to be forded, some of them, like the Red Lake River, being after heavy rains very formidable obstacles to loaded or even light carts. It was a favorite land route with Sir George Simpson, who died the year I first traversed it; and James McKay, his trusty and trusted voyageur, known to the English and French settlers as "Jeemie," and to the Sioux as "Jimichi," who was to become a member of the Legislative Council of Manitoba on the recommendation

of Governor Archibald, was proud of the fact that always on the tenth day of their start from Crow Wing at the stroke of noon from the Fort Garry bell he landed Sir George at the steps of the Chief Factor's House. Relays of horses enabled him to do this, rain or shine; and the slightest stoppage in muskeg or stream found McKay wading in to bring Sir George on his broad shoulders to dry land.

Fortunately for me, a more experienced head than mine had chosen the horses, selected the cart and saddle, and suggested the outfit for the journey; and, though I found soon after starting, that there were wrinkles in camp and travel that experience only can teach, still I acknowledge my indebtedness to my friend, and proceed to enumerate the outfit which he deemed sufficient to land me and the Canadian friend, who was to accompany me, safely at Crow Wing; and I give these in the order of their importance.

Two Red River ponies, who disdained oats and had never eaten of aught save prairie grass, dry or green, "Blackie" and "Bichon," both good types of their hardy class, short barrels, sturdy legs, long manes, and tails which touched their fetlocks; differing in disposition, however, Blackie having a bad eye and uncertain temper, with a disposition to smash things with his hind legs, which would have been fatal to a buggy, but was energy thrown away on a cart, when one knew how helpless he was with a clove hitch around the root of his tail with one end of a short piece of shaganappi, the other end of which was tied to the front cross bar of the cart, the eight or ten inches distance between the attached ends affording but little scope for the exercise of powers such as Blackie undoubtedly possessed. This peculiarity was not the only one of Blackie's, which would have placed him second to Bichon in this narrative, had he not some qualities useful indeed in time of trouble. He had a practice of trying to bolt when his harness was loosed, to escape the inevitable hobble without which Blackie, whose leadership Bichon, the tractable and gentle, always followed, would have left us on the prairie to our own

devices more than once ; and even with these shaganappi obstructions to his rapid locomotion he made time fast enough to make his capture, till his stomach was full, a very difficult matter. Though bad in these respects, he was good in others ; for the swamp must be deep that he could not pull a cart through ; and the bank of a stream just forded must have been steep and slippery indeed that Blackie's unshod feet could not scramble up. Bichon, the patient, would do his best and, failing, would lie down in the one or slide back to the bottom of the other. So that as we are apt, after many years, to remember the good and forget the bad, I have given the first place in this, I fear, rambling narrative, to Blackie ; though I acknowledge gratefully that it was on Bichon the obedient's back that I explored the bog or essayed the river crossing when the one was likely to be bad or the other deep. So much for the horses. The saddle was simply a tree, strapped on over a blanket, which was easier on the horses than the Indian saddle ; and the cart harness the dressed buffalo skin one of the time, with the collar and hames in one piece, short traces to iron pins in the shafts, to which also were attached the hold backs, which were the broadest and heaviest part of the harness. Shaganappi reins and a bridle with no blinkers completed this simple but efficient equipment.

Items Nos. 1, 2, 3 and 4 being now described, I come to an important one, No. 5, the cart, the popular impression of which now is that it was a ramshackle, squeaky affair, with wheels five feet high, each one of which dished outwardly, so that the felloes looked as if about to part company with the spokes and hub ; and those who have seen them as curiosities at an Exhibition wonder if the wood had shrunk, which left a loose opening where fellowe joined fellowe in the queerly dished wheel, or whether indeed the fellow who made these joints had been quite himself when he completed this wooden monstrosity, which had not a scrap of iron on or about it. Queer looking they undoubtedly were, as compared with the present trim buggy, though the squeak is a libel as applied to a lightly loaded travelling cart, which has been fairly treated by the

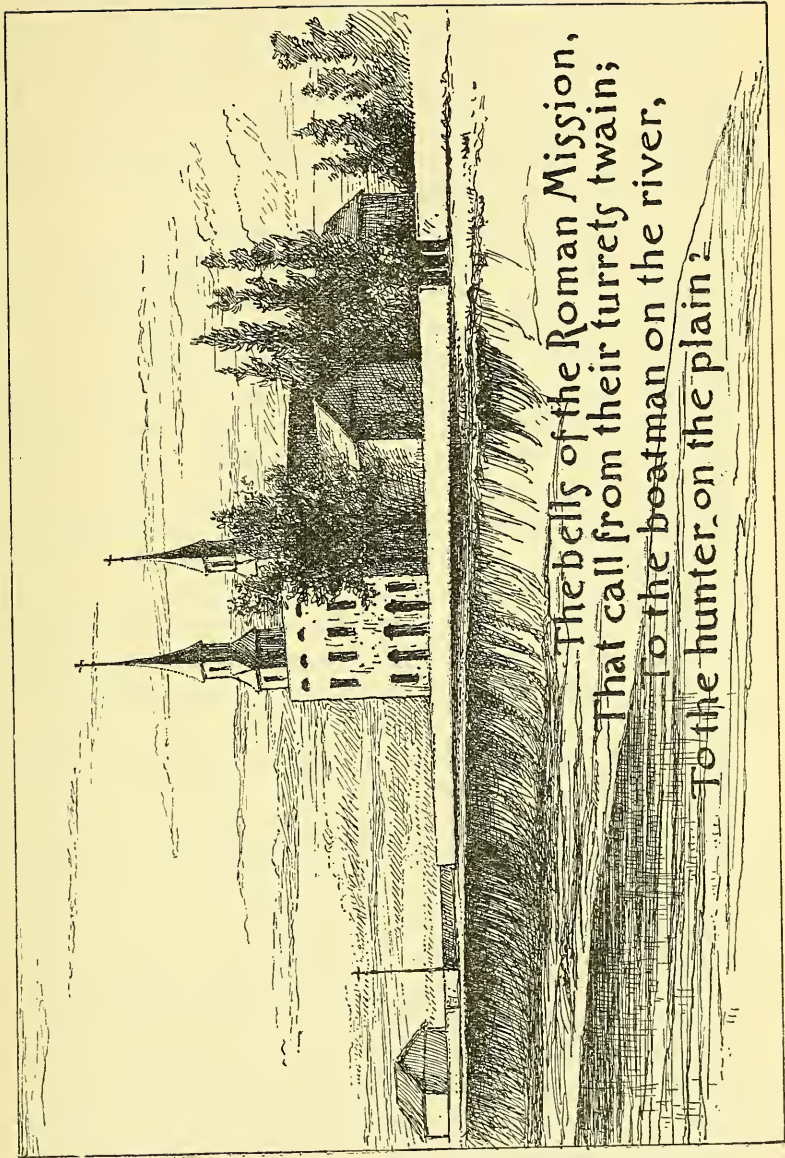
application of the scrapings of the frying pan to its axle ; yet no vehicle, I verily believe, which has been used before or since, was so suited for the traversing of a country where, in one day, it might have to travel over, with its three-inch-wide wooden tire, a shaking bog, a miry creek, a sandy shore, or a boulder strewn path up steep hills. At a cost of two pounds sterling, in the old days, one became the possessor of a vehicle, the high wheels of which made it easy to draw, the great dish of the wheels made it hard to upset, while the loose jointed felloes saved the wheel from wreck, by closing and yielding when a rock was struck in a deep river crossing, or the hidden stump in a newly cut trail was encountered. A very haven of rest wert thou, O cart, on the prairie, when, the long day of travel ended, a large square of canvas thrown over you made a tent before a camp fire better than any other, and an ark of safety when the swollen river was too deep to ford ; thy wheels off and under the box, with the same square of canvas about all, thou wast a boat made in ten minutes, in which two travellers, with their belongings, might paddle or pole from shore to shore in safety, leading the swimming horses behind.

My excuse for thus apostrophising my Red River cart as a sentient being is that, like Blackie, it had tricks of its own which puzzled the uninitiated. Attempt to ride in it in any way that one is wont to do in a civilized vehicle, and it soon *rattled* (if I may use a modern expression) its occupant, who found himself, to a musical accompaniment of frying pan and tin kettles, trying alternately to preserve himself from being pitched onto the pony, having his right or left ribs cracked against the side rail, or turning a somersault over the tail-board of the cart. No, there is only one way to ride in a cart with ease and pleasure, and that is seated in front on its floor, with your legs hanging down near the horse's tail. If you are luxurious, tie a broad piece of shaganappi from rail to rail to support your back, put an extra folded blanket under you, sway your body slightly with Blackie or Bichon's jog-trot, and you need not envy the occupants of a coach and

four. N. W., better known as "Commodore," Kittson appreciated this fact and never would in any of his later prairie trips ride in any other way or in any other vehicle.

As there is only one way to ride in a cart, so there is only one way of stowing its accessories; the most important of which is your half-sized axe. Put into the cart by a green hand, this useful implement becomes an engine of destruction; cuts into your packages of tea, etc., ruins your blankets and jolts along till its long handle reaches far over the tail board, and an extra jump tumbles it on to the trail, to delight the heart of the first Indian who passes, but to cause you to be extremely sorrowful when you have to make camp with a jack-knife, or replace an old axle. No, the axe should take no risks, and must have a leather socket for its head and a strap for its handle, and both outside the cart on one of the side boards. The gun is the next in importance; and for that, too, there is only one way, if you are not to risk shooting yourself or your companion. The butt must rest near your seat on the left side, the barrels in a loop to the top rail at an angle of 45 degrees, this arrangement, while making its carriage quite safe, enabling you to seize it quickly while yet the prairie chicken or duck is passing.

Not so dangerous as the two former, but infinitely more difficult to manage are the frying-pan, with its long handle, and the copper and tin kettles, to put the one loose into the cart was to blacken and smear all its contents; while the kettles, after a preliminary row-de-dow, would speedily part with their bales and lids, batter themselves into uselessness against the sides, and then jump out bodily on to the track. No, having tried many ways with kettles, I have come to the conclusion that only when inside one another and lashed securely below the centre of the axle, where they may jingle in peace, are they to be circumvented. As for the frying-pan, having been so often entirely beaten in attempts to muzzle one, I have long ago given up any thought of rendering innocuous that jingling, banging, crooked, perverse but indispensable adjunct to prairie travel.



The bells of the Roman Mission,
That call from their turrets twain;
To the boatman on the river,
To the hunter on the plain?

The cart cover I have incidentally mentioned ; this must be large and light, so as to completely envelope the cart, either as a tent or boat, and is preferable to a tent for light travelling, as it saves the carriage of pins and poles, may be used by the tired traveller much sooner at night, and may be folded in the grey dawn by the still half-asleep voyageur without tripping over pegs or ropes.

As prairie chicken and duck were abundant, the substantials for the trip were as follows :— Pemnican (marrowfat if possible) 20 pounds, hard biscuit, 30 pounds, tea, sugar, butter and salt ; a little flour, to make the “ Rubbiboo ” assume a bulky appearance when Indians had to be breakfasted or dined, their mid-day entertainment being generally avoided by giving them a biscuit each, and keeping on ourselves with a lunch of pemnican “ au naturel ; ” a pair of blankets each, a couple of buffalo robes, then costing 12 shillings sterling each our clothes in a couple of waterproof bags, and Lo ! the expedition was complete.

The voyage proper did not commence till Pembina was reached, for the traveller who brought the latest news and could speak a little French was always sure of the best they had in the way of bed and board at any of the houses of the Metis, whose settlement extended then half way to Pembina. One's horses too were always included in the generous hospitality, and Blackie and Bichon ate of the sweetest of the recently mown prairie grass. The second night was invariably passed at Pembina post, where the H. B. officer in charge (a predecessor of an esteemed member of our Society, Chief Factor Clark), extended similar hospitality on a better scale, and saw you safe on to the ferry in the morning. We had arrived at Pembina, had eaten buffalo steak for supper, had slept in a civilized bed, had porridge for breakfast, followed by buffalo steaks again, the first helpings of which were taken from the bottom of the liberal pile, to give point to the worthy master's standing explanation, that the Company's cooks always put the best at the bottom, I suppose for their own delectation after their master's meal was over. Our worthy host's close

scrutiny of our horses and equipment seemed to be satisfactory save that he insisted on his present of a little dried buffalo meat, which he said went far when you met Indians, and on learning that it was my first essay at prairie travel, urged me to take a young Indian part of the way to put us on the right track. This was a damper, for the trail on the east bank was in full view, going up from the ferry landing, and the line of the Red River skirting woods, through which it had been cut, could be distinctly seen, and so while middle age experience on the bank expostulated and advised, youthful ignorance and over-confidence at the horses' heads on the ferry thanked and assured, till the ferry touched the opposite bank, up which Blackie quickly sprang, anxious to be away from his floating footing, which yawed and jerked in the passage across. Alas, when was ever the confidence of the young justified as against the experience of their elders? The tracks, triple marked, were plain enough till the outer limit of the skirting woods was reached, and then they began diverging like the ribs of a fan, but as they all led through a low savannah, ignorance, to wit, myself, assumed that they would converge again on higher ground, and so the best marked of them was followed.

It was noticed that the trail we had chosen was a circuitous one, if we were to reach by it the first camping place on the bank of the "Two Rivers," but we supposed that to be due to the necessity of reaching higher ground; doubts, however, about it were set at rest after a couple of hours' travel, by its ending abruptly at the hay stack behind a willow bluff which had concealed it. There was nothing for it but to return and essay another track, which brought us to where hay had been cut and carted away; a third venture having failed, and the day being far spent, we gladly availed ourselves of the services of a Metis boy, who piloted us to where we could see the aspen bluff near the ford of the first river we had to cross. "Experientia docet" generally when too late; and the day ended with tired horses, and only a short part of a day's journey traversed. The two rivers, with their muddy, miry banks and bottoms, were crossed at dusk, for it is a rule in

prairie travel always to encamp at the further side of the stream, that the morning's start may be made with dry clothes and fresh horses; and while Blackie and Bichon are recruiting their energies on the rich grass of ungrazed savannah land, let me give a brief account of the character of this old trail from Pembina to Crow Wing. The low savannah country dotted with willow bluffs, such as I have mentioned, and which is drained by the two rivers, extends from Pembina to the Tamarac River crossing, about thirty-five miles from Pembina; and the traveller, after fording this, the Middle and Snake Hill rivers, all branches of one stream, enters upon a country of fine gravel ridges, running in the main north and south, with a growth of aspen willow and balsam poplar flanking them, the delicate catkins, buds and leaves of which in the early spring make them look like a long avenue where the landscape gardener has been at work. This extends nearly all the long way from the Snake Hill to the Sand Hill River, where the old gravel ridges of former lakes trend off too much to the east, and the trail crosses a high dry prairie which is fairly good for travel, but yet is unlike the voyageur's paradise I have just described, and I may as well explain why. The three essentials of prairie travel are wood, water and grass; and the swamp-flanked, tree-bordered ridges I have described furnished these in their perfection. Ducks and prairie chicken constantly flying up, good encampments anywhere to right or left of track, safety from prairie fires, which cannot run in such a country, and the best of pasturage till the snow falls, for the ponies; while on the other hand the dry level prairie affords no safety from the mad rush of the fierce fires its now dried herbage, save the objectionable one of starting another to your leeward; there are long stretches between watering places, wood only on river banks, and no shelter from any preliminary canter which old Boreas may choose to take before he settles down to his winter's pace; and as it was the 18th of October before we started on our journey, the beautiful Indian summer might or might not last us through our trip.

Level high treeless prairie was to be traversed thence to the Red Lake River and far beyond it till the Wild Rice was reached, and there the country changed, with heavy boulders on the hills and multitudes of small lakes fringed with small oaks; this continued to Detroit Lake, a beautiful sheet of water, now, I believe, a pleasure and health resort, some of its gravel hills being then distinguishable for miles by the high stages bearing the bodies of the dead, from which fluttered pieces of red and blue cloth; and near them the remains of food placed for the spirit's early journey to hunting-grounds, which the Ojibways must have thought good indeed if better than near this very spot, which afforded the best an Indian could desire of all the deer and fowl of that beautiful lake district; where every stream teemed with fish, and buffalo once were plentiful low down on the river which bears their name only three days journey away. The trail followed at the edge of the water this beautiful lake for nearly two miles and the ponies chose to walk in the shallow water to cool their unshod feet, sorely tired by our hasty crossing of many leagues of burnt prairie to reach where grass could again be had. We had reached this lake late at night, and already Blackie and Bichon were eating, as if for a wager, of the rushes and rich grass above the sand line on its shore; when a kettle of tea, a few biscuits and some dried meat being disposed of, weary limbs sought rest. Where should we sleep? Why, what could be better than a bed on this clean white sand, which the last high wind has piled up as if for that special purpose? Hurriedly the cart was drawn over the highest, finest and softest ridge, and then a blanket and to sleep. How easily and softly the sand yielded till it made a bed like a plaster cast; no downy couch equalled it; and yet when morning dawned it was another case of "experientia docet." No, I have since that night slept on the axe-hewn planks of a frontiers-man's floor, on the prairie, in a canoe, on smooth Laurentian rocks, and I give each and all the preference to soft white sand, no bed more unyielding when it has you in its embrace: and no wonder my friend and I woke

with a feeling as though we had been kicked all over by Blackie, and resolved to sleep anywhere or to sit up all night, rather than sleep in sand again.

Leaving this lake the country changes again, with frequently dense woods of small oaks, basswood and elm; this continues through the low-lying country, the Leaf Mountains being well to our left till we reach Rush Lake, the Ottertail River and Ottertail Lake, from there down to the crossing of the Crow Wing River the trail follows the Leaf River, which, first a stream that one could jump across, carries waters which reach the ocean at the Gulf of Mexico, as the Ottertail carries waters which reach Hudson's Bay. To call the apex a height of land is a misnomer, for it is one of the softest and apparently most low-lying parts of the route, and many a worn-out axle and broken wheel attest the power of its stumps and coulees to make the spring and fall brigades of loaded carts look well to their gearing before entering upon this most difficult part of the trail. The crossing of the Crow Wing effected, the trail led down its eastern bank, heavily wooded with Norway and White Pine, interspersed with tamarac swamps. Where you passed through the first of these, the road was all that could be desired, the straight stems of these northern palms looking like stately colonnades, through and between which your horses' hoofs were muffled in the leaves of last year, but where the tamarac grows, look out for trouble, for where uncorduroyed, it is treacherous indeed. Newly corduroyed, however, with the bark still on the tamarac poles, and these laid straight and close, it is, though bumpy, a sure road for unshod hoofs, and safe enough for the cart, but when hundreds of horse and ox-carts, the former with eight hundred, the latter with one thousand pounds, have passed over it for some years, then this tamarac highway shews what it can really do in the way of smashing wheels, tripping up beasts of burden, whether with cloven or solid hoofs, and causing much questionable language to be used by the drivers thereof. Replacing a broken pole would be anywhere easy, but the driver of the first cart trusts that this will be done by the next, and the next, by the next,

till all have passed, and then all join in the hope that the next brigade will really take the matter in hand. It was about at its worst when we passed, but with my companion and myself on opposite sides to brace up Blackie when he slipped sideways, leaving the surefooted Bichon to pick his own way at a snail's pace on the outer rim of this wretched causeway, we reached the further end of the "long corduroy," at the middle of whose three miles some wag had nailed a barrel stave to a tree, on which was a notice written with a red lead pencil "No riding or driving over this bridge faster than a walk."

Crow Wing, a frontier trading village, was reached at last, fifteen days' journey for the four hundred miles; and we fared sumptuously on fried bacon and many triangular cuts of apple pie. The remainder of the road, being over bridged streams and ferries, needs no special mention, but Crow Wing warrants some slight notice, for near it was the Chippewa Indian agency, and hard by the new residence of "Hole in the Day," then a noted Ojibway chief. This man, who was the son of a chief, possessed great influence over the various bands of that tribe, whose hunting grounds extended far to the east, west and north, and it had been hard to convince him that these bands were right in disposing of their rich lacustrine region where the wild rice grew everywhere, fish thronged every lake and stream, and of wild bird and beast there was no stint; but when were Indian treaties fair to both contracting parties? Hole in the Day must be cajoled; and accordingly he had been, a year or two before, taken to Washington to see his "Great Father." The Great Father promptly, after the first interview, turned him over to the Indian Department, who made his straight athletic figure look ridiculous in a black broadcloth suit and tall black silk hat, and, thus arrayed, showed him the circus, the theatre, the dime and other museums, the Navy Yard, and finally seated him in the gallery of the Talking Tepee, where, no doubt, he contrasted the orator who was not heard, and the assembled wisdom who did not listen, with the stately dignity and decorum of an Indian Council. Educated half-Indian men, engaged by the Govern-

ment, incessantly urged the advantage of a civilized occupation of his country, bought for him everything that caught his fancy, heaped up presents for his wives, promised that a white man's house should be built for him and furnished exactly as he liked, hinted darkly at the war power of the Great White Chief, and said that while he lived the Great Father would give to him many bags of Mexican dollars yearly; Hole in the Day gave in, shook hands with the President, and came back to persuade his bands that the white chief and he were brothers, and that Red and White were to be one in heart.

Poor 'Hole in the Day'; the residence stipulation was carried out, his wives living in the kitchen and he, the brother of the Great White Chief, received visitors in the large parlor, the walls of which were nearly covered by mirrors, the floor furniture consisting principally, it is said, of many rocking chairs. A few months later he was shot by an Indian of one of the treaty bands, on whom the truth had dawned that his tribe had sold their heritage for less than they could have obtained by the trapping of its furs.

Crow Wing was the point to which from St. Paul the masters of brigades frequently teamed with wagons a portion of their cartloads to save the heavy sand road down the eastern bank of the Mississippi. At Crow Wing the carts were finally loaded, it being a work of thought and care to so apportion the cart-loads that one should not carry all the heavy goods and another all the light; where, also, the cart covers of raw beef or buffalo hide securely fastened on and the long slow journey commenced, the money not spent at St. Paul was generally got rid of here in necessaries for the trip of over a month, and in presents for the loved ones at home.

One part of the equipment of a number of carts in a brigade was a long and strong rope for river crossings and soft places which a light travelling cart traversed safely with an extra spurt on Blackie or Bichon's part, but which were formidable obstacles for loaded carts, especially at the steep bank of a slippery and muddy river crossing. In such places

the ox, strange to say, was better in the miry bottom and the horse the better for the steep bank ; for the cloven hoof parted in the mire, giving a better footing to aid his patient and great strength ; while the horse's hoofs gave him a better hold on the slippery bank ; both needed aid however when a deep slough was reached or streams of the kind I have mentioned had to be crossed ; at such places, if not very bad, the rope was attached to each cart as it came up and five or six of the men at the further end aided the struggling ox or horse just at the right moment ; but when the bog or slough was very bad indeed, then the animals were taken out to find their own way over, while the whole force of brigade men pulled the loaded cart through.

Many a thousand tons of freight have been carried over this road, and a brigade frequently meant hundreds of carts ; on the fall trip they generally went down light, the buffalo robe catch having been carried in closely compressed bales of ten robes each by the spring brigades, the arrival of which in St. Paul was an event not only to the fur-buyers, but to the people of the place, who lined the side-walks as the long train of squeaking, fur-laden carts passed through, and English half-crowns and sovereigns were to be had at almost any of the shops, all of which eagerly sought the Red River trade.

It is time however that I came back to our own experiences of travel, some of which were amusing afterwards, but very puzzling and annoying at the time. One of these was the crossing of the Red Lake, the largest river on the route. A winding track through large elm trees had brought us down to its brink, and here we could see the deep tracks of loaded carts straight over the gravel shore and into the water ; directly opposite were similar tracks on the other side. It seemed all right, though the ford was at a place where the water ran very swiftly indeed. Pursuing our usual plan, Bichon with the saddle tried the ford, but the water was soon above his breast. He was brought back, and the tracks going in and coming out closely inspected again to see if it was straight across. Tried on foot with a long pole to keep

from being swept off my feet in the rapid, the water was soon breast high. What could be the matter? Surely where loaded carts could go so shortly ago we might easily pass; and there had been no late rains to swell the river. Searching back to the top of the bank we could find no diverging track to another part of the river, and yet it was clearly a case of swim to cross it here. Tired with the effort, the horses were allowed to graze, and tea was made, after which the essay was made to cross the river on foot at a point further up, where broken water seemed to show shallowness, and it was while essaying this that I found the secret of the ford. The carts had indeed entered straight into the water at the foot of the sloping bank we had descended, but, once in, they had turned up-stream to make the crossing in a horse shoe fashion which brought them out directly on the opposite side, where again a sloping bank formed the best path for ascent and descent.

Many minor difficulties at other places were the rewards of inexperience, and, pleasant as the trip had been, it was a relief when it was over, the ponies placed in careful hands for the winter, the cart and harness stowed away, and St. Paul was reached, early in November, long after Dr. Anderson, Bishop of Rupert's Land, had reached the City by the last Red River boat and stage, and had met while there Governor, then Senator, Seward, an interesting account of which meeting was afterwards given by Honorable J. W. Taylor to the St. Paul Press, as follows:—

“Allow me to present to the readers of the Press a relic of Seward's visit to St. Paul in Sept., 1860, which I have fyled with the archives of the Historical Society. It is an address of David Anderson, Bishop of the Church of England, Rupert's Land, to Wm. H. Seward, then Senator, and now Secretary of State. The meeting of the two men had been arranged by mutual friends—it occurred at 12 o'clock m., of September 18, 1860, in the room of the Minnesota Historical Society. The Bishop adopted the English custom on such occasions, and read his remarks from a manuscript; Seward's

response was less premeditated. I copy from the autograph address of his "Reverend Lordship."

"Governor Seward :

It is with no little pleasure that I embrace the opportunity of being presented to you on this occasion.

From the position which I occupy in the Diocese of Rupert's Land, I cannot but feel a deep and growing interest in the welfare of the United States, and more especially in that of Minnesota, which immediately adjoins our own territory. Whatever tends to advance our prosperity will at the same time, I am convinced, advance also your own, and I trust that the bonds which unite us together will be drawn closer year by year.

The visit of His Royal Highness the Prince of Wales to the possessions of the British Crown on this continent, and his approaching visit to the United States, may be hailed as an event which is calculated to cement most happily the union between the two countries. On the establishment and continuance of such peaceful relations the progress of civilization through the world and the extension of the Redeemer's kingdom would materially depend.

I would gratefully acknowledge the many great benefits already received from your Government at our own distant land. Much has been done during the past eleven years, of which alone I can speak, to diminish the distance which separates us from the home of our fathers. On my first arrival thrice only a year could we expect to hear from England. We are now indebted to yourselves for a double mail each month. For this, in the name of every member of our community, I would express our deep and lasting gratitude.

We would look beyond this to the opening, at no very remote period, of a highway towards the western sea. I trust that, both in your own possessions and in the British territory, a route towards the Pacific may ere long be completed and a direct communication thus opened from sea to sea. In such enterprises I would at the present time ask you to use whatever weight of influence you may possess in your own

Legislature, and I would in return assure you that any such efforts would meet with the earnest and hearty co-operation of those over whom the Providence of God has placed me.

In conclusion, I would only pray that the spirit of harmony and peace may ever exist between Britain and the United States, and with the continuance of such peace I would anticipate a bright and blessed spread of the Gospel of Peace among the nations of the earth."

With the last sentence, uttered in the excellent prelate's most impressive manner, all eyes turned upon the statesman of New York. His first words of response startled the expectant circle.

"Bishop," he said, "two hundred years ago there was an irrepressible conflict in England. One party contended for a Church without a Bishop and a State without a King; another party was certain that there could be no Church without a Bishop, and no well ordered State without a King."

A pause. The Bishop of Rupert's Land was not comfortable. An uneasy suspense of breath ran around the room. So did the grey eye of the speaker. He was evidently in the humor which His Grace of Newcastle afterwards failed so signally to appreciate. We were soon relieved, however. The Senator resumed:

"This conflict of opinion, with its immediate issues of civil war, largely contributed to the emigration of Englishmen to this continent, and the organization of diverse communities. With successive generations, the bitterness of the seventeenth century has been succeeded by new relations, by peace and good will, until we have, on this occasion, an interesting proof that the remote settlements of Selkirk and Rupert's Land respond to the 'spirit of harmony' which is alike the cause and effect of modern civilization."

His Lordships muscles relaxed. A half smile succeeded among the auditors, the speaker alone retaining an imperturbable expression of gravity. In a few words, fitly chosen but unluckily not preserved by a reporter, the Senator cordially reciprocated the sentiments of Dr. Anderson, closing the for-

malities of the interview by the Anglo-Saxon ceremony of shaking hands. The proceedings were of "admirable length," certainly not exceeding fifteen minutes; and yet, as I recall them, I have seldom witnessed a more striking tableau vivant.

Two hours later, from the steps of the Capitol, Seward addressed the citizens of Minnesota in a speech which to this day attracts more attention on both continents than any single discourse of his life. How constantly in the London press do we hear the changes rung on these memorable sentiments?

"I can stand here and look far into the North-West, and see the Russian as he busily occupies himself in establishing sea-ports and towns and fortifications, as outposts of the Empire of St. Petersburg, and I can say "go on; build up your out-posts to the Arctic Ocean; they will yet become the out-posts of my own country, to extend the civilization of my own country, to extend the civilization of the United States in the North-West." So I look upon Prince Rupert's Land and Canada, and see how an ingenious people and a capable and enlightened government are occupied with bridging rivers and building railroads to develope, organize, create and preserve the British Provinces of the North, by the Great Lakes, the St. Lawrence, and around the shores of Hudson's Bay; and I am able to say "it is very well; you are building excellent states, to be hereafter admitted into the American Union."

I was in Washington between the date of this and another speech of his to which I shall presently refer, and while yet Mr. Seward, then Secretary of State, believed in his prediction of 1860, and was honored by an introduction to the great statesman, who was then busy with his scheme for the purchase of Alaska. The angry looking scar of a dirk wound he had received in the neck from a would-be assassin was still fresh; but he had many questions to ask about this country, and after shewing me an Alaskan kyack, spear, bone implements, and many curiosities, recently sent to him, he stood with me before a large map of the continent and said

pointing to Alaska:—"We are to make this part of the United States; and now, don't you think, my dear sir, that it would be for the interest of all, if that which intervenes should come in too?"

He seemed disappointed at my answer; for already the resources of our great North-West were beginning to be known to the statesmen at Washington; and when, during the same visit, I was asked to give some facts regarding it before the standing Committee on Railways, then discussing the charter asked for the Northern Pacific line, I found a full appreciation of the possible benefits to accrue from a trade from here to different parts of the projected line.

Seward was no friend to England or to Canada; but he was truthful enough to declare his error in the forecast he had made of our political future from the Capitol steps at St. Paul in 1860, in a memorable speech he afterwards made. He had indeed obtained Alaska by purchase, but he had had time to reflect on the bitter lessons of the war for the Union of North and South, the failure of which meant the disruption of East and West as well; and he frankly acknowledged his early prophetic error in these words:

"Hitherto, in common with most of my countrymen," he said, "I have thought Canada a mere strip, lying north of the United States, easily detachable from the parent state, but incapable of sustaining itself, and therefore ultimately, nay, right soon, to be taken by the Federal Union, without materially changing or affecting its own condition or development. I have dropped the opinion as a national conceit. I see in British North America, stretching as it does across the continent, from the shores of Labrador and Newfoundland to the Pacific, and occupying a considerable belt of the temperate zone, traversed equally with the United States by the Lakes, and enjoying the magnificent shores of the St. Lawrence, with its thousands of islands in the river and gulf, a region grand enough for the seat of an Empire, in its wheat fields in the west, its broad ranges of chase at the north, its inexhaustible lumber lands, the most extensive now remaining on the globe:

its invaluable fisheries and its undisturbed mineral wealth. I find its inhabitants vigorous, hardy, energetic, perfected by religious and British constitutional liberty. I find them jealous of the United States and of Great Britain, as they ought to be; and therefore, when I look at their extent and resources, I know they can neither be conquered by the former nor permanently held by the latter. They will be independent as they are already self-maintaining. They will be a Russia to the United States, which to them will be France and England."

Statesmen are but human; and the great Secretary was mistaken again. Year by year, it is true, we know more and more of our almost inexhaustible riches of river and lake, forest and mine, and now that our neighbor's agricultural land (without irrigation) has been exhausted, we more and more appreciate the fact that Canada, *not* the United States, possesses the great cereal belt of the continent. We extol his prescience as a political economist in the matter of the development of our great resources, but when we look about for those who wish severance from Great Britain and find them only in the columns of foreign newspapers, we question his political prophecy, and remembering the giant strides our Confederation has made in material progress, and the welfare and happiness of our people, we thank God that we are Canadians and citizens of an Empire ten times greater than that which the mental vision of Seward saw from the steps of the Minnesota capitol in 1860. His national emblem is the Eagle and its swift flight typifies their marvellous advancement; ours, the Beaver, that wise, cautious builder, typifying our slower, safer progress; and who shall say that ours is not the better speed which stays to solve problems, such as the Indian one, the neglect of which has borne such bitter fruits to our more speedy southern neighbors? And yet, have Canadians any reason to be considered laggards when they have, in a little over a quarter of a century of national life, linked Province to Province, from the Atlantic to the Pacific, with bands of steel, made the head of Lake Superior a seaport, solved the

aboriginal problem with a success that no nation of the Old or New World has ever achieved, whitened every sea with the sails of Canadian ships, linked Australia, the Indies and the Empires of the East with our western harbors, as before we had linked our eastern seaboard cities with western Europe, created a trade almost double, in proportion to population, of that of the United States, touched only as yet the southern border of our vast arable and pastoral reserve, content to move slowly while we are perfecting the union of Provinces to each other, and our joint position in the Empire, in a way and with a success that will enable the distinguished nobleman whom the Queen has now chosen to represent her in her Canadian Dominion to bear to her at the close of his term of office an assurance similar to that given by a distinguished predecessor, Lord Dufferin, who said, on leaving us :

“ When I resign the temporary Vice-royalty with which I have been invested, into the hands of my Sovereign, I shall be able to assure her that not a leaf has fallen from her maple chaplet, that the lustre of no jewel in her trans-atlantic diadem has been dimmed.”



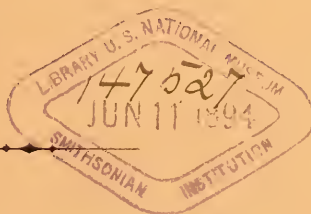
The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba.

EARLY DAYS IN WINNIPEG.

— BY —

GEORGE BRYCE, LL.D.,

A LIFE MEMBER OF THE SOCIETY.



WINNIPEG.

MANITOBA FREE PRESS PRINT.

1894.

Early Days in Winnipeg.

A Paper read before the Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba on the 13th of February, 1894.

The Historical Society, at its annual meeting in the City Council Chamber, was greeted by a large attendance of ladies and gentlemen. In addition to the other business of the evening the Rev. Dr. Bryce read the following interesting paper, for which, on the motion of Rev. Prof. Hart, seconded by Mr. John Macbeth, he was given a hearty vote of thanks :—

Mr. Chairman, Ladies and Gentlemen.

Few of the citizens of the Winnipeg of to-day—the third commercial city of the Dominion—know the days of its small beginnings. The writer, now in the twenty-third year of his residence in Winnipeg recurs with pleasure to the early days, and desires to picture the features of that humble but interesting period. Though the village of Winnipeg had an existence before the Riel rebellion of 1869-70, it was after that time that it came into note, and from that time that its influence began. The present paper is a record of beginnings, and so will not pass the close of 1873, the time of the incorporation of the city of the prairies.

FORT GARRY.

The old Hudson's Bay company centre had of course been Fort Garry, on the banks of the Assiniboine. Here had centred for about half a century the trade of the Northwest. Here also was the headquarters of government, law, society and old association. From any part of the settlement on a pleasant autumn day or during a mild spell in winter, Scotch or French half-breed, Selkirk settler or retired Hudson's Bay company officer or servant delighted to journey to relieve the monotony of existence, and partake of the inspiration of social life. Five hundred acres about the fort, since known as the Hudson's Bay Reserve, afforded ample camping space for the plain traders, who came from the west to trade. Of them a former resident of Winnipeg has said : "These wild children of the prairie were won't to make their presence known in our midst, for with drinking, gambling, fighting, dancing, laughing talking, swearing, horse-racing, trading, and singing, they made a perfect Babel of the place."

THE F. F. W.'S.

North of the reserve, beyond Notre Dame street, began in pre-Winnipeg days the strips of land of the settlers, with narrow frontage on the river, but running out for two miles upon the prairie. Here the first families of Winnipeg had their abode. First, claiming descent from Brian Boru was Andrew McDermott, a sturdy Irishman, who had come by way of Hudson Bay in Lord Selkirk's first ship. He was a mercant, farmer, horse trader and cattle dealer. Of this man, who was well known to the writer as a perfect mine of information, Sheriff Ross said in 1856, "He engrossed the freighting business, acted as the company's right-hand man in all contracts and public undertakings, speculated in houses and lands, built mills, encouraged manufactures, and lately commenced forming a little colony, of which he is himself the head." McDermott avenue marks the estate and commemorates the name of this bustling leader of the olden time. North of Andrew McDermott was his son-in-law A. G. B. Bannatyne, one of the kindest and best of the men of the former day. A leading merchant, a prominent man in public, social and church life, many a needy immigrant had reason to be grateful to him for favors bestowed. Bannatyne Avenue marks the Bannatyne estate. Next along the river were the Rosses. Head of the family was the sheriff who, as long ago as 1825, came from British Columbia, with his Indian wife, the daughter of a chief of the Okanagans. William, James and Ross avenues commemorate this very influential family, whose home of Colony Gardens was a centre of hospitality in Red River days. North of the Ross abode was that of the Logans. This was the site of Fort Douglas, Lord Selkirk's headquarters; but old

Robert Logan had purchased it. The present residence of Alexander Logan, formerly mayor of the city, is in the neighborhood of the old fort. Logan Avenue is a memorial of this well known family. As beyond this estate lay the Point Douglas common, these four families may be said to have the pre-eminence as our F. F. W's.

WINNIPEG.

The investigation of Hudson's Bay company affairs by the Imperial Parliament in 1857, and the expedition sent by Canada under Dawson and Hind to explore the Northwest, led to a slow, but decided movement of outsiders to the hitherto

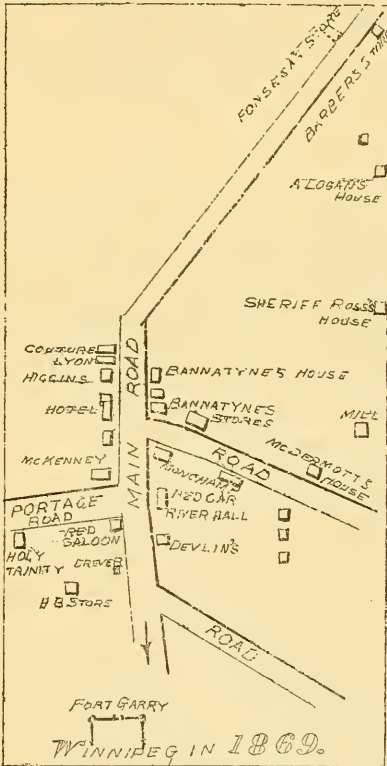
Portage avenue, was on the site now occupied by the handsome building of the Western Canada Loan and Savings company. This was then a swampy corner, but by degrees a few buildings grew up, and the outline of our beautiful Main street of to-day began to be dimly seen. Once begun, the movement to build up a town led to division, and in 1871 a number of houses were built on Main street opposite Point Douglas, now a short distance on this side of the C. P. R. station. Thus there were three points, Fort Garry, Winnipeg and Point Douglas, three ganglia or centres placed along Main street, and in their interests they were very far from responding to the same sympathetic throb.

EARLY MAIN STREET MERCHANTS.

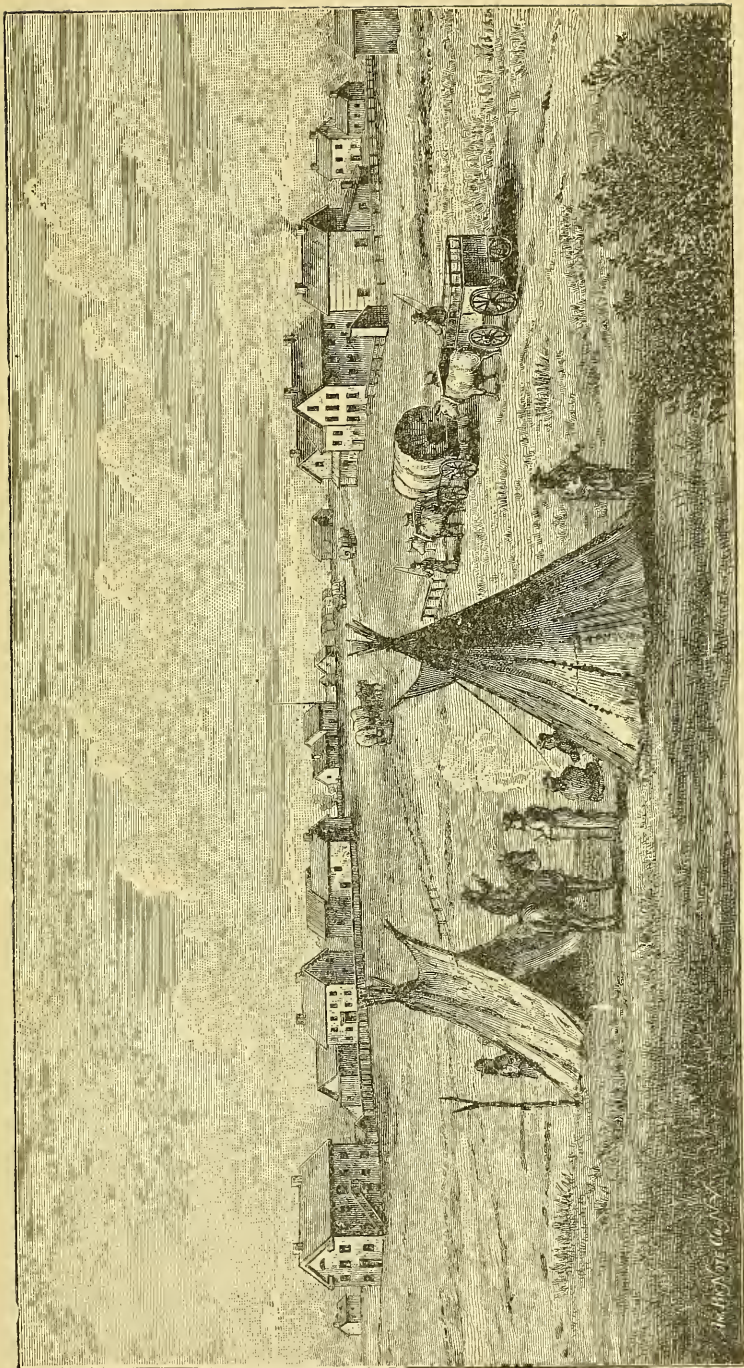
The buildings, as they stood in 1870, may be easily mentioned, and the merchants of Main street have been called by a writer of that time the "original founders of Winnipeg." First there was the Red river hall building erected by Andrew McDermott, immediately south of the present Merchants' bank, a long building with several shops beneath, and a hall and several rooms above. The writer performed a marriage in the upper part of this building. This erection was burnt down in the early days. Mr. Bannatyne had two buildings on the corner of Main and Lombard streets. Farther up the street on the corner of Main and Water streets, Dr. Schultz erected the brick block, a part of which still remains. Messrs. Lyon, Higgins and Gingras had occupied buildings further north on Main street, and Messrs. Fonseca, Barber and Hon. John Sutherland were the promoters of Point Douglas. To the list of founders may be added Wm. Drever, who had built a house near the southwest corner of Main street and Portage avenue. This became a fashionable headquarters known as the "Munro boarding house," in which the writer passed a winter. West of the Drever house, near the line of the present Fort street, was a branch store of the Hudson's Bay company used during the winter of 1871 by the late Gilbert McMicken as land office and dominion police headquarters. To the list of merchants of the earliest time may be added the names of H. S. Donaldson, R. Patterson, J. H. Ashdown, Alexander Begg and Archibald Wright.

THE LEADING HOSTELRY.

Early in October, 1871, the writer remembers arriving in Winnipeg in the stage by which at that time, at a distance of 400 miles, the railway in Minnesota was reached. Our company alighted in front of the chief hotel of Winnipeg, on the west side of Main street, immediately north of the McIntyre block. The writer had not expected to see in Winnipeg a beautiful or entrancing spot, but the sight of the western hamlet on that clear



sealed and unknown territories of the Hudson's Bay company. The prophecy of a city at the junction of the Red and Assiniboine rivers was made at this early date. There was great unwillingness on the part of the settlers to leave the banks of the rivers, but in 1862 the first house in the village of Winnipeg was erected by McKenny & Co. Connected with this enterprise was Dr. Schultz, who had come to Red River in 1860. This house, which until two or three years ago stood at the corner of Main street and



WINNIPEG IN 1869.

The ENOPE COMPANY

autumn evening was a little more disappointing even than the picture imagined. A street with a few irregular buildings, some of them log, with not a sidewalk, unless it were a log with a slanting surface requiring in muddy weather the skill of a Blon-din to walk it, and the two story yellow stopping place with its dim and smoky lights! Such was the Winnipeg of that day; such was the Davis hotel, its chief hostelry. At that time there was a large influx of Canadians. The hotel during that week had been giving 330 meals a day, and even sleeping room on the floor could not be had. With a companion who knew the way, finding no room in the inn the journey was made by the writer to Kildonan, and the first night in Manitoba was spent in the hospitable manse of the Scotch parish.

POST OFFICE.

In the early days Mr. A. G. B. Bannatyne was the postmaster. The first building entirely devoted to the purposes of the post office was used in 1870, and was on Lombard street, which was formerly called Post Office street. It was a log building and was situated nearly opposite the Hotel du Canada. It is recorded as an event of considerable importance that in June, '71, the postmaster "had boxes arranged in the post office, for the use of merchants and others," and the name of the carpenter who accomplished this feat of skill is held up for joyful remembrance. The carrying of the mail was undertaken in 1871 by an American stage company. The stage arrived for the first time on the 11th of September of that year. The arrival of the stage was a great event. One had the feeling that it was something like the clouds opening and letting in a rift of light. Sometimes in winter the stage was blockaded, and the writer remembers it getting through with eighteen days' mail aboard. Each citizen had his half bushel of letters and papers on that occasion. The name of the post office for several years after the transfer was Fort Garry. The location of the post office was a burning question in those days. Early in May, 1872, there was a mass meeting to protest against the removal of the post office to the neighborhood of Fort Garry, as it was thought that the Hudson's Bay Company was making an effort to have all the public buildings removed to the south of the city. Commend us to one of the indignation mass meetings of these early days! There was a freedom, a movement, and an elasticity about the meetings of those days that makes even a political meeting on the tariff question at the present day seem tame.

FIRST TELEGRAPH.

The feeling of isolation before the days of the telegraph was very intense. In after days, when the telegraph lines were down for a day, the Free Press was in the habit of announcing that we had the con-

solation "that if we knew nothing of the outside world it knew nothing about us." Though when the telegraph did come the rates were very high, viz., upwards of \$2 for ten words to Toronto, yet it was greatly used. The first connection was made with the American lines by way of Pembina. This took place on Nov. 20, 1871. Governor Archibald, in a lengthy dispatch to the governor-general at Ottawa, said: "The voice of Manitoba, collected this morning on the banks of the Assiniboine, will be heard in a few hours on the banks of the Ottawa, and we may hope before the day closes that the words of your excellency's reply, spoken at the capital the Dominion, will be listened to at Fort Garry. We may now count in hours the work that used to occupy weeks." Mr. Horace McDougall was at the beginning, and for many years after, in charge of the telegraph in this city.

THE STEAMBOAT.

The most exciting event that took place to a citizen of Winnipeg in the summer months was the arrival of the Red river steamboat. Should the hoarse sound of the whistle be heard on a Sunday morning before church there would be many a vacant pew that day. The first boat of the season was looked for as earnestly as was the Mayflower by the Puritans of Plymouth Rock, when the vessel departed "leaving them in the desert." For two months before the opening of the river the merchants' supplies had run short. The first boat was to bring everything. Mathematicians computed that it would take a boat as large as Noah's ark to carry all the goods promised. These trips were immensely profitable to the owners. It was computed that the steamer Selkirk on her first trip in 1871 cleared the entire cost of her construction. The passage down the Red River was, however, very precarious, the boat at low water being liable to be caught in the shallow rapids for days together. Few regrets were heard when the uncertain steamboat was superseded by something more reliable.

FIRST C.P.R. EXPEDITION.

Canada was earnestly engaged in seeking to cross the continent by rail. The writer remembers well the exploring expedition which passed through in 1872 to make general enquiries as to the route. It was led by Sandford Fleming, and in the expedition was Principal Grant, while Horetzky and Macoun belonged to the party. Governor Archibald, the first governor of Manitoba, was then at Fort Garry, and on the arrival of the distinguished party on Aug. 1 a number of Winnipeg people were invited to meet them. That first expedition meant much for Manitoba and the Northwest. Governor Archibald did not remain much longer in Manitoba, but was always afterward a strong supporter of the policy of developing our Western Canada.

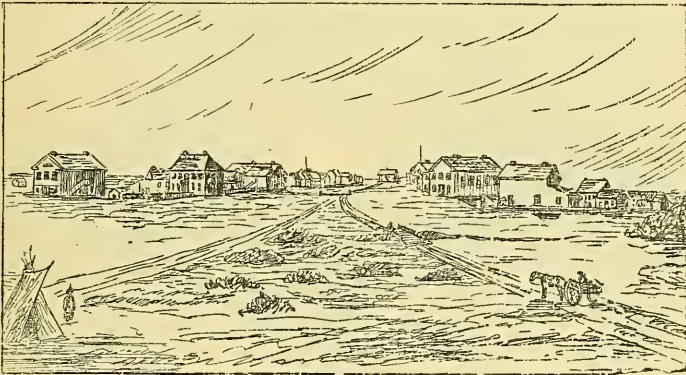
GOES UP IN SMOKE.

One of the houses of the early days that attracted attention by its size, if not by its architectural beauty, was a building erected by Mr. Bannatyne on Main street on a spot now in rear of the store of Mr. R. D. Richardson. This building was in the midst of a garden, and was well surrounded by rows of thriving Red River maples. In the haste to organize the government of the country, after the coming of Governor Archibald, a request was made to the owner to sell the house to the province, for the purpose of government offices. It was purchased in January, 1871, and here the first parliament of Manitoba was opened. Unfortunately the building was burnt on 3rd Dec., 1873, and with it the valuable nucleus that had been purchased for a Legislative Library.

gust, 1872, the first manufactory of furniture was begun by the firm of Bishop & Shelton, and a bookcase still possessed by the writer was the first article turned out by them. In the year of the opening of Manitoba College (1871) the writer found it impossible to purchase a chair in Winnipeg. Benches were made for the college, and the newcomers in their houses often used trunks and boxes in place of chairs. These were matters for which no one was to blame, and simply arose from the influx of people and the imperfect transportation facilities.

THE FIRST BANK.

For many years the Hudson's Bay company had been the medium for carrying on the business of the country. One of the most interesting features of their



WINNIPEG IN 1871.

STRUGGLE FOR EXISTENCE.

The fact that in the old days there was little demand for farm products had led to non-production, and a consequent scarcity as soon as population increased. The necessity for shelter led to buildings being erected, but in the spring of '71 rough lumber sold at \$70 per thousand, and poor lumber it was at that; dressed lumber was \$100 a thousand. Fresh meat was difficult to obtain. An ox, none too well favored, brought upwards of \$100. The writer, on the occasion of the visit of the British association to the Northwest in 1884, had a conversation, at a dinner given them, with Dr. Cheadle, who with Lord Milton, had made the celebrated "Northwest passage by land" in 1862. Dr. Cheadle contrasted the state of things in 1862 with that in 1884, by saying they were unable in the former case to get enough to eat; in the latter case there was abundance. In 1871 and 1872 it was simply impossible to obtain anything the hungry horde of new comers demanded. In Au-

monetary system was the paper money known as Hudson's Bay "blankets," much larger than our bills, and like the bank notes in Britain. These were of the denominations of five pounds, one pound, five shillings and one shilling, and to Canadians especially that of the smallest value, was a great curiosity indeed. A private bank, which did a good business, was begun by Mr. Alex. McMicken. But the business of the country needed greater facilities, and on Dec. 14, 1872, the Merchants Bank of Canada was opened. For some time the bank was in a building on the west side of Main street, near the corner of Bannatyne avenue. The manager of the bank was Mr. Duncan Macarthur, who had been connected with the Hudson's Bay company in Montreal. In course of time, through Mr. Macarthur's excellent management the Merchants bank moved to the corner of Lombard street, where it still remains. Mr. Macarthur has been a most public-spirited man, and has helped forward almost all good enterprises in our rising city.



HON. DR. SCHULTZ.

(Now Lieutenant-Governor.)

A founder of Winnipeg.

CHARITIES.

If to-day Winnipeg is celebrated for her charitable institutions it is because these were begun along with the first breath of our infant city. In the summer of 1871, from the crowded state of the boarding houses and improper food, the fever assumed of the character of an epidemic. The writer remembers visiting a hastily erected building on the Red river, near the foot of Broadway where a temporary hospital had been begun in that year. In the following year in December a meeting of citizens was called to consider the matter of founding a general hospital. A wooden building was erected in due time on the block of land still occupied by the hospital. This site on the McDermott estate, was procured largely through the exertions of Mr. Bannatyne.

THE EARLY NEWSPAPER.

The scope of the present paper will not justify a history of the newspapers of the early days. The writer is glad to know that another member of the society intends giving a paper on the newspapers of Manitoba. The earliest paper was the *Nor-Wester*. This goes back to pre-Winnipeg days. A somewhat complete account of its sayings and doings is found in Hargrave's *Red River*. The *Nor-Wester* was seized by Riel in 1870. At this time appeared the *New Nation*, the organ of the Riel government. Its existence was as shortlived as the government of the rebel. In October, 1870, Mr. W. Coldwell, one of the founders of the *Nor-Wester*, was joined by Mr. Robert Cunningham, who had come to Manitoba as Telegram correspondent, and

this firm began the publication of the *Manitoban*. During this year a small sheet, chiefly known for its bitterness, made its appearance under the name of the "News Letter." Its life was as short as its utterances were violent. Party feeling ran very high in 1871, and in that year opposition to the *Manitoban* appeared in the new paper, the "Liberal." The *Liberal* began publication in July, 1871. Mr. Stewart Mulvey was its editor. On January 1st, 1872, a small journal was begun by Mr. Alexander Begg called the "Manitoba Trade Review." This had a precarious existence, but early in March blossomed out as the *Gazette and Trade Review*. The writer remembers the first number of this paper as somewhat amusing. In going to press the latter part of the name had dropped out, so that the first issue had the interesting caption *The Gazette and*.

In the autumn of 1872 there were four newspapers published in Winnipeg. In September of that year elections for the Dominion parliament were held. Sir Donald Smith was elected for Selkirk, the country in which Winnipeg was situated. The disappointed party, or some turbulent members of it, signalized the occasion by what was called a "typical" visit to the



A. G. B. BANNATYNE,

Postmaster and Leading Merchant.

officers of the "*Manitoban*," "*Gazette*," and "*Le Metis*," (the first French paper), from which they ejected type, presses, and furniture. The "*Liberal*" was the only survivor, and for a time had a newspaper monopoly.

Our greatest newspaper, the *Free Press*, saw the light for the first time on the 9th of November, 1872. It was begun by the experienced journalists, Kenny & Luxton, and has always been well conducted. All these early journals were weeklies, but they laid the foundations of the three



ALEXANDER LOGAN.

An original proprietor of Winnipeg.

excellent dailies, and the multitude of creditable weekly papers published in Winnipeg to-day.

WINNIPEG SCHOOLS.

An old school building standing in the field this side of St. John's cathedral is the centre of common school education for St. John's parish as it existed in old Red River days. That building has never been used since the village of Winnipeg began to assume importance. The first public school act for the province was passed in May, 1871, and on the 8th of July following, three trustees were elected to establish the first public school for Winnipeg. These were Messrs. Stewart Mulvey, W. G. Fonseca and Archibald Wright. On the last day of October of that year the first public school was opened in a small building on Point Douglas hastily fitted up for the purpose. Mr. W. F. Luxton, who had taught school in Ontario, was the first teacher. In a short time it was found that the school was not centrally situated, and a central school lot was obtained from the Hudson's Bay company, where Grace church now stands. On this site was erected a plain wooden building, and the difficulty of collecting taxes almost brought destruction to the school. This unostentatious structure with its one teacher was the beginning of the system of to-day with its splendid buildings and its band of 70 excellent teachers.

THE CHURCHES.

In the old days services had been held in the court house which was outside the walls at Fort Garry. In 1868 or '69 use was made of Red River hall, which, as we have said, stood on Main street. Here Archdeacon McLean of St. John's held service. The place being unsuitable, in due time a small log church, Holy Trinity, was erected on the corner of Portage avenue and Garry street. In 1868 Rev. Dr. Black, of Kildonan, succeeded in partially erecting what he named Knox church on the corner of Portage avenue and Fort street. Holy Trinity and Knox were on neighboring plots. Old residents will remember there was a pond between the two small churches as they stood in 1871. It is related that Governor McTavish, when pointing out the site of each, said jocularly, and you see there is "a gulf fixed" between them. Before the end of 1873 both these churches had been greatly enlarged to meet the growth of population. In 1868 Rev. Dr. Young came to Red River to begin the Methodist church in the settlement. In 1871 his house had been erected on the east side of Main street, somewhat south of where the Manitoba hotel now stands. Alongside of it he opened, on Sept. 17, 1871, the new Grace church. This was a neat structure, and occupied a fine position on Main street. These churches represented the religious life of Winnipeg, unless mention be made of services held by the Roman Catholic church in their small girls' school, near what is now the east end of Thistle street. It seemed then an impossibility that such religious development should take place as we see around us to-day.

TO BE A CITY.

The diminutive Trade Review on its appearance in the beginning of 1872 in a vigorous editorial advocated the incorporation of Winnipeg. To quote the words of its editor, "that article caused the death of the Trade

Review." "The reason of this was that the Manitoban office, where the lively little sheet was published was controlled by the chief land holders of the place, and they refused to print the noisy disturber. However the agitation continued. The incorporation of the place became the battle cry for the opponents of the old regime. If trade was dull, or amusements scarce a mass meeting of the citizens was called, and resolutions were passed and committees appointed to gain the end in view. These popular gatherings were called every few weeks and kept up the agitation. At length after much newspaper discussion a bill was brought before the legislature in February, 1872. The legislators mangled the bill and proposed "Garry" and "Selkirk" instead of Winnipeg as the name of the new town. Again the mass meetings began, and the popular clamor against the house was loud. The upper house, the legislative council of seven was, it is said, intimidated. The bill was hrown out. The speaker of the house, at prominent medical gentleman and a most inoffensive citizen, was that evening mobbed and coated with tar, to the disgust of all order-loving citizens. A special session of the legislature was called in November, 1873, and at this the bill of incorporation was passed giving Winnipeg the rank of "city" from the beginning. Then came the civic election. The first mayor was Mr. F. Cornish, a well known lawyer, who defeated Mr. W. F. Luxton. Thus began the city of Winnipeg in January, 1874. Many have been its joys and sorrows hopes and fears, since that date. The story of these must be reserved for other papers and other occasions. Suffice it to say that the citizens of Winnipeg, in their many vicissitudes, have always assured themselves that theirs is "no mean city."

NOTE—(The treatment of the Riel rebellion and the Fenian raid is omitted as these are rather provincial than civic events.)



The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba.

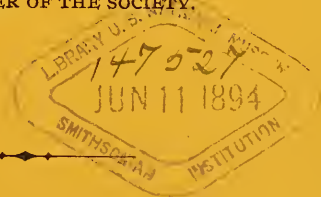
A FORGOTTEN NORTHERN FORTRESS.

— BY —

HON. JOHN SCHULTZ, M. D., F. Imp. I.

LIEUTENANT-GOVERNOR OF MANITOBA,

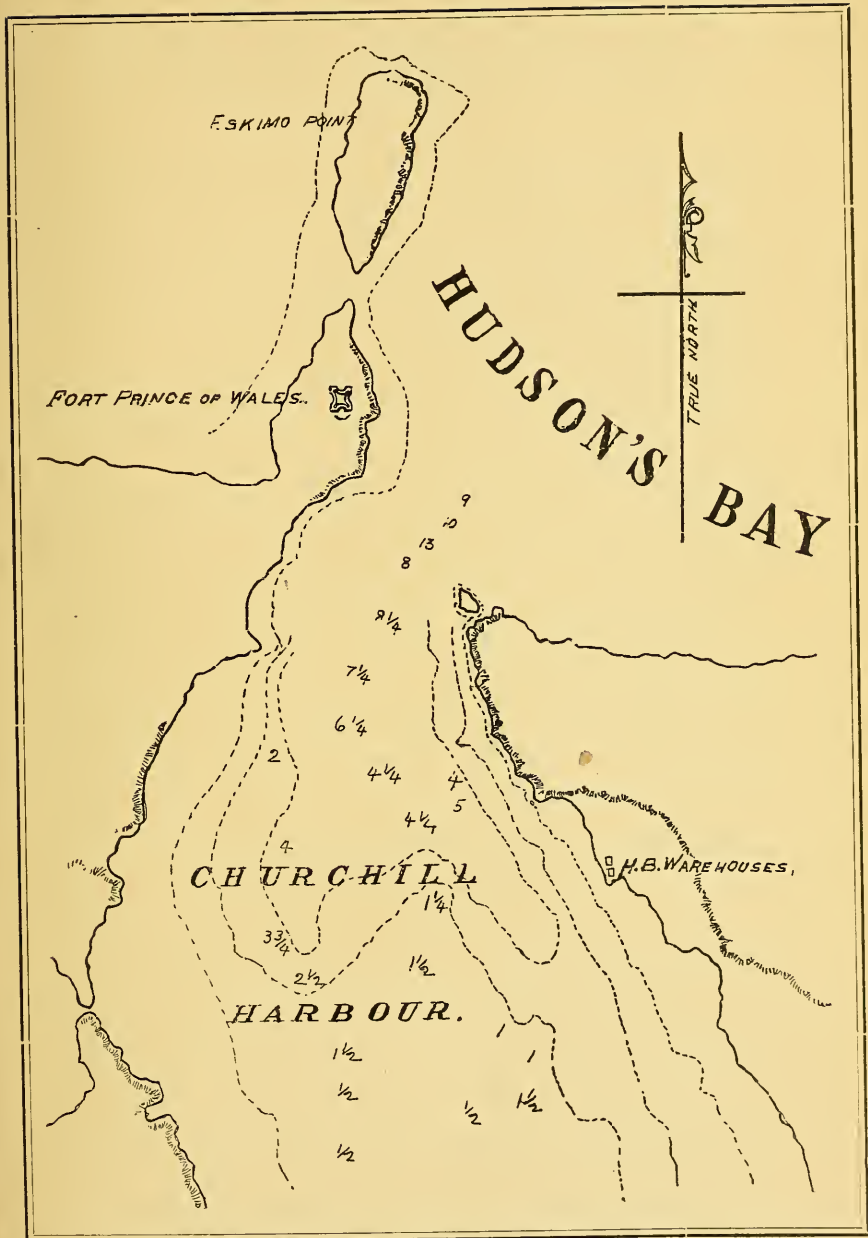
A LIFE MEMBER OF THE SOCIETY.



WINNIPEG :

MANITOBA FREE PRESS PRINT.

1894.



“A Forgotten Northern Fortress.”

His Honor Lieutenant Governor Schultz, previous to reading his paper on “A Forgotten Northern Fortress” before the Historical Society, said that he felt an apology to be due to the President, officers and members of the Society for having been unable to take upon himself a greater share of the Society’s work ; and that, in the presence of so many gentlemen who had contributed so largely to its successful accomplishment, he felt that he was very far behind indeed. If, however, a reasonable excuse could be found for him in the precarious health and many engagements of the past, he would promise, now that he was better, amendment for the future, and, should the Council be able to give him an evening some time soon, he would prepare for it some matter relating to our early history, which might be of interest to the society. It had been his practice, he said, since 1860 to collect everything in the way of pamphlets, reports, newspaper references and other ephemeral literature which related to the country west of Lake Superior ; and when these had become numerous, to have them bound in volumes for preservation. Among such records were many which were purely historical, and he would endeavor, if possible, to select from these, many of them dating back as far as 1857, such as might be an addition to the Society’s records.

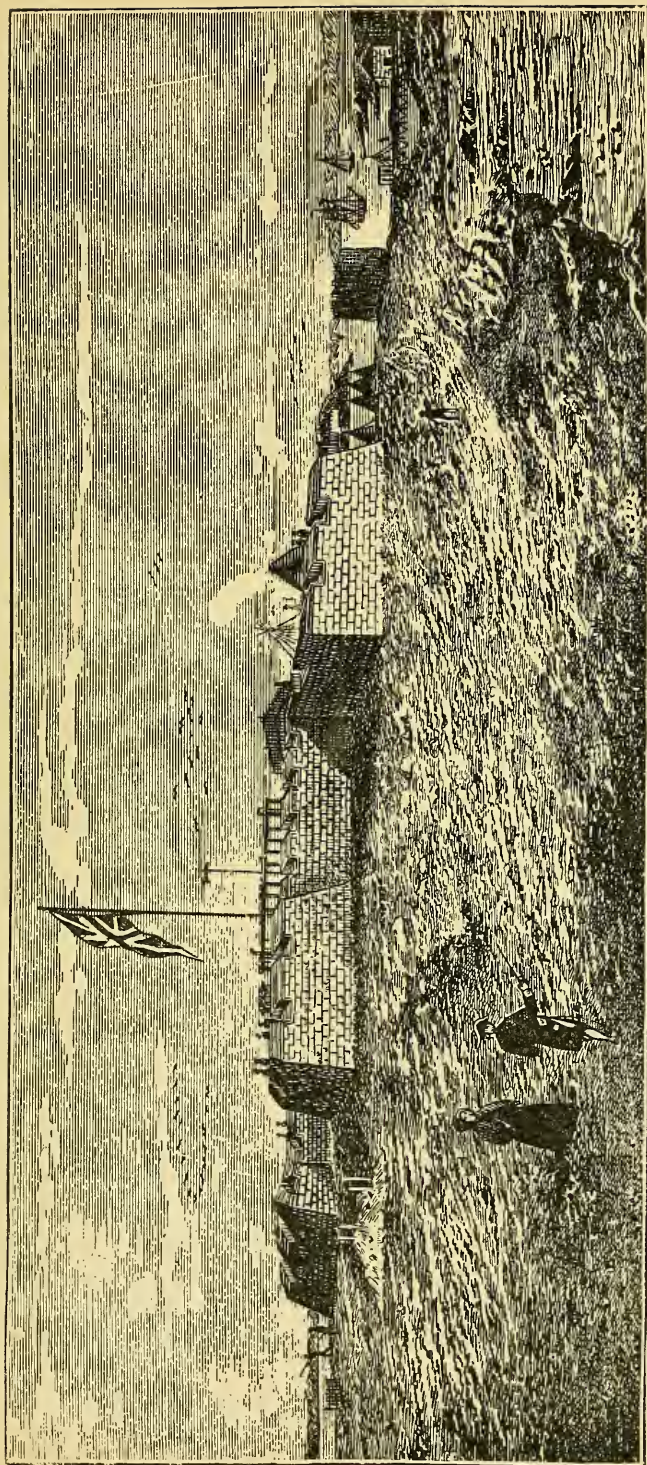
With reference, His Honor said, to the paper he was about to read, a few words of explanation might be advisable. He had chosen for its title “A Forgotten Northern Fortress” as being applicable, inasmuch as being far away from any route of modern tourist or business travel, Fort Prince of Wales is scarcely ever mentioned ; and its ruins are seldom seen by other eyes than those on board the Hudson’s Bay Company’s supply ship, which once a year visits those lonely shores. For the photographic view of its ruins which he had placed upon the table he was indebted to Professor Robert Bell, of

the geological survey, one of the Society's corresponding members. To another of its valued corresponding members, J. R. Spencer, Esq., for many years in charge of the Hudson's Bay Company's affairs at Churchill, whose lamentable death occurred in this city a few months ago, he was indebted for the interesting plan of the fortress, drawn by Mr. Spencer himself, which had also been laid on the table. The plan of Churchill harbor, its approaches and soundings, was a rough tracing from the survey made by Lieut. A. R. Gordon, R.N., assisted by Mr. J. W. Tyrrell, P.L.S., in 1886.

Professor Bell, in writing His Honor some time ago, gave the measurements of Fort Prince of Wales as about 300 feet on each side, 20 feet high, 20 feet wide at top, with a wall base of 30 feet, the southern and western walls being faced with hammer dressed stone in regular courses, each stone being about four feet long and two feet thick; the other walls are faced with good rubble masonry. There is a bastion at each corner, and in each of these a well of water, still full, for the supply of the fort. "I counted nearly forty cannon on the top of the walls, but as some of these are nearly covered with rubbish, others are probably out of sight altogether."

The slight discrepancy between his estimate of the height and that of Mr. Spencer may probably be accounted for by one observer including the foundation of the walls in the height; and the little difference in determining the exact width of the top of the wall must be charged to the condition in which La Perouse's gunners (who tried their best to blow up the whole fort), left that more easily destroyed part.

His Honor then, turning to a large map, explained briefly why Churchill, which is now like "Severn," a mere outpost of York Factory, was once the great entrepot of Hudson's Bay trade; and, on the map indicated the several exploratory routes of Hearne, the Arctic search route of Captain, afterwards Sir George, Back, the hunting trip of Warburton Pike, and the later important, difficult, but successful, route, follow-



FORT PRINCE OF WALES,
From the Frontispiece of Hearne's Voyages.

ed by Mr. J. B. Tyrrell, of the Geological Survey; after which the interesting paper of His Honor was read by him as follows:—

A FORGOTTEN NORTHERN FORTRESS.

The sixteenth century closed with that western waterway to the Indies, which all men sought who went "down to the sea" in the quaintly rigged, queerly built ships of the period, undiscovered; and the earlier years of the seventeenth found the ardor of search unabated, and the goal the same. English Kings and Queens, choosing more northern routes than had the monarchs of Spain and France, failed as they had; Henry the Eighth sent the Venetian Cabot, who found Labrador barring the way; Elizabeth sent Frobisher, who, turning its northern flank, found only the ice-blocked strait which bears his name. Davis and Wymouth followed; but it was reserved for the gallant Hudson to discover and sail into a strait, apparently upon the direct route to the west, which opening into a wide sea, that daring mariner must have thought the secret of two centuries unlocked, and fancied that through fog and mist he scented the spice-laden breezes of Cathay. In 1610, mariners were not easily daunted by wreck and ruined hopes; and Hudson's tragic fate in the great sea he had discovered did not deter further search, for, in the years which followed, the frightened Esquimaux, fleeing in his kyack to relate to the old men of his band the strange apparition which glinted white through the mist, and was not the sheen of berg or floe, had but seen the sails of other adventurers who still sought what men had been seeking for three generations in vain.

Button and Bylot, Baffin, James and Fox, Hawkbridge and Jones, all failed to find the desired passage: and when Captain Zachariah Gillam, accompanied by M. de Grosselier, sailed into the bay in 1668, we may suppose that the English merchants who sent him had in view, as well as the Northwest Passage, those rich furs which, brought back by other voyagers, had begun to grace the shoulders of the beauties of

the Louvre and of the English court; for, after wintering and trading in a rough stone fort on the bay, he returned to England with reports which gained for his patrons the aid of many gallant but needy cavaliers in obtaining from "Charles the Second, by the Grace of God, King of England, Scotland, France and Ireland," in the year 1670, a charter "of our ample and abundant grace" to "our dear entirely beloved cousin, Prince Rupert," etc., etc., of what was equal in extent to several European kingdoms, with powers which no potentate in Europe would dare to exercise to-day.

While the English monarch was thus disposing of empire to his favored cousin and courtiers, Richelieu was equally active in France, and parchment powers, signed "Henri" or "Charles," were given with that easy and reckless indifference to the rights of others peculiar to the time, leaving the overlapping boundaries of these vague grants to be rectified and adjusted with the powder and steel of the grantees, and the tomahawk and knife of their Indian allies. England assumed ownership by right of maritime discovery; France, by those land and canoe explorations, which have left her language everywhere in the West, in the names of river and lake, cape, promontory and island. The English Company of Adventurers trading into Hudson's Bay occupied the mouths of all the rivers with palisaded forts or factories, and fished, hunted and traded from them, visited once a year by ships, which were watched for by that daring rover, D'Iberville, as Drake had watched for the Spanish galleons. The forts were attacked, and often destroyed, by the hardy voyageurs of New France. Surprises and reprisals continued, till Blenheim, Ramilies and Maplaquet had decided quarrels of more moment, and the Treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, left the English in peaceable possession of their forts, "factories and plantations," on Hudson's Bay.

With France thus prostrate, the English were to pursue, for over sixty years, their profitable trade in peace; but the recollection of burning forts and plundered factories was still keen, and the thunder of D'Iberville's guns not soon to be for-

gotten ; and as their trade increased, there came with it the desire to fortify their best bay harbor, and preserve their principal entrepot from possible plunder ; so upon a rocky spit, forming one side of and commanding the harbor of Churchill, was commenced Fort Prince of Wales. Vigorously at first was the massive thirty feet wide foundation begun ; not, however, on the rude plan of former forts, but from the drawings of military engineers, who had served under Marlborough. Artisans were brought from England ; the southern and western walls were faced with hammer-dressed stone bastions were placed at each angle with a well of water in each, and after many years of labor and expense, four walls, each over three hundred feet in length, 20 feet high and 20 feet wide at the top, closed in and protected great stone buildings, which contained each one a prince's ransom in rich northern furs. Forty-two guns of the then heaviest calibre furnished the armament of the bastions and walls, and stores of food were provided to enable the defenders to stand a siege. The Chipewyans, from the far off Athabasca and Great Slave lakes, must have gazed with astonishment at its massive walls and portentous artillery ; and its fame throughout all northern tribes must have been great indeed, and have environed with a vague respect the adventurous Hearne, who thrice between 1769 and 1772 left its gates, twice to return baffled and defeated, and lastly on that most adventurous of all Arctic land journeys, to return with the secret of the Arctic coast at the mouth of the Coppermine river in his possession. Years passed on, and as the remembrance of pillaged factories faded and the pressure for increased gain in their rich trade became greater, and the barter more inland, so did the number of men kept at this sea-harbor depot become less, so that it was with great surprise on the 8th of August, 1782, that the thirty-nine defenders of the Prince of Wales Fort saw the bellying sails of three ships making straight for their fortress ; and when, at six in the evening, they swung to their anchors six miles away, their pierced sides showing them to be vessels of war, their astonishment was great indeed. Strangers they



**RUINS OF FORT PRINCE OF WALES,
Churchill Harbour.**
(From a Photograph by Professor Bell.)

evidently were, for soon pinnace, gig and long boat were busy sounding the approach to the harbor. Day-break saw them disembarking, and the morning's clear light showed to the thirty-nine defenders of the fortress an array of four hundred troops, bearing again the flag of France on those far northern shores. The summons to surrender was followed by a parley, and when the parley ended, the gallant La Perouse found himself in bloodless possession of a fortress which, properly garrisoned, might have defied all the ships of France that had ever entered Hudson's Bay.

The French Admiral quickly transported the rich bales of valuable furs to his ships, and replenished their depleted commissariat from the well-filled provision stores of the fort. Then came the license of the soldiery and the looting of the fort, to be followed by an attempt, which occupied two days, to utterly demolish it. But although French gunpower was freely added to the vast English store, yet the walls of the fort, this well built mass of masonry, resisted the best efforts of the French artillerymen to do more than displace the upper rows of the massive granite stones of which it was mainly built, dismount its guns and blow up the gateway and the stone outwork which protected it.

The capture of this far off northern fortress was cheaply and easily performed by the adventurous Frenchman, who extended his conquests around the shores of the bay; but the fortunes of war after a time turned again, and the Company of Adventurers trading into Hudson's Bay, who, at their own expense, had built the fort for the defence of their trade, sent in a bill for many thousand sterling pounds to the British Government, for failing to protect their factory at Churchill; and when, again, peace was proclaimed, it was after the French plenipotentiaries had agreed to settle the bill for La Perouse's capture and demolition of Fort Prince of Wales. It was never rebuilt, and stands on that far-off northern coast, the still well preserved remains of a massive fortification, the most northern one of British America, scarcely inferior, as

such, to Lousburg, or early Quebec; its site admirably chosen; its design and armament once perfect; interesting still as a relic of by-gone strife, but useful now only as a beacon for the harbor it had failed to protect."

Rev. Dr. Bryce, at the close of the paper, moved a hearty vote of thanks to His Honor, speaking in flattering terms of the very interesting paper just read, and proposed that it be printed, with copies of the chart of the harbor, plan of the Fort, and the photographs, and placed in the archives of the Society.

Mr. C. N. Bell, in seconding the motion, expressed regret that this valuable paper should not have been reserved for a future meeting when most interesting matters connected with Hearne, and the capture of the fort might have been fully discussed.

The President, Rev. Professor Baird, in tendering the vote of thanks, stated that His Honor had underrated the aid already given by him to the Society, and said that the Society would value highly, and carefully keep the early documents spoken of by the Governor, and that the Council would be pleased to call a meeting whenever it suited His Honor's convenience.

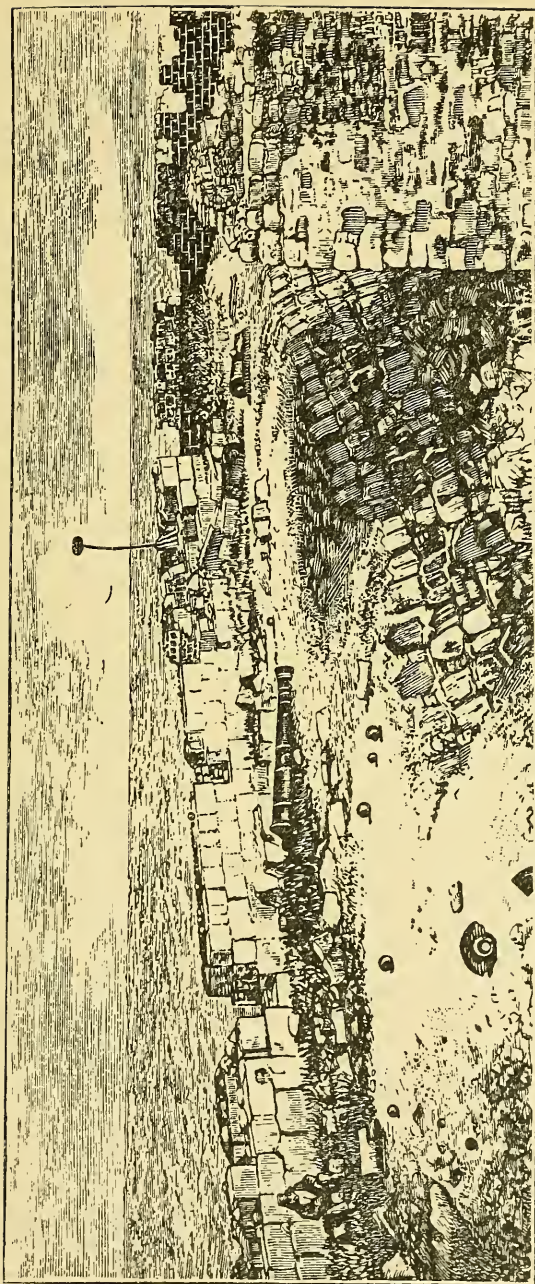
NOTES REGARDING THE ABOVE.

The statement regarding the failure of La Prouse to entirely destroy the fortress is from Professor Bell, of the Geological Survey, who learned it at Churchill from an aged Indian, whose father was present at the capture of the fort. The first view of Fort Prince of Wales is from Hearne's book, the other views being from photographs taken by Professor Bell. The map of the harbor is from the survey of Lieut.

Gordon and Mr. J. W. Tyrrell, P. L. S., and the following notes have been kindly furnished me by Mr. C. N. Bell, who has consulted the best authorities on the subject.

Fort Prince of Wales stands at the west side of the entrance to the harbor at the mouth of the Churchill River, Hudson's Bay. Its ruins may yet be seen occupying a most commanding position on a rocky promontory commanding Churchill harbor. The fort was built of stone, and at one time mounted forty cannon of various sizes, some of them being quite large for the date. Several years were consumed in the erection of the fort, which was begun in the year 1733. Joseph Robson, who was the surveyor in charge of construction for some years, published a book on the operations of the Hudson's Bay Company, in 1752, in which he gives many details regarding the size and form of the fort. A cut published in Robson's book shows the form of the structure to be a square of three hundred feet, with a massive bastion at each corner. Robson states that the original intention was to have the walls forty-two feet thick at the foundation, but through the interference of the Trading Governor of the post, they were reduced to twenty-five feet, though as the cannon on being fired from the walls rolled off, one side was pulled down and rebuilt according to the original plan. Three of the bastions had arches for storehouses, forty feet three inches by ten feet, and in the fourth was built a stone magazine twenty-four feet long and ten feet wide in the clear with a passage to it through the gorge of the bastion twenty-four feet long and four feet wide. The parapet was originally constructed of wood supplied by demolishing the old fort situated five miles up the Churchill River, the site of which was first occupied in 1688, but in 1746 Robson began erecting the stone parapet. Robson's plan shows that two houses, a dwelling and office building, were erected inside the fort, and incidently he describes one of the two as being 101 feet 6 inches by 33 feet with side walls of 17 feet height, and the roof covered with lead.

Fort Prince of Wales was captured by the French Admiral on the 9th August, 1782, and in his own book



INSIDE VIEW OF RUINS OF FORT PRINCE OF WALES,
Churchill Harbour.

(From a Photograph by Professor Bell.)

“La Perouse’s Voyages,” published in Paris 1788, he writes that he had with him the “Sceptre, carrying 74 guns; the Astarte and the Engageante, carrying each 36 guns; 4 field guns, 2 mortars and 300 bombshells.” They sighted the fort on the evening of the 8th August, and anchored in eighteen fathoms of water. An officer sent to reconnoitre the approaches to the fort reported that the vessels could be brought to bear on it at a very short distance. La Perouse, thinking that the Sceptre would not easily subdue the enemy if they resisted, prepared to make a descent during the night, and without difficulty the boats landed about two miles from the fort. La Perouse seeing no preparations made for defence, although the fort seemed to be in a good state, summoned the enemy, the gates were opened, and the Governor and garrison surrendered at discretion. Thus it will be seen from an account written by the French, that the Company’s people surrendered without firing a shot. The Governor at that time in charge of the fort was Samuel Hearne, and it is exceedingly strange that he, who had amply proved his personal bravery during his Arctic journeys when he discovered the Coppermine River in 1772, should on this occasion show such a cowardly front to an enemy. Umfreville, who was taken prisoner at the capture of the fort, wrote a full account of the affair to the English papers in April, 1783, and it agrees with the account given by La Perouse. Umfreville was disgusted with the cowardice shown by Hearne, and says that the French were weak and reduced in health after a long sea voyage, most of them poorly clad and only half of them had shoes. Hearne was taken as a prisoner of war by the Admiral to France.

J. S.

The Historical and Scientific Society
of Manitoba.

WORTHIES OF OLD RED RIVER

— BY —

GEORGE BRYCE, LL.D

A LIFE MEMBER OF THE SOCIETY.

WINNIPEG :

MANITOBA FREE PRESS PRINT.

1896.

Worthies^{of} —

Old Red River



At the annual meeting of the Historical society held Tuesday evening, the 11th February, 1896, in the city council chamber, the Rev. Dr. Bryce, a life member of the society, read the following interesting paper:

A lively writer who visited the Selkirk colony nearly forty years ago, speaks of the Red River settlement as "This bit of ruder European life, thrown haphazard into the wilderness." Though consisting of but a handful of people, the old settlement had many unique features. Its isolation, its strong individuality, and its peculiarity of organization make some of its features as worthy of notice as those of Drumtochty or the village of Thrums.

The settlement was made up of three principal elements: First, there were the descendants of the early French traders and voyageurs, who had married the Indian women of the country, and left behind them the French halfbreeds, or as they were often called the Metis, or at other times the Bois-brules. These people lived chiefly up the Red river from the mouth of the Assiniboine in the parishes of St. Boniface, St. Vital, St. Norbert and Ste. Agathe, in St. Charles, St. Francois Xavier, and Baie St. Paul on the Assiniboine, and at two outlying settlements one on the Seine at Pointe de Chene, and the other at St. Laurent on Lake Manitoba. Though somewhat severely spoken of by Ross in his work on the Red river, the French halfbreeds are kind and obliging to those who treat them as friends,

and though deprived of the benefits of education are a chivalrous and well mannered people.

Second, among the elements of Red river people are the descendants of the older employes of the Hudson's Bay company, many of them from the Orkney Islands, who also on the mother's side were related to Indians of the country. These were known as the English, i. e. English-speaking halfbreeds. The chief English halfbreed settlements were on the Red river in the parishes of St. Paul, St. Andrews, and St. Clements, with St. James, Headingley, Poplar Point, and Portage la Prairie on the Assiniboine. The English half-breed was more docile than the French, less of a hunter and more of a worker, and hospitable to a fault.

Last of the elements of the Red River people were the Selkirk settlers, and their descendants, who lived north of the present site of the city of Winnipeg, in the parish of Kildonan, or in the parish of St. John's, which included much of the site of the present city of Winnipeg. The Kildonan people were almost entirely of Highland origin, and had features of language and character and a parish life, quite distinctive in this mixture of races.

This tripartite community varied much in religion, manners and customs. The French halfbreeds were Roman Catholics, the English halfbreeds belonged chiefly to the Church of England, and the Selkirk settlers were largely Presbyterians.

As to numbers the census of 1849 given by Ross states that there were in all 5,391 of a population. The population of the settlement in 1870, in the year when Manitoba was formed, has usually been stated at about 12,000, of whom 5,000 were French halfbreeds, 5,000 English halfbreeds and 2,000 whites. It should be stated that the whites were not all confined to Kildonan and St. John's but were to some extent scattered through the other parishes. The figures given by Hargrave in his "Red River" somewhat differ from these.

Here, however, isolated and composite, was a small community, governed by a council nominated by the Hudson's Bay company, which had grown up from being a few hundred in 1817 when Lord Selkirk visited the colony to the figures named in 1869, the last year in which the Hudson's Bay company held sway in the country.

Here religion and education had early come and with their softening and elevating influences had reduced the isolated dwellers of the Selkirk settlement, the wild hunters of the plains, and the wandering trippers of the prairies into a community having many striking characteristics.

In this community rose to the position of leaders a number of men of very different powers and various influence. We shall endeavor this evening to sketch the lives and work of a few of them; and our choice of subjects will be from the different elements of the population.

JOHN PRITCHARD.

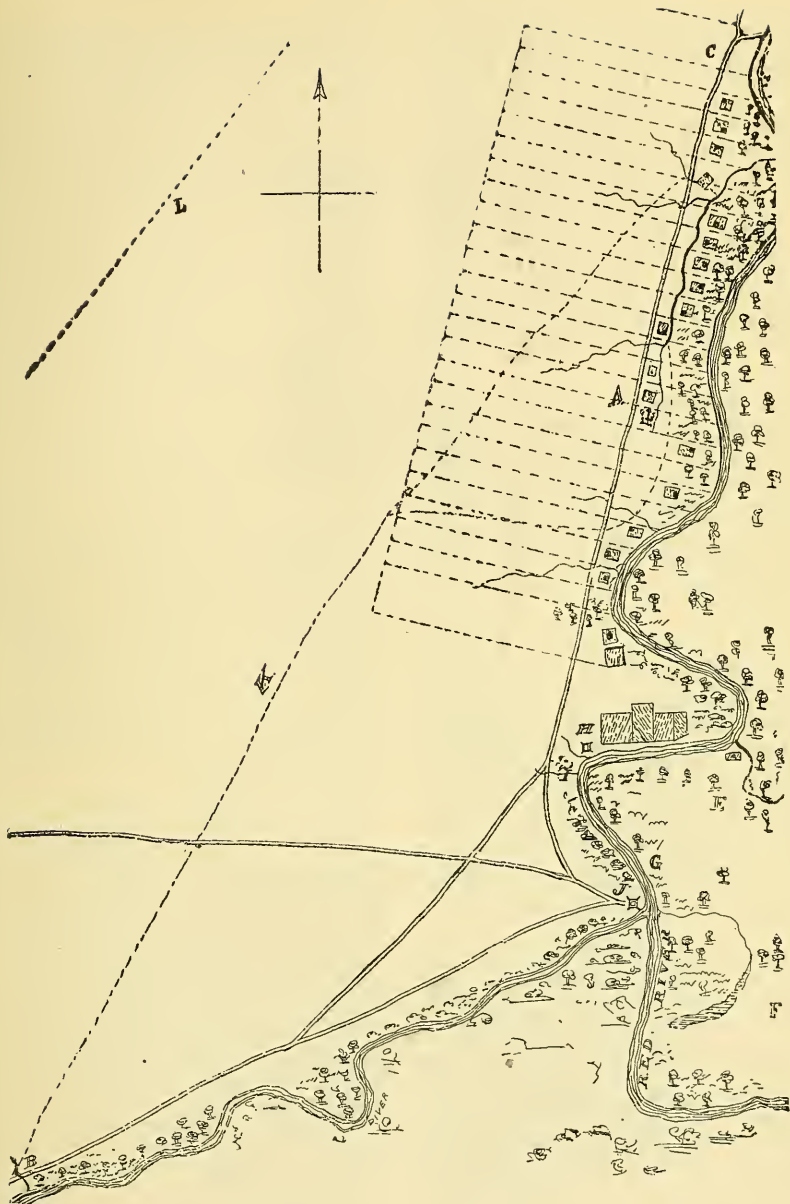
Fur Trader and Agent.

The name of John Pritchard carries us back in the Red River to the beginning of this century—to a time even before the coming of the Selkirk Colony. His descendants to the fourth generation are still found in Manitoba, and are well known. He was born in 1777 in a small village near the town of Shrewsbury, in Shropshire, England, and received his education in the famous grammar school of the town named. Early in this century he emigrated to Montreal, almost certainly before 1804. At that time the ferment among the fur traders was great. The old Northwest company of Montreal had split into sections, and to the new company or X Y company young Pritchard was attached. We first hear of him at the mouth of the Souris river in 1805, and shortly after in charge of one of

the forts at that point where the Souris empties into the Assiniboine. One of his letters is extant giving an account of his being lost without companion or food on the prairie between the Pipestone and the Souris. For forty days he survived, living on the roots of the prairie turnips, a prairie chicken, and now and then a frog. He at last found himself at Whitewater lake, in the Deloraine district, and by the help of an Indian reached Fort Riviere la Souris, not having, as he says himself, "the appearance of an inhabitant of this world."

Probably Pritchard never took kindly to the combined Northwest company, for we find him a few years after as one of the garrison occupying Fort Douglas, although he represents himself as being a settler on the Red River. Elsewhere a full account has been given of the causes of the Red River troubles from 1814 to 1817. The Northwest company of Montreal had occupied the Northwest before the Hudson's Bay company left the Bay and penetrated the interior. From the year 1774 when the Hudson's Bay company erected Fort Cumberland on the Saskatchewan almost within hailing distance of the Nor'-Wester fort the fiercest rivalry continued. For nearly forty years this fur trading contest lasted until matters assumed a new form when Lord Selkirk, determined to establish his colony, under Hudson's Bay company auspices on the banks of Red River.

Lord Selkirk's first settlers arrived, by way of Hudson Bay, at the Red River in 1812, and took up holdings on the Red River, near the site of the present city of Winnipeg. Several parties arrived in the years succeeding by the same route, until the Selkirk settlement in 1814 numbered about two hundred souls. In that year a "jauntily-dressed" officer of the Nor'-west company, named Duncan Cameron, succeeded in inducing about one hundred and fifty of the settlers to desert the Red River and take up their abode in the western part of Upper Canada. Governor Macdonell had erected buildings within what are now the limits of the city of Winnipeg; but the Nor'-westers resisted his authority, and even took the governor prisoner; and their chiefs, one of whom was Cuthbert Grant, on June 25th, 1815, issued the mandate: "All settlers to retire immediately from the River, and no appearance of a colony to remain." In that year, however, another party of Highland colonists



RED RIVER SETTLEMENT.

Fac-simile of section of Map (1818).

A—Seven Oaks, where Semple fell.
 B—Creek where Metis left Assiniboine.
 C—Frog Plain (since Kildonan church).
 E to F—De Meuron Settlers on Seine.
 G—Half-breeds (St. Boniface of today).

H—Fort Douglas (1815).
 I—Colony Gardens.
 J—Fort Gibraltar (N.W.Co.)
 K—Road followed by Metis.
 L—Dry Cart trail west of Settlers' lots.

arrived from Britain, making the number up again to about one hundred and fifty. The deserted homesteads were again occupied. The colonists' buildings were erected in a more substantial form, a barricade was built around them, and reprisals were even made upon the Nor'-wester establishment, Fort Gibraltar, which stood at the junction of the Red and Assiniboine Rivers. An officer, Robt. Semple, had been sent out by Lord Selkirk as governor, and he took up his abode in Fort Douglas (1816). The Nor'-westers now determined to make a great effort, and these events led to the battle of "Seven Oaks," in which the governor and his attendants were killed.

"The Bois-Brules, as the French half-breeds were commonly called, were admirably adapted for the purposes of the Nor'-westers, and indeed had a passionate attachment to the company. The company, recognizing the power it gave them with the Indians to have as agents those having Indian blood encouraging the idea of an autonomy—a nationality among themselves.

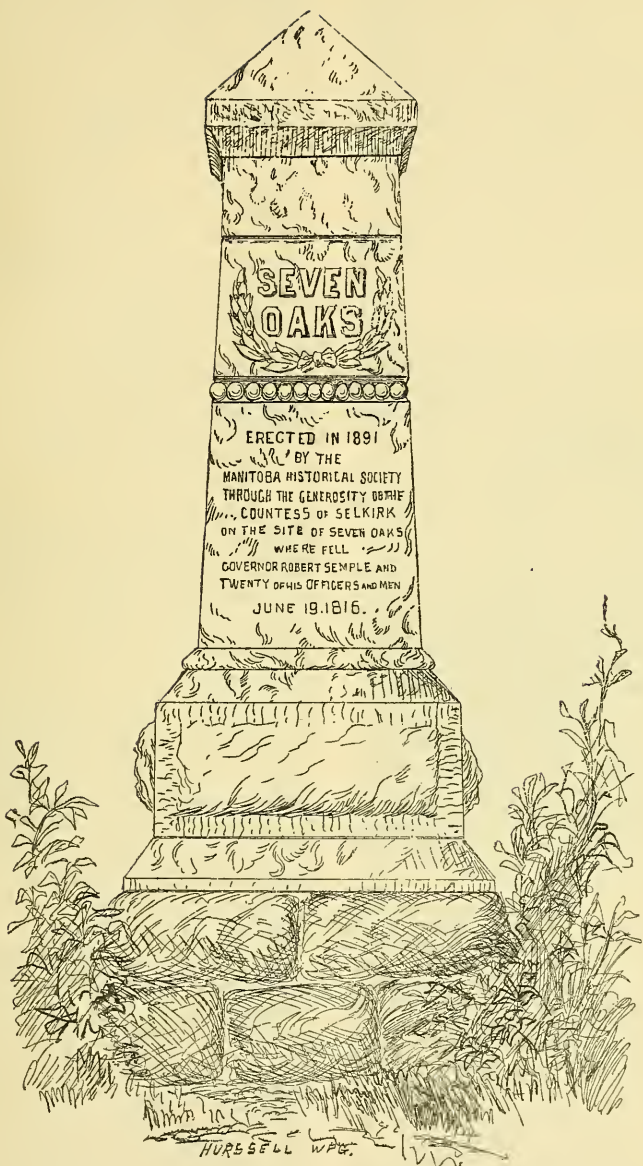
In 1816 the Nor'-westers determined to attack the settlement. For several months their plans were slowly but surely matured. From Qu'Appelle, Brandon House and Portage la Prairie the company received reinforcements, from the Portage the main body of Bois-brules, mounted on horses and armed with guns, pistols, lances and bows and arrows pushed on to attack the settlement. On arriving at the creek east of Silver Heights, the party turned across the prairie, and by the line marked on the map moved toward Kildonan.

John Pritchard, who was in Fort Douglas, which was situated near the foot of George street in this city, gives a clear account of the affair:

"On the afternoon of the 19th of June, 1816, a man in the watch-house called out that the half-breeds were coming. The governor, some other gentlemen and myself looked through spy-glasses, and I distinctly saw some armed people on horseback passing along the plains. A man then called out: 'They (meaning the half-breeds) are making for the settlers, on which the governor said: We must go out and meet those people; let twenty men follow me.' We proceeded along the old road leading down the settlement. As we were going along we

met many of the settlers running to the fort crying, 'The half-breeds! the half-breeds!' When we were advanced about three-quarters of a mile along the settlement we saw some people on horseback behind a point of woods. On our nearer approach the party seemed to be more numerous, on which the governor made a halt and sent for a field-piece, which delaying to arrive, he ordered us to advance. We had not proceeded far before the half-breeds with their faces painted in the most hideous manner, and in the dresses of Indian warriors, came forward and surrounded us in the form of a half moon. We then extended our line and moved more into the open plain, and as they advanced we retreated a few steps backward and then saw a Canadian named Boucher ride up to us waving his hand and calling out, "What do you want?" The governor replied, "What do you want?" To which Boucher answered, "We want our fort." The governor said, "Go to your fort." They were by this time near each other, and consequently spoke too low for me to hear. Being at some little distance to the right of the governor, I saw him take hold of Boucher's gun, and almost immediately a general discharge of firearms took place, but whether it began on our side or that of the enemy, it was impossible to distinguish. My attention was then directed to my personal defence. In a few minutes almost all our people were either killed or wounded.

Captain Rogers, having fallen, rose up and came towards me, when, not seeing one of our party who was not either killed or disabled, I called out to him, 'For God's sake give yourself up!' He ran towards the enemy for that purpose, myself following him. He raised up his hands and, and in English and broken French, called for mercy. A half-breed (son of Col. Wm. McKay) shot him through the head, and another cut open his belly with a knife with the most horrid imprecations. Fortunately for me, a Canadian, named Lavigne, joining his entreaties to mine, saved me (though with the greatest difficulty) from sharing the fate of my friend at that moment. After this I was reserved from death, in the most providential manner, no less than six different times on my way to and at Frog Plain, the headquarters of these cruel murderers. With the exception of myself, no quarter was given to any of us. The knife, axe or ball, put a period to the existence of the



SEVEN OAKS MONUMENT

wounded; and on the bodies of the dead were practised all those barbarities which characterize the inhuman heart of the savage. The amiable and mild Mr. Semple, lying on his side (his thigh having been broken) and supporting his head upon his hand, addressed the commander of our enemies, by inquiring if he was Mr. Grant; and being answered in the affirmative, 'I am not mortally wounded,' said Mr. Semple; 'and if you get me conveyed to the fort, I think I should live.' Grant promised he would do so, and immediately left him in the care of a Canadian, who afterwards told that an Indian of their party had shot Mr. Semple in the breast. I entreated Grant to procure me the watch, or even the seals, of Mr. Semple, for the purpose of transmitting them to his friends, but I did not succeed. Our force amounted to 28 persons, of whom 21 were killed and one wounded."

The monument of Seven Oaks commemorates the unfortunate victims of the fray.

John Pritchard lived to see Fort Douglas in the following year recaptured from the Bois-Brules. He entered Lord Selkirk's service, and as his agent went over to London. To him was left the duty of obtaining a minister for the Kildonan settlers. Pritchard married among the people of Kildonan, and lived not far from the Kildonan church on the other side of the river. A number of his letters have been printed which show that he took a lively interest in the affairs of the settlement, especially in its religious concerns. It is not then remarkable that among his descendants there should be no less than seven clergymen of the Church of England. It is interesting to know that the Hudson Bay company voted him about 1833 an annuity of £25 in consideration of valuable services rendered by him to education, and especially in the establishment of Sunday schools and day schools. This man whose life was a chronicle of the history of the settlement passed away in 1856 and was buried in St. John's churchyard.

PIERRE FALCON, The Rhymester.

Among the wild rout of Nor'-Westers at the skirmish of Seven Oaks was a French half-breed, whose father was a French Canadian, engaged in the fur trade, and his mother an Indian woman from the Missouri country. The young combatant had been born in 1793, at Elbow Fort, in the Swan River district. Taken as a child to

Canada, young Pierre lived for a time at Laprairie, and at the age of 15 returned with his father to Red River, and with him engaged in the service of the Northwest Fur company. What part Falcon took in the affair at Seven Oaks we are not told, except that he behaved bravely, and saw Governor Semple killed.

Pierre Falcon was, however, the bard or poet of his people. This characteristic of Falcon is quite remarkable considered in connection with the time and circumstances. That a man who was unable to read or write should have been able to describe the striking events of his time in verse is certainly a notable thing. He never tired singing in different times and metres the valor of the Bois-brules at "Seven Oaks."

"Voulez-vous écouter chanter
Une chanson de verité
Le dix neuf Juin, la bande des Bois-
brules
Sont arrivés comme des braves guerriers."

Then with French gaiety and verse he gives an account of the attack on the Orkneymen, as he calls them, recites the governor's action, and his death. Falcon finishes up the chanson with a wild hurrah of triumph:

"Les Bois-brules jetaient des cris de joie."

The lively spirit of the rhymester broke out in songs upon all the principal events which agitated the people of the settlement. Joseph Tasse, to whom we are chiefly indebted in this sketch, said of him, "All his compositions are not of the same interest, but they are sung by our voyageurs to the measured stroke of the oar, on the most distant rivers and lakes of the Northwest. The echoes of the Assiniboine, the Mackenzie and Hudson Bay will long repeat them."

The excitable, patriotic spirit of the rhymester never left him. At the time of the Riel rebellion (1869-70) Falcon was still alive, and though between seventy and eighty years of age, he wished to march off with his gun to the fray, declaring that "while the enemy would be occupied in killing him his friends would be able to give hard and well-directed blows to them."

For about half a century he lived on the White Horse Plains, twenty miles or more up the Assiniboine from Winnipeg, and became an influential man in the neighborhood. His mercurial disposition seems to have become more settled than in his fiery youth, for though unlettered, he was made a justice of the peace.

His verse making was, of course, of a very simple and unfinished kind. One of his constant fashions was to end it up with a declaration that it was made by Falcon, the singer of his people.

"Qui en a fait la chanson?

Un poete de Canton;

Au bout de la chanson

Nous vous le nommeros.

Un jour etant a table

A boire et a chanter

A chanter tout au long

La nouvelle chanson.

Amis, buvons, trinquons

Saluons la chanson

De Pierriche Falcon

Ce faiseur de chansons."

the last line being often varied to

"Pierre Falcon, le bon garcon."

ADAM THOM,

Judge and Philosopher.

In the year after the fight of "Seven Oaks" and the sacking of Fort Douglas, Lord Selkirk's men re-captured the fort. His lordship personally set things to rights in his colony, and the two rival fur companies united four years afterwards. For fourteen years after the union of the fur companies the affairs of the Red River settlement were still administered by Lord Selkirk's heirs. In 1835 the Hudson's Bay company bought out the rights of the private owners and established a council and company government in the settlement. In the course of a few years the need of better courts was felt, and in 1839 the subject of this sketch, familiarly known as "Judge Thom," came to Red River. He was a native of Aberdeen, born in 1802, educated at King's college in his native town, and had for a number of years been a political writer, a lawyer, and an assistant on Lord Durham's brilliant staff of young men in Canada.

Judge Thom's arrival in Red River, as the special choice of Governor Simpson, at once gave him a position and standing of great importance. He became a most influential man in the Red River Settlement. He had a marvellous gift of language, and by many in the settlement was looked up to as an oracle. Of warm and attractive manner he was soon a favorite of the people, and his ardent temperament led him to undertake many kind services for the settlers.

As has been said, "When the Bishopric of Rupert's Land was founded, he became the registrar; when the Kildonan church wanted a deed he drew it up and made it so firm in its provisions that when changes were necessary a few years ago in the tenure,

they were very difficult to make. Though the agent of the Hudson Bay Company, and therefore bound to carry out the policy of the company, as to not encouraging the entrance of too many religious bodies on Red River he is said to have had a hand at the same time in framing the petitions forwarded to London by the Presbyterians of Kildonan. Rev. John Ryer-son, on his visit to Red River in 1854, tells of his going down to Kildonan to hear a lecture from Judge Thom "On the State and Progress of the Red River Settlement," and the hearer says that the subject was treated "with great elegance, beauty and ability."



ADAM THOM

The circumstances of the times were, however, trying for the new judge. The relation of the settlers on the Red River to the Hudson Bay Company had become very unsatisfactory. The company, by their charter, no doubt, had a monopoly of the fur trade. But the mass of the people being hunters, and finding it difficult otherwise to gain a living, had recognized this—and indeed the company had not enforced this claim. For some reason—according to some, on Judge Thom's advice—it was decided to enforce the right of the company. Accordingly, in 1844, Governor Christie issued two proclamations, placing great restrictions on the settlers. These were tyrannical and severe enactments. Cases are cited in which set-

tlers, traders, and even missionaries were caused much inconvenience and loss by these stringent regulations. The governor and legal adviser, Judge Thom, naturally received the greater part of popular disapproval. The French halfbreeds took the lead in the agitation against the company. A strange story is related as to the way in which the English halfbreeds who had hitherto supported the claim of the company, came to throw in their lot with their French fellow-countrymen. A company officer had left his two daughters at Fort Garry to be educated. One of them was the object of the affection of a young Scotch halfbreed, and at the same time of a young Highlander. The young lady is said to have preferred the Metis, but the fond parent favored the young Highlander. The Scotchman, fortified by the father's approval, proceeded to upbraid the Metis for his temerity in aspiring to the hand of one so high in society as the lady. As love ruined Troy so it is said this affair joined French and English half-breeds in a union to defend the country.

During the five years after the publication of the proclamation a constant agitation was going on among the French. This was sedulously cultivated by one or two active leaders.

When popular feeling had been thoroughly roused it happened that in 1849 Guillaume Sayer, a French halfbreed trader, bought goods intending to go on a trading expedition to Lake Manitoba. The authorities determined to arrest Sayer and three of his associates. This was done, but Sayer only was kept in prison.

As the day of trial drew near the excitement grew intense. Governor Caldwell was known to be inflexible. Judge Thom, it was remembered, had written the famous "Anti-Gallic letters," in Montreal; he was, moreover, said to be the director of the policy of restriction, and a strong company man. The day of trial had been fixed for Ascension day, May 17th, and this was taken as a religious affront by the French. The court was to meet in the morning. On the day of the trial hundreds of French Metis, armed, came from all the settlements to St. Boniface church, and leaving their guns at the door of the church, entered for service. At the close they gathered together and were addressed in a fiery oration by their chief leader. Crossing by way of Point Douglas, the Metis surrounded the unguarded court house at Fort Garry. The governor and judge arrived and took their seats at 11 o'clock. A

curious scene then ensued, the magistrates protesting against the violence, a Metis in loud tones declaring that they would give the tribunal one hour and if justice were not done then they would do it themselves. An altercation then took place between Judge Thom and this leader, and the latter cried: "Et je declare que des ce moment Sayer est libre———" The shouts of the Metis drowned all opposition and Sayer and his fellow prisoners betook themselves to freedom, while the departing Metis cried out: "Le commerce est libre! le commerce est libre! vive la liberte." This crisis was a serious one. Judge Thom, at the suggestion of Governor Simpson did not take his place on the bench for a year though he still held his position and his emoluments. It was the end of the attempt of the company to enforce its distasteful monopoly.

Fifteen years of service in the remote and isolated settlement of Red River had enabled the recorder to accumulate a handsome competence. He accordingly resigned, and returning by way of York Factory sailed from that port in the company's ship "The Prince of Wales" on September 20th, 1854, with his wife and two children. In the second year after his return Judge Thom received the degree of LL. D. from his own university at Aberdeen in recognition of his attainments. He appears to have lived at Edinburgh and Torquay in what might seem to be his declining years, but removed to London in 1870 and took up his abode in his well known residence, 49 Torrington Square, a score of years longer. The family of his departed friend were a constant care to him. For them he always showed a passionate regard. A troublesome lawsuit with a leading banking house in London for misuse of his funds, worried him for years and ended in his losing the case.

Judge Thom's attainments were not however, all of a legal character. The Bishop of Montreal, on his visit to Fort Garry in 1844, mentions that at that time Recorder Thom "was deeply engaged latterly in Biblical studies." In 1847 he completed for publication his work on the typical character of what he calls "Abraham's 430 years." An active mind like that of Judge Thom must have something on which to work. In not having enough to fill up his time and utilize his energies, he must have some abstruse line of study. His mind seemed to have a bent towards mathematics, and his inclination and probably early

training led him to a minute study of the Bible, even in the original tongues. As showing his bent toward figures, the writer remembers Judge Thom saying that he never got into a London omnibus—many of whose figures run up into the thousands—with-out resolving the number into its factors, and combining them in every possible manner. Nothing delighted him so much as to get an appreciative listener and to refer for an hour at a time to the marvellous events of history and to show that they were not isolated, but were part of a great system of development.

His reverence and his mathematical bias at last settled on an idea which completely mastered him and made him in his later years a perfect arithmetical enthusiast. There is lying before the society his large octavo work of 300 pages printed by Remington & Co., London, and which contains his elaborate theory. This work has his essay, which he calls "Emmanuel," in a "pentaglot miniature," i. e., in English, French, German, Italian and Spanish.

An investigation of the work shows that his idea is that 33 and 34, which he in some way regards as the alternative numbers representing the length of our Saviour's life on earth, are normal units of all the great events of history. Of course, though he so thoroughly believed in his theory and in its very great value, yet it may easily be seen that it is only a series of arbitrary groupings and fanciful identifications. The wonder is that a mind of such strength could have wasted itself, on a path so fruitless and so extravagant.

THE ELDER RIEL,

The Fiery Leader.

The moving spirit in these troubles of 1849 was the elder Riel, or as he is better known among the French "Louis Riel, pere." He was as famous in the events of his generation as his son afterwards was in those of our time. Old Louis Riel was born at Isle a la Crosse in the far Northwest, on the 7th of June, 1817. His father was a French Canadian and his mother a French half-breed. At the age of five years he was taken to Lower Canada, where he remained till his twenty-first year, learning in the meantime the trade of a wool-carder. After a short service in the Hudson's Bay company, the young tradesman determined to enter the church and spent two years with the Oblate brotherhood. Unsettled in mind the young novice took to the plains as a

hunter and did not stop short of "going to the sea," as making the trip to Hudson's Bay was called.

In the year 1843 Riel married one of the family of Lagimodiere, a woman of pure French Canadian blood though born on the Red River. Thwarted for a time in his ambition of establishing a woolen mill, he engaged in farming on the banks of the Seine river. His restless mind could not be satisfied until he had begun a mill for carding wool a few miles east of St. Boniface, on a tributary of the Seine. This mill did good work for the people of Red River, and their admiration was continually expressed for its originator, who was sometimes known as the "Miller of the Seine."

We have already spoken of the troubles of 1849. Riel was the very man for such a matter. Excitable and full of imagination, he saw repeated in the action of the company the tyrannies of old France before the Revolution, and of Lower Canada in the period of the rebellion of 1837. The hardships of the trader and missionary under the restriction of not being able to trade a single muskrat skin to supply their wants afforded him an un-failing text. Joseph Tasse, to whom again we are indebted for much information, says of this tribune of the people: "For a long time the French halfbreeds saw in Riel a man of ingenious mind, of energy, and of eloquence. Though poorly educated he had the gift of communicating his sentiments very powerfully to his audience. His words flowed with the abundance and brightness of a clear spring, when they did not run like a torrent. Louis Riel had all the gifts of a popular orator and the French halfbreeds greeted with loud applause his burning words."

These are words of high commendation. We can now see the meaning of the strange scene already described in the rescue of Sayer in the troublous times of 1849. To those having our British ideas it seems a great crime to interfere with the interests of justice and to resist to violence in the very presence of the august forms of law. At this time as in the earlier day of the 'Seven Oaks' affair, and afterwards in the two rebellions of the younger Riel, the Metis of the plains, who called themselves the "gens libres," must be declared to have had loose and irresponsible notions as to the claims of law. Riel continued to be full of projects for the manufacture of wooleens in the Northwest, and even had the sympathy of Governor Simpson, but with all his inventiveness and energy there was a lack of

business ability and foresight in the bustling "mill of the Seine." He died in 1864, the idol of the French halfbreeds of Red River.

ALEXANDER ROSS,

Sheriff and Author.

To no one are we more indebted than to Sheriff Ross for an interesting account of the history of the Red River settlement. He has been charged with being partial, but this charge has been made by interested parties. He was a man of decided character and much energy and in every way worthy of being remembered. He was born in the Highlands of Scotland in the year 1781. At the beginning of this cen-



ALEXANDER ROSS

tury the "Highland clearances" made it difficult to gain a living in the north of Scotland. A regiment of Highlanders had been recruited from those dispossessed of their holdings, and this was known as the Glengarry fencibles. After taking part against the rebels in Ireland, the regiment was disbanded in 1802, and in that or the next year emigrated to Canada and settled in the Glengarry district. With the disbanded soldiers came also a number of colonists from the Highland districts of Glenelg and Kintail and elsewhere.

Among these was Alexander Ross, a youth of twenty-one. For a number of years young Ross taught school in

the new settlements of Glengarry in Ontario, and in 1810 entered the Astor Fur company, went in the pioneer ship, the Tonquin, to the Pacific coast and helped to found Astoria at the mouth of the Columbia river. On the purchase of Astor's fort by the North-westers, Ross entered the Northwest company and was placed in charge of Okanagan, a fort in the Rocky Mountains. Here he married the daughter of the chief, and old residents of Winnipeg will remember Granny Ross as we used to call her, who died some twelve years ago. Trader Ross was for a time in charge of the post at Kamloops, but in 1825 he was ordered by Governor Simpson to Red River the object being to make him a school teacher in the settlement.

Alexander Ross settled down on what is now the site of the city of Winnipeg, and his house, "Colony Gardens," was well known to all old residents. He was an ardent partisan of Company interests, and acted for some time as sheriff of the colony. His large family grew up to take an important part in the social life of the settlement, and one of his sons, James, became a graduate of Toronto university, and was for a time one of the editors of the Toronto Globe. One of his daughters married the late Dr. Black, and another, who is the only survivor of the sheriff's children, became the wife of Rev. Geo. Flett, the veteran Indian missionary of the Presbyterian church.

Sheriff Ross, with the tenacity of his race, never rested until he saw on the banks of the Red river a minister of his own faith. As he tells the story in his book on Red River, innumerable difficulties met him and the Kildonan people in accomplishing their hearts' desire. He lived to see the fulfilment of his hopes in the arrival of Rev. John Black in this country in 1851. Mr. Ross became an elder and a leading man in the Kildonan church.

In literature also Alexander Ross gained no little reputation. He wrote a number of books on the country, viz., "Red River Settlement," "The Fur Traders of the Far West," "Adventures on the Oregon and Columbia" and it is said an essay on "Agriculture." As a writer he is graphic and in the main reliable. Perhaps he allowed his opinions to influence him too much in his description of some of the uproar and struggles of the Red River people. His own and his family's names are abundantly commemor-

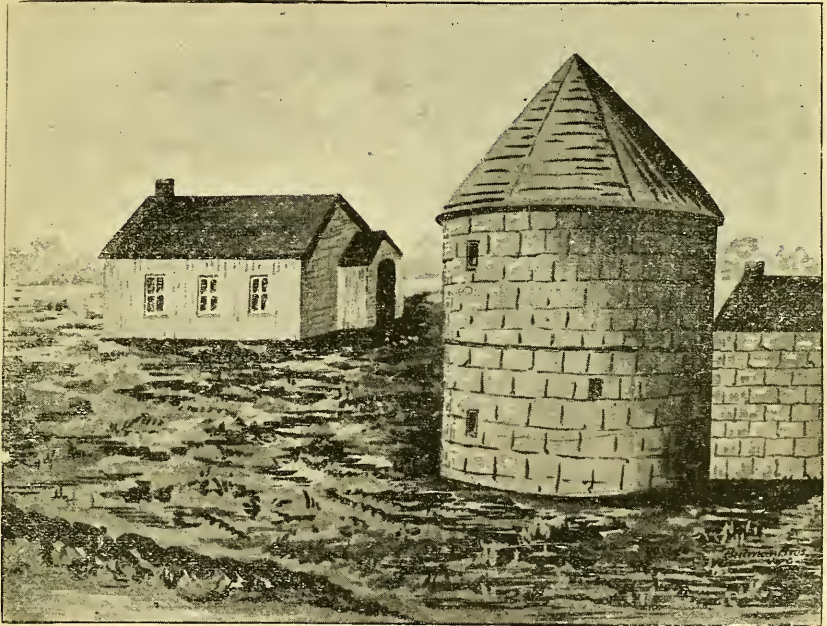
ated in the names of a number of the streets of the city. Sheriff Ross died in 1856.

ANDREW McDERMOTT.

Trader and Capitalist.

Among the notable business men of Red River, stood easily first Andrew McDermott. His stout and solid form indicated a man of affairs, and all old party the greater number were from residents knew old Mr. McDermott. He was in the first ship that Lord Selkirk sent out to Hudson Bay to begin his colony on Red River. In that first

After leaving the Hudson's Bay service he became a dealer in all kinds of wares. He could outfit a party for the plains or supply the farmer with implements. His store was aptly compared to Noah's Ark. He grew to be a man of much wealth. When the first Canadian Pacific railway scheme was formed he was the director for Manitoba. Many a settler in Manitoba was indebted to him for getting a start in life. Mr. McDermott married a daughter of Trader McNabb. His large family connected with the natives of the country, married notable and prominent persons of the



OLD COURT HOUSE, WITH S. W. BASTION OF FORT GARRY

the Highlands, but the vessel called at Sligo in Ireland, where it took a dozen or so of Irish emigrants. Among them was Andrew McDermott. Coming thus early he took a firm hold upon the soil of Red River. If the old Red River proverb be true that any one who once tastes the water of Red River, will always return to it, it is certainly true that many of the earliest settlers adhered most tenaciously to it through good and evil report, and found it to be to them a favorable home. Whatever party or faction was in power, Mr. McDermott was on good terms with them.

Most distinguished among his sons-in-laws were the late Mr. Bannatyne, one of the kindest hearted and truest men that the Red River and Manitoba have known; and the late Governor William McTavish. Mr. McDermott passed away on October 12th 1881, at the ripe age of ninety-three years, sixty-nine of which had been spent on Red River.

DONALD GUNN,

Schoolmaster and Naturalist.

To a visitor to Red River in the old times probably no resident in the settlement was a more interesting com-

panion than Donald Gunn, of Little Britain. He was a perfect treasury of knowledge as to the history, topography and natural history of the country. He was born in the parish of Halkirk, in Caithnessshire, Scotland, in 1797. At the age of sixteen, being



DONALD GUNN

of adventurous disposition, he engaged to go to Hudson Bay in the service of the great fur company. Six years after his arrival on the Bay the young Highlander was married to Margaret Swain, daughter of the officer in charge of York district, a lady on her mother's side related to the natives of

the country. After the union of the fur companies in 1821, Gunn and his wife joined the Selkirk colony and settled near Lower Fort Garry. Some years after the young settler became master of the parish school, which position he held for eighteen years. Donald Gunn was a great reader, and it was fitting that he should be appointed librarian of a part of the Red River library, which was kept in his house. Mr. Gunn also took part in public affairs, and was one of the leading men by petition and otherwise in having the country opened up for settlement. The Little Britain school master took careful observation in meteorology, and was in constant communication with the Smithsonian Institution. His collection of eggs and skins of our northern birds was valuable. Donald Gunn was the founder of the Presbyterian church of Little Britain, and was an elder in the same. After the creation of Manitoba Mr. Gunn was appointed a member of the legislation council, and on its abolition was made a stipendiary magistrate for the province. His useful life came to an end on St. Andrew's day, 1878, and his place as the Nestor of the settlement can never be filled again.

CONCLUSION.

These are but a few of the notables of the old Red River. On some other occasion it may be suitable to relate the deeds of more of them, especially of the faithful clergymen who, from Priest Provencher downward, laid good foundations in Red River. Now that very few of the original Red River settlers remain, it would be well for the Historical society to open a register to be a record of the date of birth, birthplace, work and date of death of the notable persons of old Red River.

189219

TRANSACTION No. 47, 49

FEBRUARY 23RD, 1897.

The Historical and Scientific Society
of Manitoba



THE LAKE OF THE WOODS

ITS HISTORY, GEOLOGY, MINING AND MANUFACTURING

BY

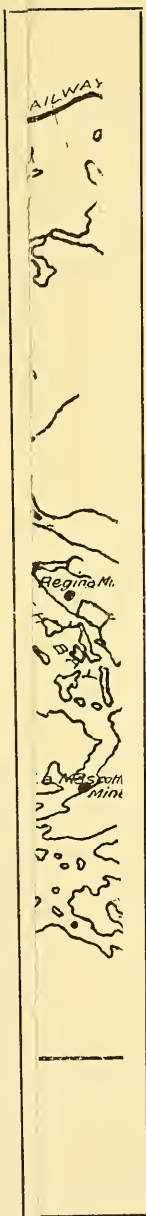
GEORGE BRYCE, LL.D.

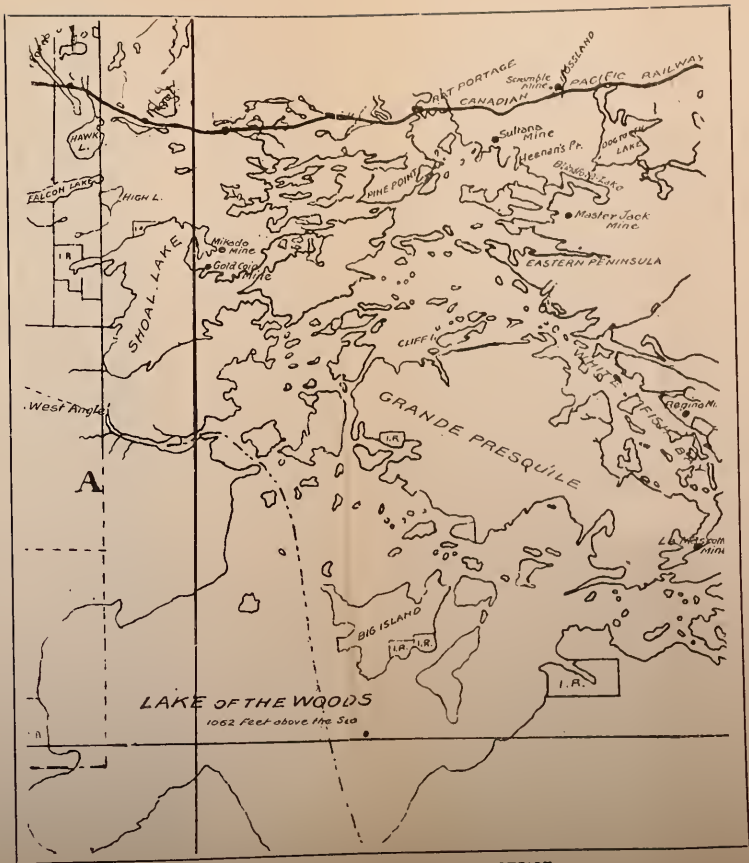
A Life Member of the Society



WINNIPEG:

THE MANITOBA FREE PRESS COMPANY





MAP OF THE LAKE OF THE WOODS DISTRICT

THE LAKE OF THE WOODS

Its History, Geology, Mining and Manufacturing.

The annual meeting of the Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba, Feb. 23rd, afforded an excellent opportunity for bringing before the citizens of Winnipeg the resources of the Lake of the Woods region. This falls within the scope of the Society's work, as "north and west of Lake Superior," and the general interest of the people in mineral deposits of the Lake was sufficient reason for the lecturer of the evening, Dr. Bryce, undertaking it. The doctor stated that the way in which to meet over speculation was to give definite and accurate information as to mining and its conditions. Ignorance, as he remarked, is not only the mother of superstition, but also the nourisher of feverish speculation and impracticable schemes. Undoubtedly our mineral resources on Lake of the Woods are of great value, and will give good returns if carefully and judiciously developed. The lecturer was assisted by Dr. Laird, president of the Society, in showing specimens of the rocks of the Lake of the Woods, and also gangue from several of the gold producing mines. The lecture was well illustrated with maps and diagrams. The attendance in the city council chamber was large and influential and the interest well maintained. Dr. Bryce said:

"The Lake of the Woods has now for more than a century and a half been known to voyageurs who came by way of Lake Superior to the Northwest. Connecting as it does by water courses to within a few miles of Lake Superior and communicating with all the inland waters of Rupert's Land, it is not surprising that it became famous as an objective point in northwestern exploration. In late years the Lake of the Woods has become well known as a great lumbering centre, supplying as its tributaries do large quantities of pine for this industry. It has also an enormous water power in its fall into Darlington Bay, which has been utilized to some

extent in supplying power for mills. For a number of years the lake region has been coming steadily into notice as a mining district. All these reasons justify us in considering it to-night at the annual meeting of our Historical and Scientific Society.

NAME.

The earliest name we find the lake known by is that given by Verandrye in his journey in 1731. He says it was called Lake Minitie (Cree Ministik) or Des Bois. (1) The former of these names, Minitie, seems to be Ojibway, and to mean Lake of the Islands, probably referring to the large number of islands found in the northern half of the lake. The other name (2) Lac des Bois, or Lake of the Woods, seems to have been a mis-translation of the Indian name (Ojibway) by which the lake was known. This name (3) was "Pikwedina Sagaigan," meaning the "inland lake of the sand hills," referring to the skirting range of sand hills running for some thirteen miles along the southern shore of the lake, to the east of the mouth of the Rainy river, its chief tributary.

Another name found in a map prepared by the Hudson's Bay Company in 1748 is (4) Lake Nimigon, probably meaning "the expanse," referring to the open sheet of water now often called "la traverse." Two other names, (5) Clearwater Lake and (6) Whitefish Lake, are clearly the extension of the Clearwater Bay, a northwestern part of the lake, and Whitefish Bay, still given by the Indians to the channel to the east of Grande Presqu'île.

HISTORY.

The Lake of the Woods, though sometimes referred to by French Canadian authorities at an earlier date, was first reached by Verandrye in 1732. The earliest references were no doubt obtained from stories of Indians heard on Lake Superior. Verandrye's notable voyage has been often described. In 1731 Verandrye's party, as late as the month of August, was ready to leave Lake Superior to find their way inland. The journey promised to be severe, and a part of the

company mutinied. Verandrye himself spent the winter at the Kaministiquia, on the shores of Lake Superior, but his nephew, La Jemeraye, pushed through and built a fort at the head of Rainy River, which runs into the Lake of the Woods. This fort was called St. Pierre, and traces of it were found a few years ago by the writer at Coutchecheng, three miles southeast of the village of Fort Francis.

In June, 1732, the party urged on their explorations, and descending Rainy River, reached Lake of the Woods. They directed their way now to the southwest shore of the lake, where they built Fort St. Charles. Passing on to the interior from the Lake of the Woods, they explored with great energy the water courses of the west. The Lake of the Woods was the scene of a great tragedy so far as the Verandryes were concerned. The Sioux, or Dakotas, of the west were in the habit of coming at times to the west side of the Lake of the Woods. Stealthily they lay in wait for a part of the expedition that was returning from the interior in 1736. This party was led by *Sieur de la Verandrye*, eldest son of the veteran Verandrye. A little island, still pointed out between Hay Island and Cornfield Island, is said to be the scene of the disaster. Attempts have been made lately by interested parties to place Massacre Island near Rat Portage. For this there is no evidence.

The Verandrye party consisted of the *Sieur*, a Jesuit priest, Father Anneau, and twenty men. According to the report of a voyageur named Bourassa, the bodies were discovered on Massacre Island five days after the murder. "The heads of the dead Frenchmen were placed upon beaver skins, the greater number of them scalped. The missionary had one knee on the ground, an arrow in his head, his breast cut open, his left hand upon the earth, and his right uplifted. The *Sieur de la Verandrye* lay face downward, his back hacked with a knife, a hoe buried in his loins, and his headless body ornamented with porcupine garters and bracelets." The Crees and Assiniboines, allies of Verandrye, offered to enter upon a war with the Sioux, their hereditary enemies, to avenge the

massacre, but Verandrye feared the consequences of such a movement and declined the offer.

Charles Lindsey in his "Report on the Boundaries of Ontario" says: "The Lake of the Woods is memorable in geographical and diplomatic history. It has been the starting point in every treaty of the boundary line between the Dominion of Great Britain and the territories of the United States.

No doubt in this statement Lindsey had reference to the settlement of the boundary by the treaty of 1783. At that time the British commissioners in Paris had few maps, and these very imperfect, of the country west of Toronto. The American commissioners had at their elbow a fur trader, Peter Pond, an American by birth, who had been in the employ of the Montreal fur merchants, and had charge of a post in the far distant Athabasca. It is said that Pond "designated a boundary line through the middle of the upper St. Lawrence and the lakes and through the interior countries to the northwest corner of the Lake of the Woods, and thence west to the Mississippi." The northwest angle of the Lake of the Woods has consequently ever since been a notable point.

The impossibility of a line westward from the northwest angle of the Lake of the Woods to the Mississippi led to the agreement in Jay's Treaty of Amity and Commerce of 1794 "to survey the upper Mississippi in order to fix the boundary in that region." In 1816, at the Treaty of Ghent, promise was made for a commission to settle the boundary to the Lake of the Woods, east and west. At the convention of London, in 1818, the commissioners appointed under the terms of the Treaty of Ghent succeeded in closing the matter. It was agreed to draw a line north and south from the northwest angle of the Lake of the Woods until it met the 49th parallel. An unexpected and amusing result of this mode of settlement is that a small peninsula of Canadian territory has a portion of the extremity cut off by this line, and this small section is American territory, being surrounded by American waters.

The Lake of the Woods became the highway for almost all

the expeditions and journeyings of voyageurs from the Lake Superior district to the interior of the Northwest. The usual course was to cross from the mouth of the Rainy river to the head of the Winnipeg river, and, descending it, to reach the interior. In the winter of the year 1817, Lord Selkirk's band of De Meurons, in order to outflank the Nor-Westers, left Lake of the Woods, probably about Buffalo Bay, on the southwest side of the lake, crossing somewhere along the boundary line of 49 N. and reached Pembina, from which place they came down the Red River and surprised and captured Fort Douglas.

The Hudson's Bay Company, in course of time, found it advantageous to have a post at the exit of the Lake of the Woods. They accordingly built a post on the narrow neck of land, probably not far from the present town of Keewatin, at a spot where was the original and true Rat Portage, but the company is still represented in the town of Rat Portage by its place of business.

The circuitous and difficult route by which the prairies were reached down River Winnipeg and by the stormy sheet of Lake Winnipeg led to the use of the natural entrance on the west side of the lake known as the northwest angle some thirty or forty years ago. The expedition conducted by Dawson and Hind, in 1857 and succeeding years, led to the desire to open this more direct connection between Lake Superior and Red River. In 1867 the Canadian government built six miles of a wagon road from Thunder Bay to Dog Lake. In 1868 the Red River end was begun with the purpose not only of opening up communication, but also of giving relief to the people of Red River, who were suffering from the ravages of grasshoppers. Mr. John A. Snow was the contractor in charge. He undertook to build the portion from Red River to Pointe de Chene—the prairie section—over a distance of about 30 miles. The continuation of this road was made to the northwest angle of the Lake of the Woods, and the road, some 110 miles in length, was known as the "Dawson Road." This road was afterwards a part of the

famous "water stretches" route by which Mr. Mackenzie for several years brought settlers to Lake Superior through Lake of the Woods to Red River. The Wolseley expedition, in 1870, followed the Winnipeg River, instead of the Dawson route. Thus has Lake of the Woods, from its position, again and again become an important factor in the geography and history of the Northwest.

GEOLOGY.

The Lake of the Woods, which has an area of 36,000 miles, is divided naturally into two parts, the southern, which is largely an open sheet of water and somewhat shallow, the northern filled with a multitude of rocky islands. This division arises from the geological features of the basin in which the lake lies.

The southern portion rests on the Laurentian strata, which are the oldest stratified rocks with which we are acquainted. The Laurentian rocks consist chiefly of gneiss rocks changed by metamorphic action, and these are lined along the lake shore with beds of sand, which in the neighborhood of the mouth of Rainy River, the chief tributary of the lake, rise up as dunes and are seen for a considerable distance.

The northern division of the lake is made of rocks which are much softer and are cut up into innumerable islands. They belong to the geological period known as Huronian, although Mr Lawson, of the geological survey, to whom we are indebted for many of our facts, states that they are not quite identical with the Huronian of the shore of Georgian Bay. He proposes to call our western formation the Keewatin. The general inclination seems to prevail, however, to hold to the name Huronian, and we may follow it.

This formation is notable as being found superimposed in long bands, or stretches, upon the Laurentian. The Huronian is generally regarded as a shore line formation. It is besides very much contorted and disturbed, and it is generally supposed that it has been thus affected by the intrusion

of masses of granite rock, and by the natural crumpling or folding of the earth's surface, which is still going on, and which in former times assumed very great proportions.

The rocks of the Huronian are the mineral-bearing rocks, or at least contain veins of various kinds, having gold and other minerals of value. It has been the custom to connect these veins in some way with the changes resulting from the intrusion of the granite near by.

A study of the rocks of the Huronian on the Lake of the Woods shows that the belt of rock has been crumpled up into five ridges, which the geologists call anticlinals, and that these run either northeast or southeast across the upper portion of the lake.

1. The most southern of these anticlinals is shown in a series of Laurentian islands, such as Bigsby, Big, Massacre and Cornfield islands, and leading over to Driftwood point on the west shore.

2. The second great ridge, enormous indeed in proportions, includes the great dividing peninsula of the lake, known as the "Grande Presqu'île," which, leading through Falcon Island, passes to the opening made by the northwest angle.

3. The next anticlinal was that formed by the eastern peninsula, pointing northwestward, and connecting by islands with the western peninsula at Crow Rock channel.

4. The fourth anticlinal, or ridge, was that traced along Pipestone Point and three islands, viz: Hay, Middle and Scotty Islands, and it may be mentioned in passing that this is an important neighborhood. This line of direction leads to Point Aylmer, on the outer extremity of the northern peninsula.

5. The fifth and most northerly of the original ridges is a short distance from the town of Rat Portage, starting from the well-known Devil's Gap, and leading by islands across to Dispute Point.

These four most northerly ridges diminish in size from south to north., and each time become smaller in width until

at the north the end of the lake is reached by the farthest north extent in this district of the Huronian strata. This forms a narrow rocky neck, having the waters of the Lake of the Woods on the southern side and on the north the beginning of the Winnipeg River, known as Darlington Bay. This is at a level considerably lower than that of the lake.

Between the western and northern peninsulas a long, narrow strait runs through the Huronian strata. It is called Ptarmigan Bay; this again leads by passing Ash Rapids and through the narrow Shoal Lake channel to Shoal Lake, a body of water somewhat higher than Lake of the Woods. Shoal Lake is triangular in shape with a greatest north and south measurement of thirteen and a half miles, and a greatest breadth of seventeen miles. This has as we shall see become famous as having mineral deposits of value. An eastern extension of the lake, named Whitefish Bay, shut in by the base of the Grande Presqu'île, lies almost entirely in the Laurentian basin, though its northern and eastern shores are Huronian and contain mineral deposits.

ROCKS.

1. The rocks of the Laurentian formation of the south end of the lake are, as has been said, hard gneissoid rocks.

2. The softer schist rocks of the north end of the lake are much more varied in species. Like the Laurentian they are all stratified rocks, which have gone through the process of metamorphism by heat. If there ever were any fossils in them all traces of these have been removed. Near Rat Portage these rocks are slaty quartzites and siliceous schists. The greenish rock known as chloritic rock of hornblende and feldspar is found at different points. Talcoïd schists and siliceous diorites are come upon, but in general the rocks of the whole series are made up of coarse laminated schists. The arrangement of the rocks made by Lawson is: 1. Mica schist on the surface; 2. Agglomerate schist below this; and, 3. Hornblende schist lowest down, resting on the Laurentian gneiss. The thickness of these beds varies much; but an

estimate is made by Lawson that the average thickness of the whole Huronian formation may be set down at 23,750 feet, or four and a half miles.

3. The presence at various points in the Huronian of intrusive granitic rocks is very noticeable and significant. This rock is found at ten main centres through the area of the Lake of the Woods district, such as Rossland station, Yellow Girl Point,, the Northwest Angle, Portage Bay, etc.

The occurrence of granitic intrusive rocks is of prime importance in considering the bedding of the Huronian formation, in finding the direction of metalliferous veins and in dealing with the question of metamorphism.

SURFACE ACTION.

The rocks of the Lake of the Woods region would seem to have been always somewhat level in their general outline. There were no precipitous cliffs and great valleys such as are found in mountainous regions. No doubt the soft rocks of the northern section would be much worn away by the denuding agencies occurring during the long periods of time which have elapsed since their formation and elevation above the sea. The glacial action is, however, very clearly followed on the surface of the existing rocks. Lawson says: "The Lake of the Woods and surrounding country may be considered essentially as a partially flooded area of 'roches moutonnees,' i.e., rounded hummocks and even large islands. The whole country is scraped bare, polished and grooved. The rocks everywhere bear evidence of this general action. Striae showing the direction have been found in upwards of 200 locations on the islands and rocky shores of the lakes, and these have a general southwest direction.

A curious question has arisen as to the origin of certain limestone boulders found along the shores of the Lake of the Woods. No rock of this kind is known east or north of this region, at least on the southern slope. These limestone boulders are a peculiar feature of the south end of the lake. Three different theories have been used to account for this.

1. It has been suggested that there may be a limestone floor for this part of the lake.

2. The limestone might have been derived from the Hudson Bay slope, where such rocks occur.

3. The limestones are erratics from the Red River Valley.

As to these views there is no evidence of a limestone floor for Lake of the Woods ; in fact, there is every probability against it. In regard to No. 2, it would seem impossible to imagine any agency by which the great region of rocky country between this region and Hudson Bay could have been overcome. The third supposition is plainly most reasonable. In the glacial period we know that a great glacial lake covered the Red River Valley and extended to the east shore of the Lake of the Woods. The glacial action in the Red River Valley was very great, and no doubt fragments of the limestone were carried southeastward from it to the basin of the Lake of the Woods.

MINING.

The contorted strata of the Huronian rocks, thrown about as they have been by granitic intrusions, naturally had many crevices, faults, fissures, broken seams, cracks and openings in their structure. The intrusive rocks would liberate in their upheaval great bodies of lava, steam and boiling water from the vast depths below. These would have the metals in a state of solution. The crevices and faults of the Huronian would be filled and gorged with the gaseous, or liquid, heated matters.

From the wide-spread character of the mineral substances, such as sodium, potassium, manganese, iron, copper, and even gold and silver in sea water, and in many sea animals and plants, it may be learned what the waters thrown up from the great depths would contain. The cooling down of the materials thus carried in by water and steam makes the veins. The kind and character of the vein depends on the shape of the crevice or opening when the intrusive solid matter is deposited and solidified.

Four chief varieties of veins have been named depending on these conditions :

1. Rake or fissure veins. These are perpendicular, or nearly so, in direction, and vary little in width as they descend.

2. Pipe veins are much like fissure veins in direction, being often nearly perpendicular, but they are irregular in width, and are subject to great variations, being now very wide and then very narrow in diameter.

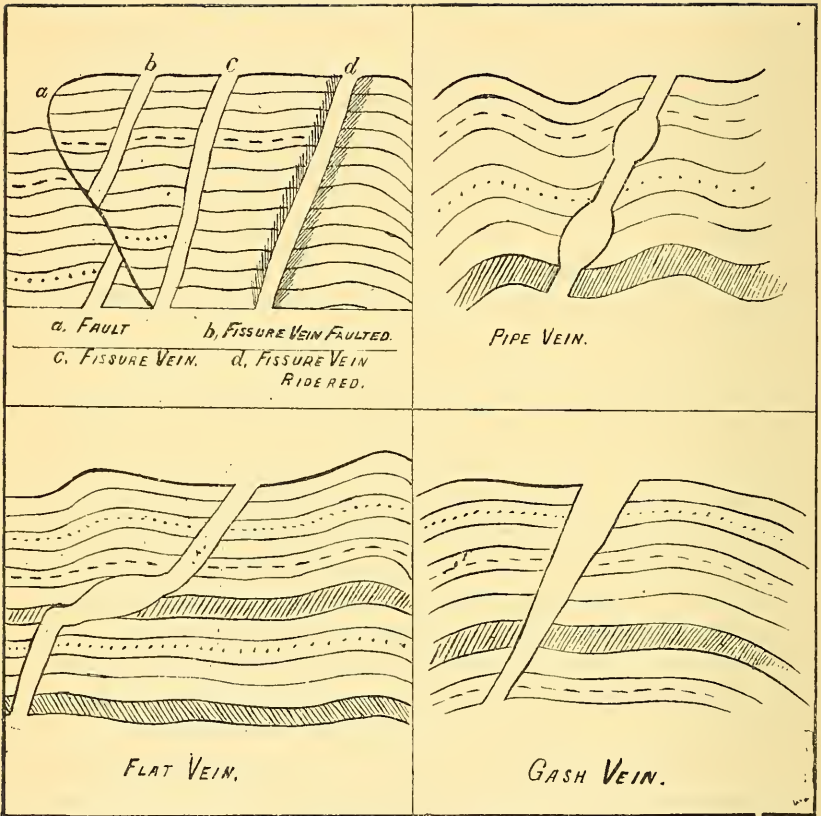
3. Flat veins or streaks. These are a variety of fissure veins which change their direction and run along parallel to the beds.

4. Gash veins are those which resemble fissure veins, but are wide at the top and gradually narrow to a point until they disappear.

The vein is from its nature shut in by walls. These walls, if cracked when the vein matter or gangue was deposited, were often penetrated by portions of the liquid intrusive matter, and so the wall rock contains at times, many feet from the vein, traces of the vein material. When strings of the vein material thus penetrate the wall rock, the rock is spoken of as "ridered," though miners wrongly call these strings "feeders." Sometimes the same mineral as that of the vein may be found in pockets or nests adjoining the vein.

In some veins the richer part of the vein is in the centre, and there seems a regular arrangement of the different minerals according to the specific gravities of the minerals.

When veins cross one another it is found that the place of junction is very rich in mineral deposit. This is really not accounted for, but is said by some to depend on thermal or even on electric conditions. Contents of veins are often found to vary with their depth. The length of a vein is hardly ever known. The richest veins are productive for a while, but their fissures may be filled with other materials than those desired, or may cease altogether. Some, however, are known to extend for several miles. Veins vary greatly in



MINERAL VEINS.

width. One twenty feet wide would be considered quite remarkable ; most veins are less than six feet in width.

“Gold is always native, always alloyed with silver, and contains small quantities of copper and iron. Iron pyrites almost always contains gold. Gold usually occurs in quartz veins, which are sometimes in granite.”—*Phillips*.

MINE CENTRES.

The geological conformation gives indications in many cases where the mines are likely to be. The following points are worthy of consideration :

1. Generally on or near the Huronian deposits the mines are found.

2. Usually in the neighborhood of granitic intrusive rock.

3. Almost exclusively in the Lake of the Woods region in quartz rock.

4. According to Lawson, in many instances the granitic cores of rock are overlaid on the shore of the lake by skirts of Huronian rock.

5. (a) The localities seemingly most developed with success are the districts a few miles southeast of Rat Portage where the Sultana, Pine Portage and other mines are found.

(b) Rossland station, some eight miles east of Rat Portage, is the centre of a number of mines of which the Scramble, Sweden, and others are spoken of.

(c) Big Stone Bay has in its neighborhood a number of localities, and the Master Jack is being worked.

(d) The neighborhood of Whitefish Bay, to the east of the Grande Presqu'île, has the Regina, La Mascotte and many other locations.

(e) The Shoal Lake, on the west side of the Lake of the Woods, where the Mikado, Gold Coin and many others occur, has received attention.

The Wabigoon district lies on Huronian horizon, and is being explored and examined. Though belonging to the Rainy River, as being one of its tributaries, yet the Seine

river, running along a stretch of Huronian rocks, lies very little south and is within two degrees east of the south end of the Lake of the Woods.

These are but very few of the many points taken up by companies and prospectors. That some of them are well-paying properties does not say that they are the only rich mines. The districts quoted are miles apart and are scattered over no less a region than of fifty miles square. There seems no good ground for saying that all the good locations are taken.

6. The possibilities of failure are :

(a). The circulating of false or misleading information about localities.

(b) The substitution under the name of one mine of assays from samples of ore taken from recognized rich mines.

(c) The returns made by incompetent analysts, not to speak of fraudulent agents.

(d) The running out of veins which may prove good for a time.

(e) The lack of money to develop.

(f) The difficulty of guarding against dishonest employees, even when gold is secured.

Un doubtedly there is room and much need for the governments of Ontario and Manitoba, which are interested in this matter, having laws on mining, organizing competent scientific departments, under which precautions may be taken to protect the public from deceit, and giving true assays of ore, with certificates of the localities and the like. A government certificate should be issued only under the strictest regulations

MANUFACTURING.

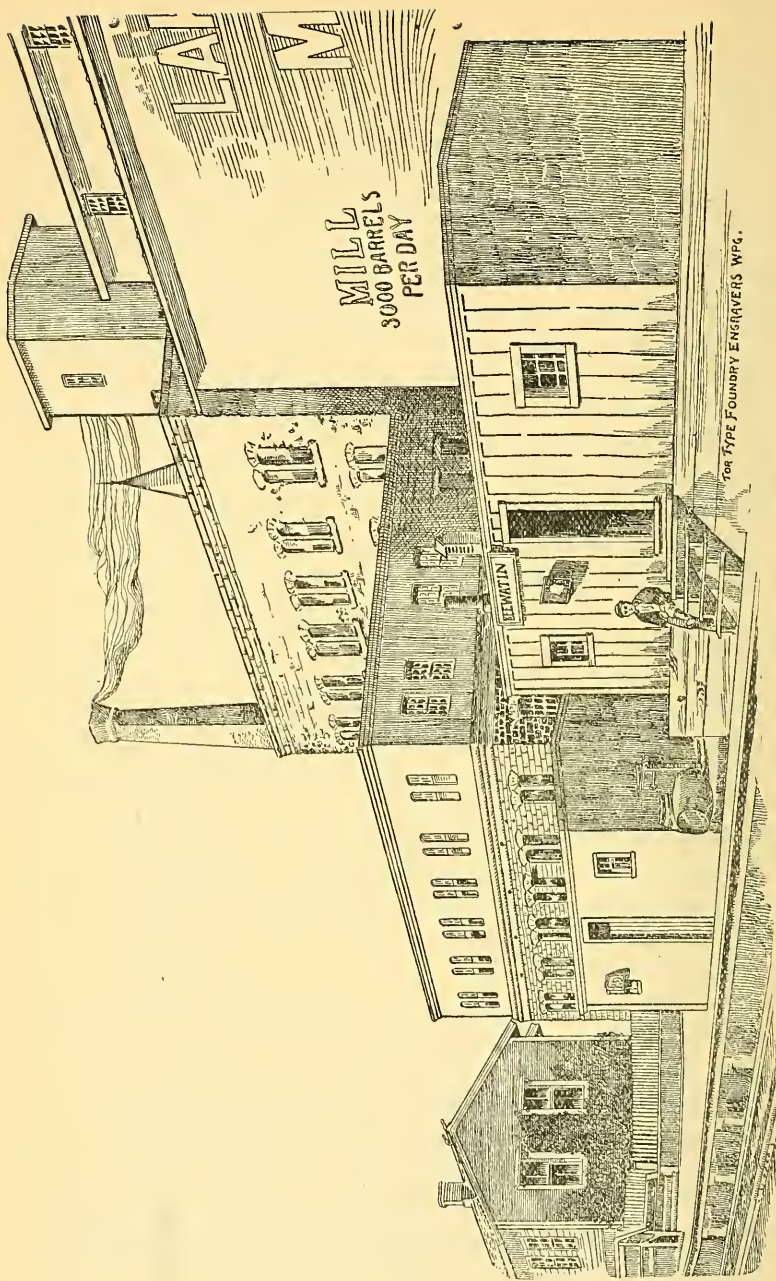
1. The splendid sheet of water found in Lake of the Woods, with its important tributaries, has for years given opportunity for the important industry of lumbering. Excellent timber is obtained from the banks of the streams leading into Rainy River. Great numbers of logs are every season brought down to where the Lake makes exit into Winnipeg

river and manufactured for the uses of the prairie settlers. The saw mills of Messrs. Cameron, Mather, and others are dotted along the edge of the lake for some three miles.

2. The presence of large quantities of spruce, birch and poplar upon the feeders of Lake of the Woods, along with the splendid water power of the lake, has suggested the making of pulp for the manufacture of paper. The timber can be cheaply obtained and delivered, and the passage of the railway through the neighborhood of the water-power gives every facility for advancing this important industry. It has also been suggested that the nearness of the prairies might well be utilized to grow flax for the manufacture of high grades of paper. It is said that 1,281,354 bushels of flax seed were produced in Manitoba in 1895. To be able to use the straw would be an addition to the farmers' income. The manufacture of barrels and woodware is also a feasible industry.

3. The first advantage, other than in the working of wood, has been taken of the water power in the manufacture of flour. This must ever be a chief industry in the Northwest. The Lake of the Woods Milling Company, which began operations about ten years ago, has since, along with the Ogilvie Milling Company, of Winnipeg, been doing an enormous business. To those of us who remember the suspicion with which our Manitoba wheat was looked upon as a flour producer twenty-five years ago, it is a great gratification to know the high place which Manitoba flour has taken in the markets of the world. The output of this mill last year was very large.

4. As the basis of these manufactures, which may render the Rat Portage and Keewatin district worthy to be called a great manufacturing centre, there is certainly to be mentioned as important the service rendered by the Keewatin Power Company. In order that the full power might be utilized, it has been found necessary to dam one of the outlets of the lake at a considerable cost. We are fortunate through the courtesy of the "Flag" newspaper, of Ottawa, in being able to publish a cut of the dam of the Keewatin Power Company.

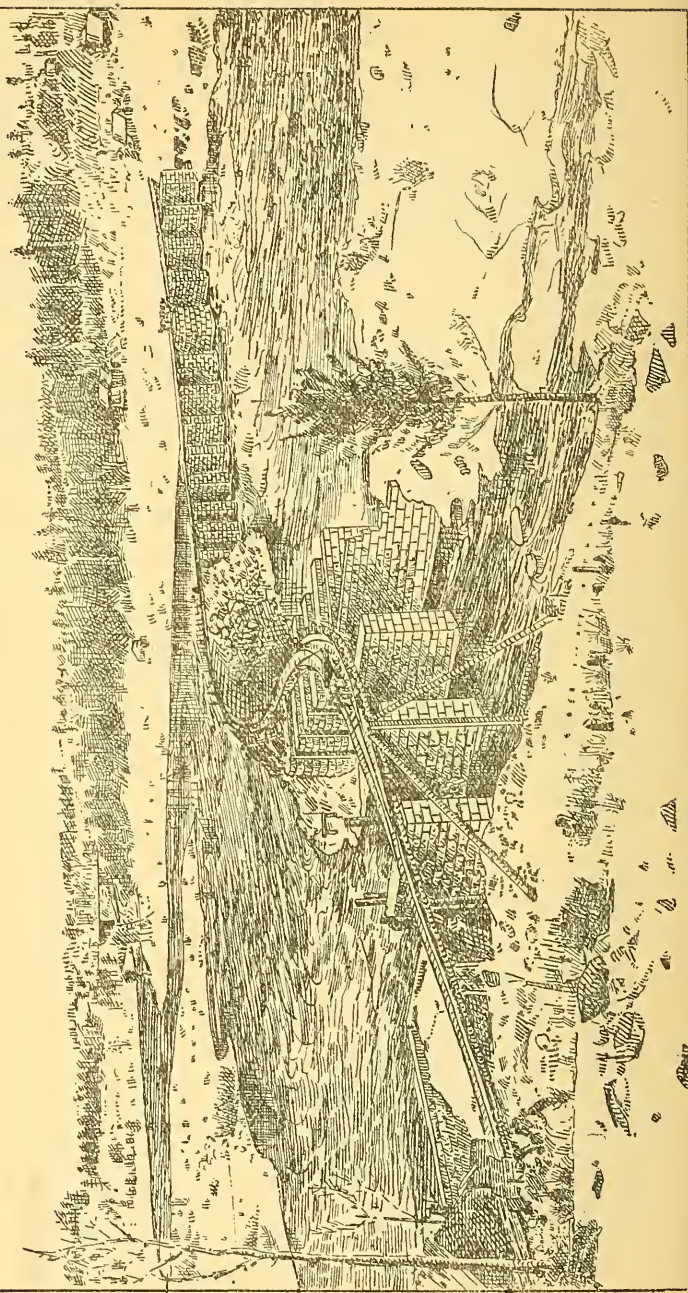


LAKE OF THE WOODS FLOUR MILL, KEEWATIN

This will show the magnitude of the work already undertaken and accomplished. As is well known this company proposes to supply electric power not only for local purposes, but also for places at as great a distance as Winnipeg.

Looking at the resources of the Lake of the Woods district, we may well wonder at the richness of our Northwestern heritage. While discouraging all booming and unnatural development of our resources, it is but right that we should encourage legitimate work in making use of the treasures of nature belonging to us. We shall be glad if Rat Portage and Keewatin grow to deserve the name already given by some, of the "Minneapolis and Denver of the Canadian Northwest."





KEEWATIN POWER COMPANY'S DAM

The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba



FARM LIFE IN THE SELKIRK COLONY

BY

REV. R. G. MACBETH, M.A.

A Member of the Society.



WINNIPEG :
THE MANITOBA FREE PRESS COMPANY

1897

FARM LIFE IN THE SELKIRK COLONY

The colonists brought out from Scotland by Lord Selkirk chose to settle along the banks of the Red River on narrow farms (the general width being ten chains frontage on the river) running back at right angles from it on the prairie. These farms extended back two miles as a freehold with an additional two miles as a hay privilege. Ultimately these outer two miles were given in fee simple to the owner of the frontage except in cases where others by actual occupation had secured possession of them in part, in which case the frontage owner got an equivalent elsewhere. These ten chain lots owned by the head of the family were frequently subdivided amongst the sons, so that when the Ontario people, accustomed to square farms, began to come amongst us, they were greatly amused at "our farming on lanes," and pointed out the disadvantages of having to go a distance of two miles or more to the cultivated plots at the outlying ends of these river strips. But there was much method in the madness of long, narrow farms; or, to be plainer, there were many good reasons to justify that plan of settlement. To begin with, the settlers built along the river banks for convenience in obtaining water. Outside the swamps and sloughs, the river was practically the only source of water supply. Wells were little known, suction pumps were unheard of, and I remember that a "chain and wheel" pump which my father imported from "the States" was looked upon as one of the seven wonders of the time. Then again settlement by the river bank had food as well as water supply in view, for fish, from "gold eyes" to sturgeon, were then plentiful in the unpolluted stream, and afforded a provision by no means to be despised. As to the narrow lots, it can be readily seen that the colonists settled together for mutual defence and the advantages of social life as well as for church and school facilities, and if the

sons, settling on subdivisions, seem lacking in ambition, it must be remembered that to go outside the settlement in the early days was to go beyond the pale of defence, with such possibilities of social life and of church and school facilities as were in view.

From the beginning of actual settlement farming was the principal occupation of the colonists. The facilities for farming were not of the best. The implements (the spade and hoe for planting and sowing) were as primitive as well could be; but with these, by dint of great exertion, the settlers soon managed to make a livelihood. The reaping was done with the sickle and later on with the cradle. Then the age of machinery came in, and the hoe gave place to the old wooden plough whose oaken mouldboard was pointed with a rudely made iron share. The sickle and cradle gave way to the first cumbrous reaper, behind whose platform a stand was placed for the able bodied man who forked off the grain in sheaves as it fell, and to do this with regularity and neatness in heavy crops tested even the brawniest Highlander of them all. However the cutting of the wheat was only the first of a series of difficult processes through which finally bread was reached. The threshing was carried on first with flails and the use of great "fans" and winnowing riddles to separate the wheat from the chaff, a process that enables us to understand many scriptural figures. Shortly after this era of flails the two horse tread-mill was introduced, by which threshing became a comparatively easy, if somewhat slow process, varied only by the occasional fall backwards of a lazy horse or the flying off of the main band from the fly wheel. To get the wheat into flour was the next problem. First of all the "quern" was used, two flat round stones (the upper and the nether), the upper one, having a handle, turned the stone upon the wheat and brought it into some semblance of flour, not over white but in the best degree a health-producing substance. Oriental customs may not have prevailed in the colony, but it was in view of such a scene as might be seen at these "querns" that our Lord spoke of identity in occupation

and diversity of character in the swift separation "two women shall be grinding at the mill—the one shall be taken and the other left." In time the Hudson's Bay sent out an expert and built a mill near Fort Douglas, and one of the settlers who was employed upon it took such careful observation of the process and such measurements that he was able to build one later on for himself and several at different points in the settlement. These did fair work, but in seasons of protracted calm flour famines had to be staved off by a general sharing up amongst neighbors. Next in order came water-mills, only partially successful, and finally the era of steam revolutionized old methods and gave the settlers the somewhat doubtful boon of flour excelling the old commodity in whiteness but not in wholesomeness.

Besides the raising of grain and root crops the settlers, as the years advanced, went into stock raising, and had horses, cattle, sheep and swine on their farms. In the days before the incoming of machinery they raised horses principally for the buffalo hunters from famous running stock imported originally from England. The "plain hunters" came in at certain seasons around Fort Garry, when the settlers would take to them such horses as they had to sell. Trials of speed followed, and the winning horses brought good prices in cash from the hunters who had just disposed of their buffalo meat, robes and furs to the Hudson's Bay Company. Oxen were used by the settlers very generally in the operations of the farm, and for the purposes of hay and wood hauling were hitched single in the Red River cart or sled, both of which in their primitive state were made entirely of of wood. Sheep were useful in the extreme as affording clothing in "hoden grey." The processes from sheep shearing to the home-made suit were slow and primitive enough in the light of to-day's machinery, but the article was good, as we can testify from personal experience. The spinning wheel, the weaver's loom, the "fulling" of the cloth by the kicking of it by bare-footed boys all stand out in the memory with many an incident grave and gay interwoven.

In the summer time the live stock of which we have spoken ran wild upon the prairie, horses especially being out of sight and sound for months, and we recall as a great constitution builder, days spent in the saddle in search of the wandering stock. In the long winter of course they must be housed, and so making hay while the sun shone was a great reality to us all. Hay cutting began on a certain day in July, and, except for the "outer two miles" above referred to (and on them only for a period), was done upon prairie that was free as air to everybody. The best hay meadows were located in good time before the date of commencement and on the night' previous people were camped all round them. Each one knew pretty well the spot he was going to strike the next morning, and if more than one had their eyes on the same spot, it became the property of the one who got there first and made a "circle" by cutting around the field he wished to claim. When hay was scarce there was considerable rivalry, but there was a code of unwritten camp law that prevented difficulties, and mutual helpfulness rather than opposition was the rule. Occasionally prairie fires swept athwart the haystack of some unfortunate settler, but in such a case all the rest turned in and helped him out, and I recall how, when this happened in the case of an uncle of mine, the neighbors rallied around and put a hundred cart loads of hay into his barn yard next day. The camp life during the time of hay making was a pleasant experience, with the tents grouped like a village and the huge camp-fires the centres of the social circles in the gathering night. On Saturday evenings the way homeward was taken with the younger men like a troop of cavalry and indulging in many a race by the way. Hay was never placed under cover but in long stacks in the hay-yard, and from these stacks we pulled the hay in the winter time with wooden hooks and carried it within the stables in our arms. By degrees implements and instruments of various kinds were imported from "the States" and elsewhere and were handed round from one to the other amongst the neighbors as if they were common property.

506.71
152212

The Historical and Scientific Society
of Manitoba



THE GAME BIRDS
OF MANITOBA

BY

GEORGE E. ATKINSON

A Corresponding Member of the Society



WINNIPEG

THE MANITOBA FREE PRESS COMPANY

1898



PEDIOCÆTES PHASIANELLUS
(Sharp-tailed Grouse, or Old Manitoba Prairie Chicken)

THE GAME BIRDS OF MANITOBA.

The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba met in the City Hall, Winnipeg, on the evening of April 14th, 1898. The audience present was large and manifested much interest in the proceedings. Chief Factor William Clark, of the Hudson's Bay Company, President of the Society, took the chair. After a number of items of preliminary business had been disposed of, Mr. George E. Atkinson, of Portage la Prairie, read his paper on "The Game Birds of Manitoba," which was illustrated by specimens of a number of the birds referred to. Mr. Atkinson said :

The science of Ornithology is one which shows striking results of great interest and practical value, if it be studied aright. Herein we look upon those forms of life which constitute a connecting link between reptiles and mammals, in that highest branch of the animal kingdom, the Vertebrata. To Aves nature permits a wider range than to any other member of the sub-kingdom. The birds are equally at home on land or water, have "dominion of the air," and possess a power of locomotion through space in a manner impossible to other forms.

OUR GAME BIRDS.

By our game birds we mean those birds which are sought after for the double purpose of affording sport to the hunter and meat to the larder. The serving of these purposes having been regarded by the majority of sportsmen as the only interest or value of our game birds, it must not be wondered at that little time has ever been given to look for other interesting or valuable qualities beyond a sufficient knowledge of the surest methods of capture and the choicest varieties for the table.

It is the lack of authentic knowledge, consequent on the lack of interest manifest, which has allowed so many ridiculous stories about our most familiar species to remain un-

challenged by men who should know the truth on account of experience, but who do not know because of defective observations and interests.

I trust that I may be able to show that the subject is exceedingly interesting from different standpoints, and yet little can be explained in one paper in proportion to what is to be known and which should be known by every man who has interest enough in sport to take a gun in hand and go in pursuit of game. It is the intention of this paper to deal almost entirely with the orders, as time and space do not permit of an investigation of individual species.

I. SYSTEMATIC TREATMENT.

The systematic or Alphabetical standpoint is that which names our subjects, classifies them into Orders, Families, Genera, and species, according to their diversity of form, coloration or habitat; traces the general relations of all forms to each other, and is the centre of the investigations of the evolutionists.

In dealing with our game birds from this standpoint of view, therefore, we first perceive that they are grouped into three orders, with a total local representation of 78 species, viz.:

Anseres, including ducks, geese, and swans, with 37 representative species.

Limicolae, including snipe, sandpipers, and plovers, with 36 representative species.

Gallinae, including grouse, quail and turkeys, with 7 local species.

A comparison of the three orders shows that the order *Anseres* are all birds adapted to aquatic life, the *Gallinae* for life on dry land, while *Limicolae* form the connecting link, being adapted for a sub-aquatic life.

Let us make a systematic comparison of the structures of the three orders to show adaptation to conditions.

1. *Anseres*.—Feet webbed; adapted for swimming; tarsus short and thick; bill stout, flat or round with teeth or toothed ridges to assist in securing submerged food, the ridges acting as strainers or gutters to allow the water to escape; sternum flat,

broad, long and almost solid at the base; keel low, forward, slightly sloping to the base; frontal bone comparatively stout and round, only connected with the keel by weak muscles; wing almost twice as long as wide with very strong pectoral muscles for swift, systematic and sustained flight; no crop.

2. *Limicolae*.—Toes bare, lobed, or semi-palmated; legs long and slender for wading; bill long and slender (except in plover) for surface feeding or probing the mud and bog weed; sternum slight, narrow and short; frontal bone quite delicate, keel proportionately quite high covering down to a nearly solid base; wings long and narrow, well adapted for an erratic dodging flight. No crop.

3. *Gallinae*.—Toes unwebbed and unlobed; tarsus short and stout, often covered with hair or fine feathers; hind toe much longer than either *Anseres* or *Limicolae*; foot suitable for scratching, running on dry land or perching in trees; bill short and stout; sternum very narrow and long proportionately; keel very high, curving down to a solid base detached from a strip of bone on each side, seeming like the lower rib, only it is not jointed to the sternum but is part of itself; frontal bone long, narrow and pointed, attached to keel by quite a strong muscle; wings short, broad and rounded for a bullet like flight to escape enemies; quite a large crop where considerable food can be stored from time to time.

ANSERES (DUCKS AND GEESE).

Dealing with each order separately, we find them divided again into families, each showing characteristics peculiar to themselves.

In *Anseres* there are four such families, viz. :

(a) *Merginae*.—Mergansers or fish ducks: Bill long, narrow and rounded, sharply toothed for holding fish; tarsus shorter than middle toe, without nail, having a representation of three species in Manitoba.

(b) *Anatinae*.—River Ducks: Tarsus as in *Merginae*, bill broad, flattened teeth, more ridgelike; no lobe on the hind toe.

Includes mallard, teal, pintail, wood duck, shoveller and widgeon, etc., with ten Manitoba species.

(c) *Fuligulinae*.—Sea and Bay Ducks: Bill and tarsus as in *Anatinae*; hind toes lobed; altogether a rounder duck than the *Anatinae*. Includes bluebills, whistler, redbead, canvasback, scoters, cowheen and eiders, with fifteen local representatives.



LAGOPUS LAGOPUS
(Willow Ptarmigan)

(d) *Anserinae*: Tarsus longer than middle toe; without nail; lores feathered; usually larger than foregoing families. Includes geese, with seven local species.

(e) *Cygninae*: Tarsus as in *Anserinae*; lores bare; size much larger than other families. There are two representative species.

LIMICOLAE (SHORE BIRDS.)

The Manitoban *Limicolae* are divided into five families, viz.:

(a) *Recurvirostridae*: Toes four, unlobed; bill long and slender; tarsus over $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches. Includes stilts and avocets, having only one species in Manitoba.

(b) *Phalaropodidae*: Toes four, lobed, and semi-palmated; tarsus under $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches; bill long and slender. Includes the phalaropes, having only two species local.

(c) *Scolopacidae*: Toes four, unlobed, sometimes semi-palmate; tarsus $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches; bill long and slender. Includes snipe, and sandpipers, with 24 species locally represented.

(d) *Charadriidae* (Plovers): Toes three, not lobed, sometimes semi-palmated; no hind toe; bill short and thick for surface feeding; tarsus under $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches. There are five local species of this family.

(e) *Aphrizidae*: Toes 4, unlobed and unwebbed; bill as in *Charadriidae*; tarsus under $3\frac{1}{2}$ inches. Turnstones, with only one species, being more common on the coast.

GALLINAE (GROUSE, Etc.)

The divisions of *Gallinae* (local species) are fewer, on account of fewer varieties being found on the prairies. The majority of the *Gallinae* are inhabitants of more southern and wooded districts. The whole number of resident species are included under one family: *Tetraonidae*, the more northern and feather legged sub-family of the grouse, quail and partridge. All our local species are feather-legged.

II. THE PHILOSOPHIC SIDE.

The philosophic standpoint from which Ornithology may be treated, is that which deals with the whys and wherefores of the Systematic. Herein we deal with the living specimen, and reason out the cause of the diversity of form, coloration, etc., shown by the systematic, by a careful observation of habit and habitat or conditions and environment of the species.

From this point of view, therefore, we will deal with: "The origin of birds and their place in nature," "The migration of

game birds, its cause and effect," and "The effects of civilization upon our game birds," pointing again to the systematic description to show the effect of a cause, or the construction of forms to suit chosen conditions.

As to the origin of birds and their place in nature, much



DENDRAGAPUS CANADENSIS
(Canada Grouse or Spruce Partridge). Female.

may be said, but I shall simply refer you to former mention of birds as the connecting link between reptiles and mammals; on the lower side the *Archæopteryx macrura*, the earliest known bird fossil, found in the Jurassic States of Bavaria, connecting with reptiles; and on the other hand to the *Ornithorhynchus*

paradoxus, duck billed platypus, that peculiar egg-laying mammal of Australia, as the connecting link between *aves* and *mammalia*.

Regarding the migration of birds, its cause and effect, much controversy annually takes place without very definite solutions



DENDRAGAPUS CANADENSIS.
(Canada Grouse or Spruce Partridge). Male.

being given to that problem ; consequently, I shall only explain the peculiar migration habits of the three orders, and show a few simple reasons for such, also showing that food and temperature, while to some extent responsible, cannot be held accountable for all migration.

The *Anseres* (ducks, geese and swans) are regularly migratory in Manitoba, leaving only on the freezing up of the ponds, rivers and lakes, which are the feeding ground and resting places of these birds. They winter usually as far north as they can procure food, open water and protection from enemies. For this reason we may argue that food and protection are sought by this order in migrating, as they are so constructed as to be comparatively helpless out of reach of water, notwithstanding the fact that they regularly leave the water to feed in the stubble fields. They rise and strike out in a regular swift and systematic flight to winter quarters when compelled to leave their summer homes.

2. *The Limicolæ*—shore-birds—snipe, sandpipers and plover—show different characteristics, and no family of land birds has a greater migration range. Many species which do not reach us until late in May pass long distances north of us to breed, and return early in August with their families. Leaving us early in September, they continue their journey by degrees till they are regularly recorded as wintering in Southern Patagonia. It is evident that neither food nor protection is the cause of such an extensive migration, as the birds are regular in their return in the spring, even though their breeding grounds are still snow and ice bound, and they are gone from us again in the fall often before the first frosts.

Observations of the birds of this order in life, and a comparison with human beings, have likened them to a very nervous and hysterical person, who never can remain quiet and is always fidgeting and twitching the hands and feet, as the majority of species seem affected with St. Vitas' dance. Even when standing in one place they are constantly bobbing their heads and bodies in an involuntary and nervous manner, and look as though they grudged the time they were spending with us and were anxious to be away again. Their calls express the same wild hysterical and fretful feeling.

As they are usually gregarious, they are easily decoyed by an imitation of their own whistle or that of a kindred species. The long narrow wings are well adapted for their nervous and erratic flights.

3. The *Gallinae* are less migratory than any of the others, and the local family *Tetraonidae* are practically resident wherever found, migrating only when compelled to on account of the home supply of food being frozen or snow covered, depending on their swift, bullet-like flight and their coloration and skill to elude enemies. Even the *Ptarmigan*, the most northern genus, are only slightly migratory, turning white in winter and brown in summer as a protection from enemies.

OUR GROUSE.

The effects of civilization upon our game birds have been quite striking, differing with each order. Formerly all the water fowl were much more regularly and abundantly distributed over the country, but with the advance of civilization, the introduction of harvest machinery, the puffing of the locomotive, the reclaiming of the bogs and sloughs—their original nesting sites—they are rarer. The ducks and such members of the *Limicola* as frequented these places have been compelled to retire with the Indian to the wilder and less accessible places, while such as are only migratory have shortened their stopover periods with us, while local breeding species now congregate on the larger lakes to await their friends from the north on their southern journey.

The effects on the *Gallinae* have been very different, revealing in one case a change of habit to suit changed conditions, a change of habitat in a second, and the advance of a better adapted species in a third.

(a) When this country was first settled the ruffed grouse or partridge (*Bonasa umbellus*) was a numerous and unsuspecting bird in all our small bluffs, being easily flushed, and allowing an approach sufficiently close to knock it from the tree with a stick or snare it with a noose on a pole. At the present time the bird thrives in the vicinity of civilization, but is quite cunning, being difficult to flush, seldom alighting in trees, and placing itself in hiding with the greatest alacrity and remaining hidden most successfully.

(b) The sharp-tailed grouse (*Pediacates phasianellus* var.,

campestris), being uninclined to adopt civilized habits, has retired to the wilder and more unsettled parts of the province, and in one case extending its range eastward into the wooded country of the Rainy River and Algoma Districts of Northwestern Ontario, is regularly recorded now at Lake Tamiscamingue, the head waters of the Ottawa River.



TYMPANUCHUS AMERICANUS.
(Pinnated Grouse or New Manitoba Prairie Hen)

(c) The pinnated grouse (*Tympanuchus Americanus*), a comparatively new species, entered the province some fourteen years ago (1881) from Northern Minnesota and Dakota, and following up the grain fields, increases under the very feet of its greatest

enemy—man. It is a larger and heavier bird than *Pediocætes campestris*, whose place it has taken, and seems well acquainted with the game laws and the tricks of humanity. In season they are wild and shy, running long distances through the grass after alighting from a long flight. They hide themselves in the scrub and grass and are difficult to dislodge, having considerable power to withhold their scent. They do not frequent the trees as much as *Pediocætes campestris*, but in severe winter they go deeper into the bush than do the sharp-tailed variety. The sharp-tailed grouse come from the milder parts in the winter and keep company with the pinnated grouse about the stacks, but being in their own habitat a stupid, silly bird, the pinnated grouse do not seem to be able to tolerate their ignorance and repeatedly drive them off, while such as remain learn lessons of wisdom from this new and up-to-date game bird, which, while much more difficult to hunt, is a much handsomer bird, and affords more sport and satisfaction in its pursuit and capture, and is enthusiastically welcomed to Manitoba and Western Canada.

III. THE ECONOMIC QUESTION

The economic standpoint is that which deals with the relations of the subject at issue to man from a financial standpoint. This is considered by economists and the general public to be the most important branch of any investigation.

Dealing with the game birds from this point of view we will consider them, irrespective of their value as game, according to their relations, beneficial, injurious or neutral, to agriculture, that most necessary art of civilization. By a beneficial species is meant one which feeds on or destroys the enemies of agriculture. By an injurious species is meant one which feeds on or destroys forms beneficial to agriculture or injures or destroys the results of agricultural labor or hinders in any way the destruction of enemies of agriculture or injures or destroys that which is beneficial to man.

By a neutral species is meant one whose injurious qualities balance the beneficial or whose feeding habits in no way interfere with human interests and independent of that law of nature

that nothing has been made in vain as all necessary to maintain the balance of nature.

Therefore if we take the most beneficial or least injurious first we shall turn to the *Gallinæ*. The food of these birds during the breeding season, which is also the most important season for the agriculturalist, consists almost entirely of insect food, chiefly grasshoppers, caterpillars and injurious Coleoptera and Hemiptera. The winter food consists of rose-hips, wild berries and buds, the former a nuisance to the farmer, the latter of no material value. For this reason we may consider *Gallinæ* a beneficial order.

While the *Limicolæ* are almost entirely insectivorous their indiscretion in destroying many beneficial aquatic forms as well as injurious species classes them more as a neutral order tending to be beneficial.

With *Anseres* the case differs. A duck will eat anything it can get into its mouth, and a wild duck is no exception to this rule. While they destroy large numbers of injurious forms, they do not discriminate, but devour large numbers of beneficial forms, such as frogs, lizards, crayfish, snails, and the larger aquatic beetles and the *Belostoma*, which are all beneficial in keeping in check the innumerable small injurious insects too small to be of use to the ducks. However, were this the only charge, we should acquit them as neutral, which they probably are to the agriculturist. But much graver charges are laid against them which sooner or later will require investigation.

Our governments annually spend large sums of money in replenishing the supply of food fishes in our lakes and rivers, and many species of this order of birds have a decided piscatorial appetite, more especially the open water ducks and merganser, which congregate in large numbers at the spawning beds of our food fishes, and gorge themselves upon the fry and spawn, while game commissioners blame the agency of man for the decrease of food fishes.

I once took from the throat of a shell drake (American merganser) sixty-four small fish, the fry of the whitefish, salmon trout, bass, chub and kindred forms, ranging from one-half to

three inches in length, while I have frequently taken thirty or forty small fish from the throat of a common mallard (*Anas boschas*), which had been shot while feeding in a millpond or a small stream. The retiring of these birds consequent on the advance of civilization, causing them to seek food in open water, will induce many at present non-fish-eating to accept the same diet, and much more damage will be done our food fishes in this manner than can ever be done with nets, which do not take the spawn or fry. From these facts we may see that the ducks are not beneficial to agriculture, and they are certainly injurious to our fisheries to an extent which will not decrease with the advance of civilization. If evidence of damage done be carefully estimated, then we shall see whether the valuable food fish destroyed is less than the value of game to the fastidious epicure, and whether the birds should be still protected in their deprivations.

Geese and swans are strictly migratory with us. Although much damage was once done to growing crops by the immense flocks of snow geese (*wavies*), and this is the cause of their having no protection as game at present, the settlement of the country has greatly reduced the numbers of these birds, and in the greater part of Manitoba they may be considered as a neutral order or injurious in comparison to their numbers.

IV. THE SENTIMENTAL ASPECT.

We now arrive at the concluding standpoint, namely, the sentimental, or that through which the the beauty and perfection of nature and the majesty of the Creator appeal to and direct our lives through our intercourse with nature. This can scarcely be considered a scientific point of view, since many eminent though matter-of-fact scientists argue that true science will not permit of sentiment. But herein we distinguish between a naturalist and a matter-of-fact scientist, as sentiment is born in man.

This is the sunny pathway of the student of nature; he fairly revels in it, and for this reason a few sentimental observations from a sentimental naturalist will not be considered out

of place here. It seems very unfortunate that so many are too much engrossed with matter-of-fact views that little or no room or time remains for sentiment. Yet what harm does it do us? What time does it take to fill it and enjoy it? What a comforting and cheering influence it has upon our flagging spirits, and what an influence it might have upon our lives were we to thoughtfully study the simplicity and ready obedience of living forms to an unseen director called instinct.

How strikingly human are the characteristics displayed, and how difficult it is for us to determine where reason begins and instinct ends. Where do we see a more striking exemplification of human characteristics than may be seen in the mother grouse as she leads her newly hatched chicks about? Her pride as she leads them along before the scrutinizing gaze of her neighbors who show striking resemblances to admiration, disdain or even jealousy. See the pleasure and curiosity the little creatures show as they run peeping about exploring every cranny, the affectionate manner in which she seems to talk to them and her anxiety and alertness for danger as you put in an appearance and she fully realizes the helplessness of her family. See her courage and devotion in risking her own life as she says to them "hide quick while I lead the brute away," when suddenly she feigns injury flapping along in a semi-helpless manner and leads you on a chase after her. She is just in your grasp, you think, when suddenly the ruse is complete. You have been deceived and decoyed away, the wing is suddenly repaired and with a bound she is off while you stand and gaze with open eyes and mouth after her, or feel disgusted with yourself for being fooled by a bird.

Again we see the instant obedience of the chicks to the mother's voice as she directs them to hide or calls them to her side again after you are out of sight (and breath).

Again we see the vanity of the male as he struts about drumming to his mate, the modesty with which she accepts his attentions and vows of love, the constancy with which she attends her domestic duties while her fickle lord frequently goes off with his comrades leaving his faithful wife to look after the family.

These and many other characteristics make our birds exceedingly interesting subjects of study. Yet how many opportunities we miss of watching the life of the birds. How many secrets we lose by carelessness. How often we feel tired with



BONASA UMBELLUS
(Ruffed Grouse, or wrongly called Canadian "pheasant.")

nothing to do when we could restore our minds to vigorous action by watching the birds.

How often from his hiding could a sportsman bring valuable information if he used his observing powers and studied the forms about him as he watches for game? Yet I am forced to admit that the poorest and most absurd reports have been

received from this same source where such great opportunities are offered from time to time on the periodical trips of the sportsman to the lake, river or woods in search of game. A great majority of reports received from this source are upset by the slightest scientific investigation. Yet it is surely plain that a slight scientific knowledge of the species we are pursuing would prove valuable to every sportsman in assisting him in securing his game, and the knowledge once acquired costs nothing to carry about and it becomes lighter as the material increases. I can only say with John Burroughes, that eminent field naturalist and sportsman, about the observation of nature

“There is a fascination about it quite overpowering. It fits so well with other things, fishing, hunting, farming, camping out, with all that takes us to the field and woods. One may go berry picking and make a rare discovery or driving a cow to pasture may hear a new song or make a new observation. Secrets lurk everywhere. There is news in every bush. What no man ever saw before you may see. What a new interest the woods have; how you long to explore every corner.”

To these remarks I can only add: make records of your observations on paper. Don't trust to memory, it may deceive you. Tell your friends your observations that you may learn from discussion what is regular and what is irregular. We need never be afraid of seeing too much or of learning everything. To see the beauty and the life will often humble our proud spirits or prove refreshing and helpful when wordly cares press heavily upon us.

LIST OF LOCAL SPECIES.

The following is the list of the local species of the three orders, as complete as can be secured at the present time:

ORDER ANSERES.

Family *Anatida*.

Sub-family *Mergina*:

American Merganser—*Merganser Americana*.

Red Breasted Merganser—*Merganser serrator*.

Hooded Merganser—*Hophodytes cucullatus*.

Sub-family *Anatinae* :

- Mallard—*Anas boschas*.
 Black Duck—*Anas obscura*.
 Gadwall—*Anas strepera*.
 Widgeon or Baldpate—*Anas Americana*,
 Green Winged Teal—*Anas Carolinensis*.
 Blue Winged Teal—*Anas discors*.
 Cinnamon Teal—*Anas cyanoptera*.
 Shoveller—*Spatula clypeata*.
 Pintail—*Dafla Acuta*.
 Wood Duck—*Aix sponsa*.

Sub-family *Fuliginine* :

- Red Head—*Aythia Americana*.
 Canvas-back—*Aythia vallisneria*.
 American Scaup Duck or Big Blue Bill—
Aythia marila nearctica.
 Lesser Scaup Duck or Little Blue Bill—*Aythia affinis*.
 Ring-necked Duck—*Aythia collaris*.
 American Golden Eye or Whistler—
Glaucionetta clangula Americana.
 Barrows Golden Eye—*Glaucionetta Islandica*.
 Bufflehead—*Charitonetta albeola*.
 Cowheen or Old Squaw—*Clangula hyemalis*.
 Harlequin Duck—*Histrionicus histrionicus*.
 American Eider—*Somateria dresseri*.
 American Scoter—*Oidemia Americana*.
 White Winged Scoter—*Oidemia deglandi*.
 Surf Scoter—*Oidemia perspicillata*.
 Ruddy Duck—*Erismatura rubida*.

Sub-family *Anserine* :

- Lesser Snow Goose Wavy—*Chen hyperbora*.
 Blue Goose—*Chen caerulescens*.
 White Fronted Goose—*Anser albifrons gambeli*.
 Canada Goose—*Branta Canadensis*.
 Hutchin's Goose—*Branta C. Hutchinsii*.
 Brant Goose—*Branta Bernicla*.

Sub-family *Cygninae*.Whistling Swan—*Olor columbianus*.Trumpeter Swan—*Olor buccinator*.

ORDER LIMICOLÆ.

Family *Phalaropodidae*.Northern Phalarope—*Phalaropus lobatus*.Wilson's Phalarope—*Phalaropus tricolor*.Family *Recurvirostridae*.American Avocet—*Recurvirostra Americana*.Family *Scolopacidae*.American Woodcock—*Philohela minor*.Wilson's Snipe—*Gallinago delicata*.Dowitcher—*Macrorhamphus griseus*.Long-billed Dowitcher—*Macrorhamphus scolopaceus*.Stilt Sandpiper—*Micropalama himantopus*.Knot or Robin Snipe—*Tringa canutus*.Pectoral Sandpiper—*Tringa maculata*.White-rumped Sandpiper—*Tringa fuscicollis*.Baird's Sandpiper—*Tringa Bairdii*.Beast Sandpiper—*Tringa minutilla*.

Red Backed Sandpiper or Blackheart—

Tringa Alpina Pacifica.Semipalmated Sandpiper—*Ereunetes occidentalis*.Sanderling—*Calidris arenaria*.Marbled Godwit—*Limosa fedoa*.Hudsonian Godwit—*Limosa hamastica*.Greater Yellow Legs—*Totanus Melanoleucus*.Lesser Yellow Legs—*Totanus flavipes*.Solitary Sandpiper—*Totanus solitarius*.Willet—*Symphemia semipalmata*.Bartramian Sandpiper or Quail—*Bartramia longicauda*.Buff-breasted Sandpiper—*Tryngites subruficollis*.Spotted Sandpiper—*Actitis macularia*.Long-billed Curlew—*Numenius longirostris*.Eskimo Curlew—*Numenius borealis*.

Family *Charadriidae*--

- Black-bellied Plover—*Charadrius squatarola*.
 American Golden Plover—*Charadrius dominicus*.
 Killdeer—*Ægialitis vocifera*.
 Ring-neck Plover—*Ægialitis semipalmata*.
 Piping Plover—*Ægialitis meloda*.

Family *Aphrigidae*—

- Turnstone—*Arenaria interpres*.

ORDER GALLINÆ.

Family *Tetraonidae*--

Canada Grouse or Spruce Partridge—

Dendragapus Canadensis.

Ruffed Grouse—*Bonasa umbellus togata*.

Gray Ruffed Grouse—*Bonasa umbellus umbelloides*.

Willow Ptarmigan—*Lagopus lagopus*.

Rock Ptarmigan—*Lagopus rupestris*.

Pinnated Grouse—*Tympanuchus Americanus*.

Sharp-tailed Grouse—*Pediocates campestris*.

506712 1522

The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba



SKETCH OF THE LIFE AND DISCOVERIES OF ROBERT CAMPBELL

CHIEF FACTOR OF THE HON. HUDSON'S BAY COMPANY

BY

GEORGE BRYCE, LLD.

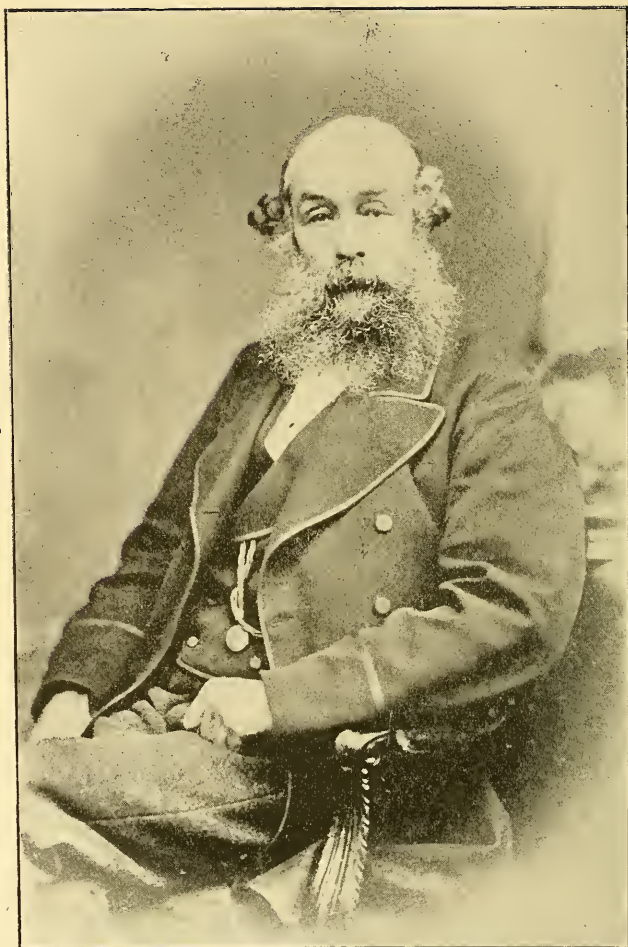
A Life Member of the Society



WINNIPEG :

THE MANITOBA FREE PRESS COMPANY

1898



CHIEF FACTOR ROBERT CAMPBELL

Discoverer of the Upper Yukon

SKETCH OF THE LIFE AND DISCOVERIES OF ROBERT CAMPBELL

Chief Factor of the Hon. Hudson's Bay Company

The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba met in the City Hall, Winnipeg, on the evening of April 14th, 1898. A large audience had assembled to hear the papers of the evening. Chief Factor William Clark, President of the Society, occupied the Chair. The first paper of the evening was read by Rev. Dr. Bryce, a life member of the Society, on the "Life and Discoveries of the late Chief Factor Robert Campbell. A large map, prepared by Bulman Bros., was used in following the interesting account of the explorations of the distinguished discoverer on Liard River, Dease Lake, the Upper Stikine, and the Upper Yukon rivers. Dr. Bryce said as follows :

More than twenty-six years ago, the writer remembers as one of the first men he met in Red River Chief Factor Robert Campbell, the discoverer of the Upper Yukon River, which is the goal of so many gold seekers to-day. Robert Campbell was a natural leader of men. His tall, commanding figure, sedate bearing, and yet shrewd and adaptable manner, singled him out as one of the remarkable class of men who in the service of the Hudson's Bay Company governed an empire by their personal magnetism, and held many thousands of Indians in check by their honesty, tact and firmness.

Robert Campbell, like so many of the Hudson's Bay Company's officers and men, was of Scottish origin, and was born, the son of a considerable sheep farmer, in Glenlyon, Perthshire, Scotland, on the 21st of February, 1808. Having received a fair education in his native glen, which was further carried on in the City of Perth, he was led by Sir George Simpson, the Governor of the Hudson's Bay Company, to come to the Red River in 1832 to superintend the sheep farm being started by the Company at St. James Parish, on the Assiniboine River, a few miles west of the City of Winnipeg of to-day.

The Hudson's Bay Company at this time seems to have been in earnest in endeavoring to promote the development of the Red River as a farming country. That they succeeded so poorly is probably the reason that they afterwards settled down to the erroneous belief, expressed so decidedly by Sir George Simpson in the investigation by the Imperial Parliament in 1857, that agriculture could not be successfully carried on in the country.

The period beginning with 1830 or 1831 was one of great activity at Red River. Sir George Simpson threw himself with great vigor into projects for developing the country. We can do little more than mention them. Indeed, they need little more than mention, for they ended in failure.

(1) The Buffalo Wool Company, a wild scheme to manufacture cloth from buffalo's wool and to tan the hides for leather. An absolute loss of upwards of £6,000 sterling gave the promoters serious cause for reflection.

(2) Sir George promised to take all the Company's supplies from the colony; but he was disappointed by the carelessness and discontent of the people.

(3) An experimental farm was begun on the Assiniboine near the farm since known as Lane's farm. After six years of effort the farm failed, having cost the Company £3,500 sterling.

(4) A farm for growing flax and hemp. The flax grew and the hemp grew, but they rotted in the fields; while a costly flax mill to manufacture the product fell into decay.

(5) Sheep from Kentucky. Governor Simpson determined to introduce the care of sheep as an industry suitable to the country. A joint stock company was formed. £1,200 was raised, and the enterprise was begun with high hopes. It was in connection with this scheme that Robert Campbell came to the country. In charge of the enterprise was a gentleman of the Hudson's Bay Company, by name, H. Glen Rae. With him was associated John P. Bourke, one of the Irish immigrants who had come with Lord Selkirk's first party. Bourke was a man of education, had served the Company well, and was well fitted for the task assigned him. In 1833, Rae, Bourke and four

others, one of whom was Robert Campbell, crossed the plains to Missouri to purchase sheep for the new company. Dissatisfied with the excessive charges of the Missourians, Rae insisted on going on to Kentucky, 500 miles further. The sheep were bought at a price of \$1.00 to \$2.00 a head, and a party started with them for the Red River. The journey was most disastrous. Foot sore and wearied, many of the sheep died by the way. Pierced by the spear grass (*Stipa spartea*) many perished; the the leaders of the party quarrelled; the flock became steadily



FORT SIMPSON (Mackenzie River)

less; and of 1475 sheep bought in Kentucky only 251 reached Red River.

(6) Other unsuccessful schemes, such as the Tallow Company, followed this, but Campbell was sent away to the far west, and exchanged the peaceful role of shepherd for that of a trader.

CAMPBELL AS A FUR TRADER.

Robert Campbell had from the first the confidence of Sir George Simpson, and now the Governor despatched him to what seems to have been the favorite hunting grounds of the early traders, the Mackenzie River basin. In 1834 he was at Fort

Simpson, and at once took his place as a daring and hardy explorer of new ground. In 1834 he volunteered to establish a post at the head waters of a tributary of the Mackenzie and his offer was accepted. Leaving Fort Simpson, which is on an island in the Mackenzie River, and near the junction of that river with the Liard, he ascended the latter river, which was also known as Mountain River, reached Fort Liard, nearly two hundred miles from the junction, and passed on as much further to Fort Halkett, which is built among the mountains. In the winter of 1837, the ardent explorer went on three or four hundred miles, enduring great hardships, and in the spring of 1838 succeeded in doing what his predecessors had tried in vain to accomplish, viz., established a Hudson's Bay Company's post on Dease Lake at the source of the wild mountain stream. In the summer of that year the intrepid adventurer crossed to the Pacific slope and reached the head waters of the Stikine River. Indeed, he spent this and the following year in journeys of the most daring kind, in ascending and descending the fierce mountain streams of the Rocky Mountain divide.

TERRIBLE HARDSHIPS.

The winter of 1838-9 was to the explorer one of the greatest trial. The writer has heard the great explorer descant on the adventures of that eventful year. A new post had been erected by Campbell to advance the fur trade, and the energy of the trader awakened the hatred of the Secatqueonays, a tribe who, with their allies, numbered about six thousand souls. These Indians lived at the mouth of the Stikine River, and they were in the habit of going inland for one hundred and fifty miles to trade at a great village mart, which was only sixty miles from Campbell's new fort on Dease's Lake. At this time the trader and his men nearly reached starvation. They were so reduced in supplies that they subsisted for some time on the skin thongs of their moccasins and snowshoes, and on the parchment windows of their huts boiled up to supply the one meal a day which kept them alive. Early in the year 1840 the explorer crossed to the western side of the mountains, and

descending from the head waters of the Stikine, explored this river for a distance. The Indians, hostile to him on account of the energy which he displayed, took him and his party prisoners. The daring party, however, escaped, it has been reported, after having almost met death, and having to chop down a bridge, to prevent the pursuing Indians from overtaking them. Campbell's life was only saved by the bravery and devotion of a female chief who ruled the Nilharnies, the owners of the trading village which was the rendezvous. Campbell, in his journal, speaks in the most glowing terms of the fine character



VIEW ON THE UPPER STIKINE

of this Amazon of the mountains, whose humanity proved his shield in trying times. In the year following his escape, Trader Campbell was compelled to leave his station on Dease's Lake, and his fort was burnt by the irreconcilable Indians. The explorer, however, was greatly satisfied when some time after he received from Sir George Simpson, in answer to his report, word to the effect that the Governor and Council had expressed their entire satisfaction with his energetic action and shrewd management. In Sir George Simpson's Book, "A Journey Round the World" (1847) full credit is given to Campbell for his courage and faithfulness.

The favorable message from the Governor but urged on the youthful explorer to new fields of discovery. In going to Dease's Lake Campbell had taken the more southerly of the mountain affluents making up the Upper Liard River. Under a new order he started in 1840 to explore the northern branch of the Liard. For this purpose he left Fort Halkett, his mountain rendezvous, in May, and journeyed northward, thinking that perhaps, though starting below 60° N, he might come upon the river discovered by Dease and Simpson two years before, running into the Arctic ocean about 70° N. and called by them the



DEASE'S LAKE POST

Colville. Ascending the mountain gorge through which the swift Liard flows Campbell came to a beautiful lake, to which, in honor of Lady Simpson, he gave the name Lake Frances. The lake was divided by a promontory called by him "Simpson's Tower," and leaving the lake he ascended one of its tributaries, clambering along its rocky banks, which in turn came from a small mountain reservoir called by him Finlayson's Lake, as its affluent was also named. This lake at high water gives one part of its waters to the Pacific and the other to the Arctic ocean. Campbell, with the hardiest of his seven trusty companions, who were some of them whites and others Indians, now made an

inland journey of more than a day's march, and saw the high cliffs of the splendid river, which were named the Pelly Banks in honor of the Governor in London, Sir Henry Pelly. The Hudson's Bay Company would have called it Campbell River, but the unassuming explorer refused the honor. On reaching the stream the party made a raft and drifted a few miles down, far enough to see the magnitude of the river. On their return to Lake Frances they found that their companions had erected a house at Simpson's Tower, and the explorer called this, in honor



INDIANS AT LA MONTAIGNE'S POST, LIARD RIVER

of his birthplace, "Glenlyon House." Returning with his full party, Campbell reached Fort Halkett, having been absent four months.

THE GREAT EXPEDITION.

The result of Campbell's successful discovery was an order from Sir George Simpson to establish a trading post at the source of the Liard. This was accomplished, and a post erected at Frances Lake in 1841. In the following year birch bark was brought up the river from Fort Liard, and sent during the

winter by dog sleighs to Pelly Banks. Here in 1843 an establishment was erected and arrangements made for descending the river by means of the canoe built at Pelly Banks. We give the story of the commencement of his great voyage on the river in the words of the veteran explorer :

“ Early in June, 1843, I left Frances Lake with some of the men. We walked over the mountains to the Pelly Banks, and shortly after started down stream in the canoe with the interpreter Hoole, two French Canadians and three Indians. As we advanced the river increased in size and the scenery formed a succession of picturesque landscapes. About twenty-five miles from Pelly Banks we encountered a bad rapid—Hoole’s—where we were forced to disembark everything. Elsewhere we had a nice flowing current. Ranges of mountains flanked us on both sides ; on the right the mountains were generally covered with wood ; the left range was more open, with patches of green poplar running up its valleys and burnsidcs, reminding one of the green brae-face of the Highland glens.”

BAD INDIANS.

The beauty of the scenery and the joy of the explorers as they floated down the enlarging Pelly cannot be described. But their day-dream was rudely interrupted. They had reached the juncture of the Pelly with the Lewis, as they called the new found stream, and this was 400 or 500 miles from Pelly Banks. Here, at the spot where afterwards Fort Selkirk was erected, was encamped a band of “ Wood Indians.” This being the first band of explorers down the Pelly, the Indians had never seen white men before. The savages spoke loud, seemed wild and distant, and although they smoked the pipe of peace yet were not to be depended upon. It was the intention of Campbell to proceed further down the stream, but his hosts would not hear of it. They depicted the dangers of the route, spoke of the Indians of the lower river as being very treacherous, said they were “ numerous as the sand,” and “ would not only kill but eat the white man.” Campbell’s men, alarmed by these tales, which were only too true, would go no further ; and so throwing a sealed

can into the river with word of his voyage, he turned his prow up stream again. No sooner had Campbell started back than the Indians, showing greater hostility, stealthily followed the party, and were very nearly falling upon the small band of voyageurs. Two years afterwards the Indians informed Campbell that they had intended to murder him and his crew. They depicted very vividly how on one night when it was as clear as day he had himself, while on guard, kept in his hand something white. This had been a book, a religious work, of which he was fond—"Hervey's Meditations,"—some say it was the Bible. This little book they had regarded as a charm, and it saved his life. They told him that he had occasionally gone to the river brink to drink, but that he drank from a horn cup. Had he knelt down to drink they would certainly have killed him and thrown him into the river. Campbell was in his religious spirit in the habit of attributing his safety on this occasion to the special care of his Heavenly Father.

DOWN THE PELLY.

The misadventure of the first voyage did not deter the daring fur traders from seeking out the river again. The winters were spent in trading between Frances Lake and Pelly Banks, but in the summer, parties descended the river on hunting expeditions, and brought back many a quarry of moose, deer and bear, and supplies of the bighorns or mountain sheep, noted for the delicacy of their flesh. The constant visits made to Pelly banks led to much speculation as to what the outlet of the Pelly River was. Was it the Colville? Or was it, as Campbell with true prescience conjectured, the upper part of the Yukon? It was at length determined to place a fort at the junction of the Pelly and Lewis, the point reached on a former journey a few years before.

Having spent the winter before in building boats at Pelly Banks, they sent their returns in early spring down to Fort Simpson, and in July, 1848, started off with great expectation to take possession of new territory. Reaching the junction of the Pelly and Lewis they erected a fort, calling it Fort Selkirk.

In this there was a remarkable example of the modesty of the explorer. It was said that the head officer of the Company in writing to him called the fort Campbell's Fort, but the sturdy trader maintained that he knew no such fort, and insisted upon calling his post Fort Selkirk. For many years the fort, which now lies in ruins, was known in the region as "Campbell's Fort."

IT IS THE YUKON!

While the ardent explorers, along the west of the mountains, had been thus doing their work, another movement was



PEEL'S RIVER POST (Fort McPherson)

taking place down the Mackenzie river. That fine navigable river was descended from Fort Simpson, and its mouth reached on the Arctic ocean. One of the rivers flowing into the delta is the Peel. Going up this a short distance, the traders had come to a point where, by a portage of ninety miles, they were able to reach the Porcupine river, and descending this they came upon the grand river of Alaska, the Yukon. Thus reaching the junction of the Porcupine and Yukon in 1847, the Hudson's Bay Company's trader, A. H. Murray, erected Fort Yukon, and entered upon the fur trade of the Company. This advance movement of the Company had been encouraged by the

leaving some eight years before of the strip from $54^{\circ} 40'$ on the coast up to Mount St. Elias by the Russians to the Hudson's Bay Company.

In 1850 Campbell obtained permission from Sir George Simpson to descend the river from Fort Selkirk, confident that he would find it to be the Yukon. Accomplishing a journey from the height of land of about 1,200 miles, Campbell proved his surmise correct. From Fort Yukon he ascended the Porcupine in company with Murray, crossed on foot to the Peel river and thence ascending the Mackenzie reached Fort Simpson. He



FORT GOOD HOPE (Mackenzie River)

refers with great glee to the surprise of his friends seeing him return to the fort up the Mackenzie instead of down the Liard, as he had been wont to come. The difficulty of the Liard route may be seen from the fact that the regular Hudson's Bay Com-
route for transporting the Pelly river furs was by way of the Yukon, Porcupine and up the Mackenzie river.

Campbell, on reaching the junction of the Pelly and Lewis, built his fort, and for a short time it promised to be an important centre, but in 1852 a thieving band of coast Indians, called the Chilkats, made a raid upon Fort Selkirk, plundered and shortly afterwards destroyed it, so that to this day ruins may be seen

at the junction of the the rivers mentioned. After this destruction, Campbell made one of the most marvellous journeys on record, walking the whole distance from Fort Simpson to Fort Garry on snowshoes, which is not less than 2,000 miles. He then pushed on on foot to Red Wing, Minnesota.

LATER LIFE.

In 1853, Campbell visited England, and there, under his direction, maps were prepared by Arrowsmith of the region explored by him. To few men has been vouchsafed the privilege of naming the important points in so large a region as Campbell thus described. The rivers and more notable points were named by him after his own acquaintances in the Company, or from the places in his native valley in Perthshire. Such names as McMillan, Lewis, White and Stewart, given to large tributaries of the Yukon, are illustrations of this. Much indignation was aroused a few years ago by a worthless subaltern in the United States Army, Lieut. Schwatka, attempting, after going over Campbell's ground, to rename the places fixed in Arrowsmith's map years before by our explorer.

After returning from Scotland, Campbell was sent back to the Athabasca district, where he remained till 1863. During the latter part of this time his lonely abode was made joyful by the arrival of a brave Scottish lady, Miss Eleonora Sterling, who came in company with her sister, but otherwise unattended, all the way from Scotland to be his bride. The late Consul Taylor used to describe with great animation this heroic journey of the Scottish lassies whom he had seen, as they made their overland journey from St. Paul to Fort Garry of upwards of 400 miles, and then courageously pushed on to go 400 miles further north to Norway House to be met by Campbell from his far off post in Athabasca. Robert Campbell was most devoted to his wife, and she gave him two sons and a daughter. The writer well remembers him in 1871, when he had received a few weeks before the news of the death of his wife, who had gone home to Edinburgh. The old fur trader seemed as if he were in a dream, dwelling on the terrible loss he had sustained.

After remaining his full term in Athabasca, Campbell removed east on his appointment to the charge of the Swan River district. Here he was in charge till 1871, when he retired from the service with the rank of Chief Factor. His children were educated in Edinburgh, and he spent the time in coming and going from the land of his birth to the western land where he had seen so many adventures. In 1880, he took up land in Riding Mountain, Manitoba, erected buildings upon it, and to this home gave the name Merchiston Ranch. It was his delight to come down once or twice a year to Winnipeg, attend to necessary business and spend a few weeks meeting old friends and recalling old times. This was his life till May 9th, 1894, when he passed away after a short illness at the ripe age of 86 years and a few months. He was buried at Kildonan, a large company of old friends following him to his tomb.

OUR ESTIMATE.

As we examine his life and recall his character, we are impelled to give an estimate of our old friend, Robert Campbell :

(1) He was a man cast in an heroic mould. His bravery, decision of character, honesty of purpose, and devotion to duty stand out prominently during the period of nearly 40 years in which he served the Hudson's Bay Company.

(2) His deeply religious nature maintained its fervor and devotion during the long period of service among heathen savages in the far west, and among scenes of competitive trade and at times debauchery and even bloodshed. It was his delight in earlier days to pay visits to Kildonan, and in his later years to the Church of his fathers in Winnipeg. He was a friend of all good men, and was a man of singular modesty.

(3) Though marrying somewhat late, he was exceedingly domestic in his habits and was intensely devoted to his wife and children. His success as a fur trader was recognized by his company; he was always a favorite of Sir George Simpson; and he was singularly free of the arts by which subordinates seek to ingratiate themselves with their superiors.

(4) His work as an explorer gave him his highest distinc-

tion. To this his ardent Highland nature gave him a bias ; the love of adventure was strong in him ; he laughed at dangers which would have deterred other men. He had a great faculty of managing Indians ; and was highly regarded by them. The glory of being the discoverer of the Upper Yukon, the river of golden sands, will ever be his.

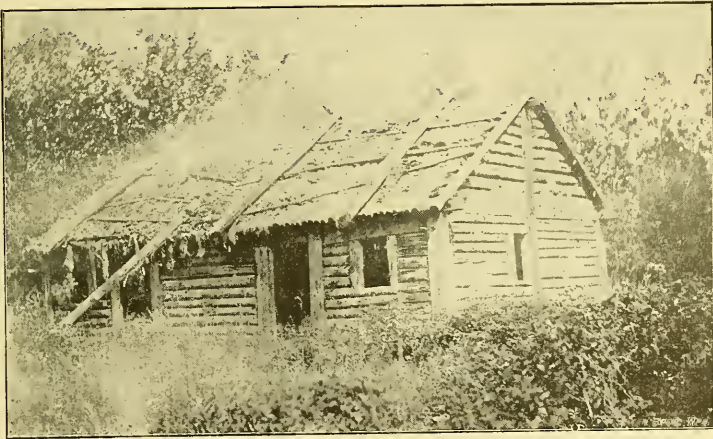
(5) He was an ornament to the Hudson's Bay Company's service, which retained a high standard among its officers. It affords the writer pleasure to testify, having had a large acquaintance with the officers and men of the Company, that few, if any, bodies have ever retained a higher standard of honor, honesty and respectability, among their men than the old Company of 250 years standing, which preserved peace among the wandering tribes of Indians, kept the British flag flying from Lake Superior to the Pacific Ocean, and worthily earned the title of the Honorable the Hudson's Bay Company.

A VOTE OF THANKS

Mr. K. N. L. McDonald, who had been in the service of the Hudson's Bay Company and had traded in the Liard and Stikine river districts, and also on the Yukon, Porcupine and McKenzie Rivers, moved a vote of thanks to Dr. Bryce for his ably prepared and interesting paper on the life and work of the late Robert Campbell of the H. B. Co.'s service. This was seconded by the Rev. Canon Coombes, and unanimously carried. Mr. McDonald spoke of the feelings of loyalty he experienced on his passing the site of old Dease Post on Dease Lake in 1887, a post established by Mr. Campbell in 1838 and abandoned so soon by him. His admiration for one of the most intrepid explorers of the North-West of this country, led him to empty his Winchester repeating rifle of her 15 charges as a tribute of honor and respect. He further alluded to his having discovered some old papers which Mr. Campbell had given to some Indians in the winter of 1838 and 1839. These Indians had evidently considered these papers of some value, for they very carefully put them in the inside of birch bark, neatly tied up with sinew, and left them in charge of a Mr. Callbreath at Telegraph Creek. He was fortunate enough

to secure these papers. The first two were simply receipts of some dried meat and fish, but the third one was unique in its way and suggestive. It read in this manner: "This old scoundrel wishes me to give him a certificate of character. He has been trying to starve and murder me all winter.—Robert Campbell." These papers were sent to Mr. Campbell, and it was amusing to find some time afterwards that, at a banquet given to him in Montreal, it was reported that these papers were found by Mr. Chief Factor McFarlane on the Skeena River.

Lieutenant Schwatka, commissioned by the U. S. Govern-



ABANDONED POST (Toad River, Liard)

ment, went over what is now known as the Dyea Pass, descended the Lewis River to its junction with the Pelly at Fort Selkirk, and thence on to the coast. He ignored the names of places given by Mr. Campbell years before, and in his book coolly alluded to Mr. Campbell in these words: "A man named Campbell is said to have passed here some years ago."

Mr. Campbell in his travels and explorations had not a better instrument than a pocket compass to enable him to take observations, and as an evidence of his accuracy, it may be stated that the map produced from his notes and delineations by Mr. Arrowsmith, London, England, varies but little from the best

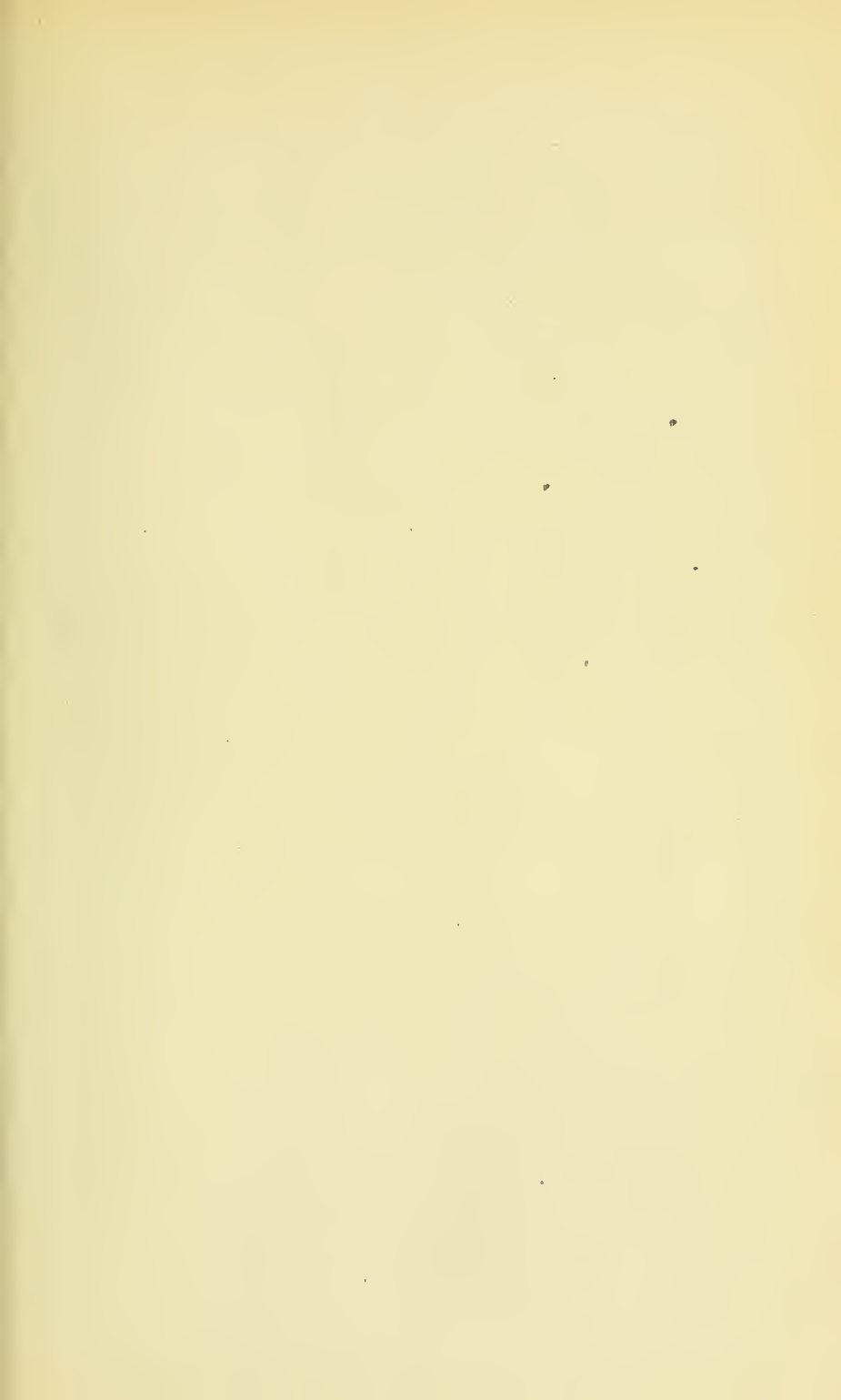
maps we have to-day by the Canadian and U. S. Governments.

Mr. Campbell was not only an intrepid explorer and indefatigable traveller, but he was as well a man of deep, strong religious convictions, and to show his sympathy for the Indians of the Yukon Valley he in his will gave \$1,000 to the mission work out there, of which my brother, Archdeacon McDonald, had charge for many years.

Mr. Campbell established Fort Selkirk in 1848. This post was pillaged by the Chilkat Indians in 1852, and was burned down in 1853. Mr. Campbell, in the autumn of 1852, came up to Fort Simpson, at the mouth of the Liard river, and in the winter of 1852 and 1853 walked out on snowshoes to Fort Garry, now Winnipeg, as mentioned in the paper.

NOTE—Dr. Bryce wishes to acknowledge his indebtedness to Mr. C. C. Chipman, Commissioner of the Hudson's Bay Company at Winnipeg, for the use of the views from which the illustrations of this paper are made.





The Historical and Scientific Society
of Manitoba.



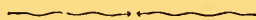
MANITOBA BIRDS OF PREY

And the Small Mammals Destroyed
by Them.

By

A. E. ATRINSON,

A Corresponding Member of the Society.



WINNIPEG:
THE STOVEL CO., PRINTERS
1899.



AMERICAN GOSHAWK.

(Accipiter Atricapillus.)

MANITOBA BIRDS OF PREY.

The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba met in the City Hall, Winnipeg, on the evening of 8th December, 1898. A good audience was present to examine the specimens of the predaceous birds of Manitoba prepared by the lecturer of the evening, Wm Clark, Esq., Chief Factor of the Hudson's Bay Company, President of the Society, took the chair. Mr. Geo. E. Atkinson, a corresponding member of the Society, read the following paper on the "Birds of Prey of Manitoba:"

As Manitoba is an agricultural province, natural or artificial conditions which affect the farmer become objects of interest to the whole community.

The increasing numbers, and consequent increasing destructiveness of the gophers, mice, and in some places, rabbits, are becoming grave questions for the agriculturist to handle.

This latter increase is what particularly interests us in this paper and when asked the cause, we reply, that it is largely because nature's enemies to these pests have been ruthlessly persecuted and slaughtered. Birds of prey have been allotted a portion of the task of maintaining the limit of this class of animals, and the removal of hawks and owls permits of the undisturbed increase of gophers and mice.

There is in the mind of the average farmer sportsman a prejudice in regard to hawks and owls which is so firmly rooted that it is impossible to eradicate it, and if opportunity presents itself, he will never fail to vent his spleen upon the unfortunate hawk, and all simply because of the loss of an occasional fowl. Yet he will pet and feed in laziness and luxury that model of iniquity and deception—the house cat—which will sneak about under cover of darkness and protection and destroy more chickens and small birds in one night than a hawk or owl would in a lifetime. I feel satisfied that were the farmers to dispense with the domestic cat, close up the hen coops at night and be compelled by law to give up their unrighteous persecution of hawks and owls, these rodent pests would materially diminish, as would also the poultry

losses. Such I fear will never be accomplished until a different system of education is adopted among farmers and more attention is given to economic natural history in our schools and agricultural colleges.

I propose in this paper to prove very great economic values for these persecuted creatures, as deduced from practical experiences of the most prominent authorities on the subject.

I regret to say that our Canadian Governments have never made an effort to obtain practical information on these subjects from our own country, and that all our bird laws are made by guess work.

The American Agricultural Bureau has done much in the shape of practical investigation, and it is to their reports I must turn for the verification of statements made here to supplement my own experiences.

The stomach records appended to each species are from the report of Dr. A. K. Fisher, of the U.S. Bureau of Agriculture on Hawks and Owls, and are taken from a total examination of some 2690 stomachs collected in various parts of the United States and Canada.

The birds of prey are distributed over the whole land surface of the globe, represented alike in frigid and tropical zones. There are about 60 species in North America. According to their varied characteristics they are divided into three groups, viz.: Cathartidae, Falconidae, Strigidae.

1. Cathartidae—Includes the vultures and kindred carrion feeding forms, which are mostly inhabitants of tropical or semi-tropical countries, where nature has allotted to them the position of scavengers or cleansers, and so thoroughly do they perform their work that they are usually looked upon with great favor in the warmer southern countries, and heavy penalties are imposed upon anyone found destroying them, and in many places the vultures may be seen at any hour of the day soaring high in the air, keenly alert for dead or dying creatures or perched upon a prominence awaiting the last dying struggles

of some unfortunate deer in the forest or homeless dog by the wayside, or struggling together in the gutters of the city or town for the refuse matter left there for them.

The construction of the birds are in every way suited to the work they have to do. Having acquired the fondness for carrion they have lost most of the grasping powers in the foot possessed by the other families of Raptores, as well as the dash and courage which is characteristic of all these forms which catch their prey alive and kill it. They have, however, acquired a very heavy, strong foot, tarsus and bill, the end of the latter being exceptionally strong and sharp pointed, while both bill and feet are especially adapted for tearing apart the tough skins and other portions of the deceased creatures they frequently feed upon. They are very sociable, but exceedingly voracious, frequently gorging themselves until they are unable to arise from their feasting grounds, at which times, if one is not overcome with the very unpleasant odor which is characteristic of the birds, they may be captured with little or no trouble, as they seldom show fight, and only express approval or disapproval of anything by feints or passes and low guttural grunts or hisses. They are possessed of exceptional wing area and power of flight, being one of the most remarkable soaring families in the world. They rise from the ground with a few lazy beats of wing and scar off with or against the wind, turning, rising or falling at will without any perceptible muscular exertion and are able to continue this performance for hours without a beat of the wing.

The head and neck are usually bare of feathers and sparsely covered with short fine hairs, the skin hanging in wrinkles on the neck, like that of the turkey.

The only Manitoban, and, in fact, the only Canadian species of this family is the Turkey Vulture (*Cathartes aura*), frequently designated the wild turkey by many intelligent persons, on account of the resemblance of the head and foot of the bird to that of the turkey. The Turkey Vulture is strictly migratory with us, and ranges over the whole province. They are to be found usually in the vicinity of slaughter houses or other places where refuse animal matter is deposited, and are usually difficult of approach, particularly on their first appearance in the spring. They arrive here about the middle of May, and breed, no doubt, in the less frequented districts. The nest is placed in a prostrate hollow log or stump, or on the ground under bushes. The eggs are either one or two in number and are a

creamy white, blotched or spotted irregularly with dark brown. I have in two seasons received two and observed five other specimens in the vicinity of Portage la Prairie. They leave us some time during September.

A peculiar habit of playing 'possum by feigning death when wounded and captured is credited to this species by Dr. Cones, who says, "the first is admirably executed and frequently long protracted."

II. FALCONIDAE.

Of this family more may be said of local interest, as we have some 17 species locally represented, which according to their various peculiar characters and their



Red tailed Hawk.

(*Buteo borealis*)

economic relations to agriculture, I propose to divide into three groups, which shall be known as Wholly Beneficial, Mostly Beneficial and Harmful species. I will endeavor to point out the means of distinguishing one group from another, in order that the innocent may cease to be punished for the guilty.

In the Wholly Beneficial class I place two species of the genus *Archibueo*, viz. : *A. lagopus Sancti Johannis*, and *A. ferrugineus*. The former is a common species with us, the latter only an occasional visitor from the south and west, and the strongest proof of their beneficial qualities is the fact that in all the stomachs examined no trace could be found of poultry, game or small birds, while 92 per cent.

contained mice and other injurious mammals and insects, the other 8 per cent. being empty.

The rough-legged Hawk is a large winged but shall footed bird, and is wholly incapable of destroying poultry or large game, while stomachs of birds secured where waterfowl were abundant revealed no change from the ordinary diet of mice and insects. It is somewhat crepuscular in its habits, being more on the alert during twilight or early dawn, when those pests which constitute its prey are beginning to stir, and before the owls or other hawks have begun to hunt. They range far northward and do an immense amount of good work in keeping in check the numbers of injurious forms which abound in the less settled country, and which become a devastating plague at times, when they reach an agricultural district.

Sir John Richardson, in his notes, speaks as follows: "In the softness and fullness of its plumage, its feathered legs, and its habits, this bird bears some resemblance to the owls. It flies low, sits for a long time on a branch of a tree watching for frogs and mice and is often seen sailing over the swampy pieces of ground and hunting its prey in the subdued daylight, which illumines even the midnight in high latitudes."

The ferruginous rough leg is a somewhat longer bird, but not much larger footed, and in the country which it inhabits the gophers and ground squirrels replace the field mouse and do immense damage. The ferruginous rough leg has been named the Squirrel Hawk because of his fondness for ground squirrels and his persistent persecution of the rodents.

In the Mostly Beneficial Class I have placed—

One species of the genus *Falco*, viz. :
F. sparverius.

Four species of the genus *Buteo*, viz. :
B. borealis, *B. Lineatus*, *B. Swainsoni*,
B. latissimus.

One species of the genus *Circus*, viz. :
C. Hudsonius.

It must be remembered here that in dividing these birds into the above mentioned groups their persecution of small birds has been added to their destruction to poultry and game birds, and this addition has in some cases caused species otherwise beneficial to be placed in the other groups, whereas were the beneficial or injurious qualities of the birds killed by these hawks determined, I am sure the percentage of injury done or beneficial forms destroyed would be in many cases reduced one half. I have, however, made

special mention of those species and have marked down the number of doubtful damage separate from the decided injuries resulting from destruction of poultry and game. For this reason if we deduct the number of cases where small birds were taken from the total number of injurious attacks made by the above five species, we may safely include three of them in the wholly beneficial or non-injurious class, while the amount of injury done by the remaining three dwindles into insignificance.

Of the first-mentioned species in this class, namely, the Sparrow Hawk, *F. sparverius*, no stronger proof of his inability to injure poultry is necessary than to know the size of the bird. He is one of the handsomest of our hawks, and a true little falcon, abundant all over the country, especially in the fall, when they may be seen sitting on nearly every other fence-post on the look-out for grasshoppers or mice. Many farmers tell me he steals young chickens, but an examination of stomachs of those shot about barns and poultry yards reveals a very different truth, in the shape of mice, and in 320 stomachs examined by Dr. Fisher, of the U.S. Agricultural Department, only one stomach contained the remains of a game bird, none of poultry, 101 mice and other mammals, while insects were found in 244, and in 53 cases small birds were found—a total of 74 per cent. entirely beneficial, and of the 17 per cent. injurious less than one-third per cent. were injurious to poultry. By far the largest percentage of the birds captured were proven to have been taken while the young were being fed, and when the parents had less time to seek regular food. During seasons when grasshoppers or terrestrial caterpillars or other insects are numerous, these birds may be seen in bands of considerable numbers, old and young alike, hunting about the woods and fields, and gorging themselves on these pests. They are confiding little fellows, and consequently, in spite of their great value, are one of the most persistently persecuted hawks. Any vandal who can handle a gun or any boy who can use a catapult or other destroying instrument, can kill the little sparrow hawk, and in cases where bounties were paid for birds of prey, a majority of the certificates were issued for sparrow hawks, and in many places it is almost exterminated where it was once exceedingly numerous.

The next species to be considered is probably one of the best known and certainly the most easily recognized in our prairie country, and especially by sports-

men. The Marsh Hawk, *Circus Hudsonius*, is familiar to every farmer who has a slough near his place and also to every sportsman who hunts feathered game in our province. He is usually seen sitting on a fence post near a slough, on some elevation in the marsh, as the top of a muskrat hut, or sailing about in a very erratic fashion over the fields or marsh, and is always readily recognized by the broad white band across the rump. Many of this species meet their death from sheer wantonness and the desire to kill or practice wing shooting, while many others are dropped by the sportsman from his cover in the marshes because of the annoyance caused by frightening the game, but few are ever picked up, and fewer still are the stomachs examined to determine the food of the bird. Many claim that the bird kills small chickens, but an examination of 124 stomachs shows only 7, or less than 6 per cent, containing poultry or game birds, and as this bird, no doubt, catches wounded ducks and other game birds which are dying in pain, and unable to escape, consequently the damage to poultry is nowhere verified by stomach examination and the assertion that it destroys game is disproven by the fact that the weak claws and bill of the bird will not permit its catching or killing game birds only when badly wounded and when they would otherwise die from injuries received from the sportsman's gun. The majority of injurious records against the bird are for small birds whose economic value is doubtful on account of inability to determine the species, and the following extracts from experiences with the bird will show that it is unable to secure game birds unless wounded:—

From E. E. Thompson's "Birds of Manitoba."

Oct. 3, 1883, near Shoal lake, west, saw a Blue Harrier trying to catch some teal in a very small shallow pond. Each time the harrier pounced the teal would dive below the surface and at the same time splash the water as high as possible. This happened several times and at length the baffled harrier gave up the attempt.

Sept. 9, Saw a Brown Harrier pounce on a prairie chicken, but the latter struggled and got free and made a dash for life with the harrier in close pursuit, but as the chicken gained at every beat, in less than 100 yards the hawk gave up the chase and turned about in search of gophers, grasshoppers and other game more within his reach.

These birds turn a very light slaty blue and almost white on the breast as they get older, but always have the white band on the rump. The blue hawk, as this spe-

cies, from its plumage, is called, is a much shier bird than the brown, and also capable of more remarkable feats of wing. They are sometimes seen careering up and down, almost perpendicular, for a height of from 60 to 100 feet, at the same time uttering a harsh screeching noise as though attacking something below them, and they will as suddenly turn and sail off in a lazy fashion as though nothing had happened. This is considered an eccentricity of the species, which is not accounted for and for which he is probably not accountable, unless it may be for a



Swainson's Hawk.

(*Buteo Swainsoni*.)

show of bravado before his mate, as I never saw it acting thus, only in the spring about mating time.

The four remaining species of this class belong to one genus, and while their habits are somewhat different their habits are similar. They are a heavy, broad-winged sailing and heavy bodied group, on the whole much more suited for sitting silently watching the appearance of their prey and dropping on it rather than in capturing it while on the wing.

The smallest of these is the Broad-Winged Hawk, *Buteo latissimus*, a bird somewhat rare in Manitoba and which

confines itself almost entirely to the wooded country, where they sit about in pairs on the trees or stumps watching for mice, shrews and grasshoppers, and save for occasionally dropping down on a small bird they are wholly beneficial, as out of 90 stomachs examined only 2, or less than 3 per cent. contained birds, none of them poultry, while the remainder contained mice and other mammals, insects and reptiles. This hawk is a stupid bird, allowing of a near approach, and are consequently shot down wherever the wandering shooter chances to come upon it.

The Red-Shouldered Hawk, *Buteo lineatus*, is also an inhabitant of the more wooded country, and is, consequently seldom met with in this part of the province, being even more secluded in its retreat than the broad-wing. On an examination of 220 stomachs, only 3, or about 1½ per cent., contained poultry, while about 5½ per cent. had small birds, the balance containing mice and injurious mammals, insects, fish and reptiles. Two contained offal, showing the species to be almost as fond of offal as of poultry.

The Red-Tailed Hawk, *Buteo Borealis*, is the largest of our common hawks and is universally called the hen hawk by farmers. It frequents the vicinity of woods or fresh clearings, where it sits upon a branch of stump diligently watching for mice and shrews, which are so common about old stumps and logs in such places.

Occasionally, should one of these spots be near the house or the farmyard, and the poultry stray in that direction, he will steal a hen, but it is usually the old and enfeebled veterans who are not quick enough to escape his awkward pounce. Even the proportion of such cases amounts to about 10 per cent. of the 562 stomachs examined, consequently like his brother *Buteo*, were it not for the small birds he drops on occasionally he might be placed in the beneficial class.

The remaining number of the mainly beneficial class is possibly the most commonly known of our large hawks, and is also familiarly dubbed the "Hen-hawk" (*Buteo Swainsoni*). It is doubtful, however, if Swainson's hawk would ever chase a chicken past a gopher, or could catch good healthy poultry or small birds. As in the case of his brother *borealis*, it usually happens to be the old rheumatic straying fowl that he catches and which are not worth much more than the cost of the powder and shot to shoot the hawk.

The usual position for this bird is bolt upright on a hummock of earth or the hill thrown up by a gopher or badger. Here it will sit for hours scanning the field, and woe to the gopher or mouse

who will stray from home when Swainson is on the alert. He usually only makes one or two sudden pounces and rises with the animal in his claws, carrying it either to his young or alighting on a prominence to devour it himself. It is estimated that a Swainson hawk would catch and eat at least five gophers a day, and where one pair are at work they would destroy ten gophers a day for their own food, and at least as many more while feeding the young for about three weeks. At this rate they would feed the young 210 gophers in the three weeks, and during the six months, at least, that these birds are with us they would destroy a great number of these pests.

If the amount of grain eaten by gophers be taken into account it will be seen what a friend to the farmer *Buteo Swainsoni* is. Should not this be more than sufficient to place protection on this hawk? Yet he is a robber and a hen-hawk. If we give each bird one hen a week while with us, which, I am satisfied, is double the average taken anywhere by these birds, the value of the poultry thus stolen is, at a liberal estimate, of 25c. a head, for each pair of hawks, \$13.50 for the entire season, thus leaving a cash balance to their credit of ten times that amount at the end of the season.

Of this species Dr. Coates speaks in his "Birds of the Northwest," observations of 1883:

"The quarry of Swainson's Buzzard is of a very humble origin. I never saw one stoop upon a wild owl or grouse, and though they often strike down rabbits, like the red-tails, their prey is usually nothing larger than gophers. Though really strong and sufficiently fierce birds, they lack the snap of the falcons, and I scarcely think they are quick enough to catch little birds very often. I once saw one make the attempt at a lark-bunting. The hawk poised in the air about twenty yards for fully a minute, fell heavily with an awkward thrust of its talons and missed its prey. The little bird slipped off between its feet, badly scared, no doubt, but still uninjured, while the enemy flapped away sulkily to prowling about a gopher hole for his dinner, or take pot luck at grasshoppers."

HARMFUL HAWKS.

Now that we have reached the group which may be considered harmful and for whose depredations the majority of hawks and owls suffer, as did the children of Israel for the sins of one family, it will be necessary to show to what extent they are

While the falcons capture their prey by superior flight across the country, the accipitrines, although strong flyers, capture the most of their prey by short, rapid dashes, or by sharp and skilful turns upon it, cutting off opportunities of escape, and more frequently capturing the victim before the presence of danger is suspected.

The largest and most powerful of these three is the goshawk, *Accipiter atricapillus*, which is commonest with us during the fall and winter months, when those which build with us are reinforced by large migrations from the north, and they may be found about the woods, where they hunt rabbits and grouse with the greatest persistency, so that in many places it is known as the partridge hawk. They do not reach the full state of blue plumage till the fourth or fifth year, and the older birds also seem to have much more courage and agility than the younger birds. I have seen one of these birds dash upon a rabbit in the woods, kill it with a blow and fly off with it almost before I had time to realize what was taking place or could raise the gun to fire. When wounded they are exceedingly fierce, and will seize dog or man with their powerful claws without any hesitation, inflicting very disagreeable wounds.

The record of stomachs shows in twenty full stomachs ten contained mammals, chiefly rabbits, while the remaining ten contained poultry and game and small birds, thus showing the species as a whole to be equally beneficial and injurious. As in many cases, the hare (*Lepus Americanus*) becomes a nuisance to growing trees, and as many of these stomachs show the game birds are their prey, and as the goshawk remains either in or near the bush most of the time, his beneficial qualities overbalance the injurious, save where the poultry yard is in close proximity to the bush.

The acknowledge poultry thief-in-chief of the hawks is Cooper's Hawk (*Accipiter Cooperini*.) Somewhat smaller than the goshawk, it lacks none of its dash, and is a close second to the falcons in speed of flight, as well as being strong enough to carry off full-grown chickens, grouse and rabbits. These hawks are clever, shrewd and cunning, soon learning the ways of man, and usually pay repeated visits to the poultry yard, coming unobserved and escaping with a sudden dash (and a hen) before the surprised owner, who may have been on the lookout, has time to turn and grasp his gun. In cities, where the use of firearms is prohibited, this bird has learned to lurk among the evergreens in private grounds, whence it dashes out into the thoroughfare upon the unsuspecting spar-

rows and pigeons. Of this species Dr. Fisher says:

"If they confined their persecution to the pesky little sparrow, they would be public benefactors, as the problem of keeping that imported nuisance in check would then be solved."

The stomach records show in 84 full stomachs, 34, or about 36 per cent., poultry, 16 per cent. mice, mammals and insects, and the balance other birds of doubtful economic value—not a terrible record for the most injurious species.

The last of the hawks we have to deal with is almost a twin brother of Cooper's hawk, and so near does it approach it in size that it is at times difficult to determine a small Cooper's hawk from a large sharp-shinned, unless one has a sight of the rounded tail of the former species.

The sharp-shinned hawk (*Accipiter velox*) is a well-known species of our small hawks, and may be seen during the spring and fall perched upon a telegraph or fence post or sailing about over the woods and fields in search of prey, the long square based tail serving always as a mark of identification. They are bold, daring little fellows, and do not hesitate to attack birds much larger than themselves. They are fond of the vicinity of man and do good service about settlements in persecuting the English sparrows. The large majority of the bad records against them is on account of their raids upon small birds, in cases the economic values of the species is doubtful, and I am certain that in the fall this species does good service in persecuting the blackbirds, which are so numerous in the province, and this at a time when the blackbirds are destroying grain. The table of stomach examinations show *Accipiter velox* to be very slightly injurious to poultry, as in 107 full stomachs only six showed signs of poultry or game birds (less than 6 per cent), while eleven contained mice and insects, the remainder small birds; so that if English sparrows and blackbirds could be proven to form the preference in these cases, *Accipiter velox* might be considered a mostly beneficial species, instead of harmful.

FAMILY STRIGIDAE.

The owls, for several reasons, are a very interesting and peculiar family of birds. They are chiefly nocturnal, continuing through the hours of darkness the persecution carried on upon our small animal pests by the hawks in the daytime. But, though they work under shadow of darkness, they do not escape the persecution which bigoted prejudice and a little knowledge are pleased to inflict upon all birds of prey.

The eyes are set in sockets facing forward, which prevents the bird from moving them without turning the head. This, combined with the facial disks, give it a solemn and dignified expression and a human resemblance, which is at times weird and awe-inspiring, while their almost human voices add much to the superstitious regard in which they are frequently held. The fact of their hunting chiefly by night has given many the idea that they cannot see by day.

They seize their prey in their talons, and, where size will permit, swallow it whole. The plumage is soft and fluffy, enabling them to withstand extreme temperatures at times, and the very soft plumage under the wings and on the body surface makes its progress perfectly noiseless, thus permitting its close approach upon its prey before the danger is realized.

I do not propose to go to either extreme in classifying the owls, but place them all in the mostly beneficial class, as all have records of occasionally capturing a small bird, while the one species which is considered injurious more than compensates for the injury by the number of injurious mammals destroyed, and I am confident that were the poultry properly penned up at night, it would effectually prevent any erratic invasions from the owls.

Of the twenty known North American species, eleven may be recorded as regularly Manitoban; some few are migratory, but the majority, especially those inhabiting the deeper woods, remain with us all the year. One of the chief causes of migration among the owls is the amount of snow, which at times cover the food up so completely in their retreats that the birds are forced to seek it in other quarters. This is the reason why owls of different species are much more numerous some seasons than others.

The eggs of all owls are uniformly white and considerably rounded. In the genus *Bubo* we have two forms, which are considered distinct species, although a microscope is almost necessary in order to locate the line of separation.

Of the great horned owl *Bubo Virginianus Subarticus* is the common form, while *Bubo Virginianus articus* is a lighter, and possibly smaller, variety, with a somewhat more northern range. As some five varieties of *Bubo Virginianus* are known to exist, and as all these varieties interbreed where opportunity arises, it takes an expert to search out the pedigree of a horned owl and locate the species or variety. If the locality of collection is not known, it may be any of the five.

They are called the feathered tigers by many ornithologists, and certainly their

untamable ferocity is deserving of the name. They are bold and unexcitable, comparatively easy of approach, and when wounded present a defence worthy of any animal twice their size.

They are the largest and most powerful of the owls, and are credited with doing the greatest damage to poultry and game; they will pay repeated visits to the hen roost where access can be gained, and carry off the largest size fowls. Owls will also capture the grouse and partridge and are of great service in exterminating the rabbits where these animals are numerous. The attacks on the grouse and poultry are made chiefly during the winter, when other food is covered up and when any half-human poulterer would have all crevices small enough for an owl to look through,



Burrowing Owl.

(*Speotyto cunicularia hypogaea.*)

much less fly through, closed up to keep out frost and snow. Were there no owls to carry them off in cases of this kind more poultry would be thrown out, crippled and killed by frosts than the owls eat. I have kept many of these birds alive, and they always prefer rabbits, rats or mice to birds, and an owl can be kept in a more healthy condition with an occasional rabbit than with birds. The record for this bird shows that in 110 full stomachs examined, 80, or over 72 per cent., contained mice, injurious mammals and insects. Of the remainder, eight contained small birds, leaving only 20 per cent. injurious, and these to be divided among game and poultry. Shut up the poultry at night and cut off 10 per cent., which the owl will make on rabbits.

Second only to the horned owl in size is the snowy owl (*Nyctea nyctea*), which is a regular winter resident in greater or less

numbers, corresponding to the amount of snow to be found north of us. They frequent the stacks and outhouses about the farm, and often remain for days about the one locality, unless shot down by the farmer, who immediately concludes that the owl must die because he is on the barn or stack, without any consideration as to what he is there for. I will not go extensively into this species, as I have already in two papers dealt with its economic value, simply quoting figures from the last article, which appeared in a recent issue of *The Nor'-West Farmer*.

In the season of 1896-7, I received some 70 snowy and 20 horned owls. The stomachs of the former failed to reveal the trace of poultry, but contained from four to ten mice, the result of the previous night's hunt about the stacks and barns, where they were killed. From this revelation and the result of an experiment with living specimens, it will be seen that the birds required at least seven mice or their equal in other flesh daily to keep them in good condition. The first birds were received about November 15 and the last about March 15, so that in 120 days they would have fed, if not disturbed, in the locality, and in which time they would have consumed over 840 mice each.

The amount of grain destroyed by mice is so great that the service rendered by the owls in their destruction will be readily seen. Dr. Fisher's record of stomachs of this species shows two in 29 full stomachs (7 per cent.) contained poultry or game, while 20 contained mice and other mammals, the balance other small birds.

This is one of the few species of owls which hunts by day as well as by night, but it is always most active at twilight and early dawn.

Syrnium nebulosum, the Barred Owl, comes next in size, but it is considered rare in Manitoba. I have never secured it, and have only seen one specimen in two and a half years. They frequent the deeper woods, seldom showing themselves in daylight. Regarding the defective vision of this species, Audubon speaks of seeing one alight on the back of a cow, which it left so hurriedly on a movement of the animal, as to show it had mistaken it for a more stationary perch. Another record is made of a collector having one alight suddenly upon the barrel of his gun, which it left as suddenly, but not soon enough to save its life. This is authenticated by Mr. Girard, in his "Birds of Long Island."

The stomach record of the species shows that in 89 full stomachs five contained poultry or game and 13 other birds, while all contained remains of mice, injurious mammals, reptiles and insects.

This owl is usually resident wherever found.

Uhula cinerea (Gmel.) The great gray owl is at first appearances a large and ferocious bird, but upon examination is found to be nearly all feathers, the body and limbs being much smaller than the barred owl. It is the most northern of any in its range, and inhabits the wooded countries, and is nowhere common, save in seasons when the great amount of snow and ice in its compels it to move south in search of food, which consists almost entirely of mice and small mammals. In nine stomachs examined only one contained trace of feathers, while all had mice or other mammals. This certainly proves the great gray owl as the most beneficial of his class, but his small numbers render his services less effective than many commoner species.

Asio Wilsonianus. The Long-Eared Owl and the Short-Eared Owl (*Asio accipitrinus*) are two species of much the same size, the former inhabiting the bush and small bluffs, while the latter lives in the open marshes and fields. Both are quiet and inoffensive birds and are constant enemies of the mice and other small mammals. The long-eared species is the more nocturnal of the two, while neither species are wild and permit of a close approach, making them excellent targets for the ruthless sportsman out to kill. The record for *Wilsonianus* is in 92 full stomachs 90 contained remains of mice and other mammals, insects, etc., while only one revealed a trace of a game bird and 13 contained traces of other birds.

The short-eared owl hunts frequently by day, and during migrations they move about in flocks in the twilight in search of prey. This bird is frequently dropped by the wanton sportsman for practice as it rises suddenly in front of him in the field or marsh, and is usually left to rot or die from wounds.

Their stomach record shows in 87 full stomach all contained mice, small mammals or insects, and only 11 showed any trace of small birds, thus proving him exceedingly beneficial.

Syrnium ulula caparoch. (The Hawk Owl) is a winter visitant with us, and while here hunts during the day as much as by night, much more so than any of the owls from which characteristic it derives its name. While with us it feeds upon mice and small mammals almost entirely, with an occasional small bird, but as I have no stomach records, I can say nothing more than that all cases which have come under my notice have proven the bird to be entirely beneficial. In the vicinity of the Riding Mountains the bird is very numerous during the winter. It never moves

farther south, except when compelled to on account of snow and ice.

We now come to the two smallest species of owls found in Manitoba.

Richardson's Owl (*Nyctala tengmalmi Richardsons*), and the Saw Whet Owl (*Nyctala Acadica*.)

Both these birds are resident practically wherever found, Richardson's owl being possibly the most secluded of the two. Both are nocturnal, and in daylight, with slight precaution, may be caught in the hands. I have found mice an absolute necessity to keep them alive, consequently these must form the greater portion of their diet. Certainly neither of them are large or ferocious enough to do much damage to poultry. The records for the Saw Whet Owl are in 19 full stomachs, one contained a small bird's remains, 17 mice and one insect.

Lastly, I refer to a species not previously recorded for Manitoba, but which is now becoming numerous in many localities, namely, the Burrowing Owl (*Speotyto cunicularia hypogaea*), of which we have all heard more or less in connection with his supposed association with the prairie dogs and rattlesnakes. The truth of this is that the little owl drives out the gophers and prairie dogs and appropriates the burrow for his own home, and the finding of the rattlesnakes in the same locality is no proof of their living with the owls. Dr. Coues, who first upset the story of the harmonious association of the three forms, says the owl is a match for both old prairie dogs and rattlesnakes, living largely upon the young dogs. They are peculiar looking little birds, with their long, slender featherless legs, so different from all other owls, which makes them look somewhat top-heavy. Capt. Bendire, in his life histories, relates an experience in feeding two specimens in captivity, in which the owls killed with ease, and devoured with equal ease, four Townsend's ground squirrels, animals considerably larger than the birds, in one day. Every day of their captivity they eat more than their own weight, which will give a slight idea of what a growing brood will require, and as the food is almost entirely vermin, they are extremely beneficial agents and deserving of the fullest protection. Their advent into Manitoba can therefore be looked upon with favor, more especially on account of their fondness for gophers, and among them the pocket gopher, which tunnels so much under ground, heaving up heaps of earth and doing great injury to growing crops. This animal works mostly at night, and the burrowing owl is the best adapted species to act as constable and intercept him at his

work, arrest him, judge and condemn, and finally dispose of him to the owl's satisfaction.

CONCLUSIONS.

Having collected together the foregoing facts relative to the economic relations of the individual species of the birds of prey, let us now briefly review them, and see what conclusions may be drawn from them. In the first place, we have three species proven absolutely beneficial, with no records of destruction of either poultry or game birds.

In the second group we have six hawks and eleven owls, mostly beneficial, which average only 16 1-3 per cent. injurious, and from this small percentage we must deduct 12 per cent. for the small birds taken, whose economic value is doubtful, because we have no knowledge of the species, which leaves a grand total of 4 1-3 per cent. of 17 common species of birds of prey injurious to poultry and game combined, while the remaining 82 2-3 per cent. are entirely beneficial in their destruction of agricultural enemies. Is it justice to slaughter 84 innocent birds because four in the hundred fancy poultry or game? On the contrary, it is very unjust, and therefore so when we consider that these 84 innocents have been diligently working in our interests and yearly saving us many times the value of all the poultry we own.

Reviewing the records of the harmful group, what do we find? Five species are credited with doing the damage for which the other 23 species suffer. The question now is, what is the injury they do? The average injury of these amounts to only 25 per cent. to poultry and game, while an equal percentage is proven to be beneficial, the remaining 50 per centage being destructive to smaller birds. Now, it has been shown that the Peregrine falcon seldom visits the farm-yard, but follows the game, which will greatly reduce his injurious effects upon poultry. It has also been shown that the three species most injurious to small birds are most so to two pests, the English sparrow and the blackbird, and for this reason we can reduce their injurious qualities in this respect at least one-half. Consequently, we have at least 50 per cent. of the most harmful hawks directly beneficial to agricultural interests, while only 25 per cent. are injurious to poultry and game combined, and the remaining 25 per cent. to birds of doubtful economic value.

From these conclusions, I think it only justice to the interests of our country that the birds of prey should be included in the Act for the protection of birds beneficial to agriculture.

Now, in order that the observer may be able to determine the most injurious species from the harmless and beneficial, I shall again refer to their different characteristics.

When a hawk is observed beating steadily back and forth, sailing and dodging about the prairie or marsh, or sulkily and indolently perched upon a post, branch or clod of earth, usually disregarding the approaching team or pedestrian on the highway, it may safely be concluded that this is not a thief and that he seems to realize it, and is therefore undisturbed by approach. And should one be observed about the farm-yard perched on the stack, barn or fence-post, even though poultry are about, he will not bother them, for he is after mice. But should a hawk be observed bearing down upon the place at an unusual rate of speed, never altering its course, and dashing among the startled fowl, you may know it is a thief, and must

be ready for him before he arrives, in order to frighten him off or get a shot at him as he whirls behind the barn or stack with a hen. Should you not be fortunate enough to see him coming, and suddenly see the streak of feathers flash past and hear a disturbance among the fowl, if you are not very sharp you will not even see him dodge off with the fowl and will not realize what has happened until you count your poultry, as when this bird makes the fatal swoop, nothing but death can stop his attack, and an army of musketry and dogs could not make noise enough to disturb him. Consequently, it is only on chance occasions that an opportunity is given to punish the culprit, unless, after repeated visits, a watch is kept for the approach, a quick shot is made and the thief dropped, and this invariably results in the loss of more time than the value of the poultry taken.

SMALL MAMMALS OF MANITOBA DESTROYED BY BIRDS OF PREY.

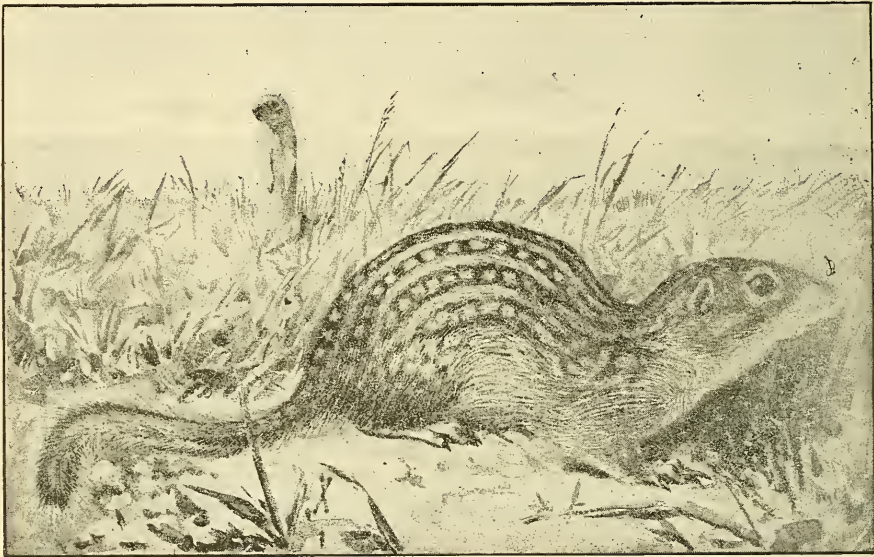
The small mammals which constitute the greater portion of the bill of fare of the birds of prey, and those most destructive to agricultural interests, are mice and gophers. Of the former group there are, besides the domestic mouse, three species which may be considered common, and whose ravages are worthy of attention. Chief among these in numbers and destructiveness is the common field mouse (*Arvicola riparius*). This chunky, short-tailed, unintelligent-looking little animal is familiar to nearly everyone, being of wide distribution in our province, and it will always be found in greater or less numbers wherever there is a grain field or granary. The field mice nest below the ground in the fields, so that they are constantly in the midst of abundance of food with a minimum of exposure to enemies. They are exceedingly prolific, and it is estimated that the increase under favorable circumstances from one pair of mice would be over 14,000 mice in five years, if we allow each pair to breed for two years, as each pair will raise at least ten young each year. The numbers of these animals in a given district would seem almost incredible to the majority of people, as the animals are mostly nocturnal, and, unless disturbed by daylight, they never move from their hiding place, and when disturbed they readily hide behind any cover available. On account of the favorable protective grey color

of the animal, they generally escape observation, unless one is especially looking for them. On one occasion, in September, 1897, I was desirous of securing some of these mice. I visited a field where threshing was in operation, and, with two boys, I followed the stook teams about, and in less than one acre of ground captured sixty specimens, and during this time as many more escaped uncaptured or were killed and eaten by a dog in attendance. The boys subsequently visited the same field for the sport of killing the animals, and inform me that my catch was only an average to be found over the whole section. This would mean, allowing two-thirds the number captured to have escaped, 100 mice per acre, or 64,000 mice on that section. Now, as by experiment I proved that 50 mice would destroy one pint of grain daily, and as this grain was standing stooked for about three weeks before threshing, these animals would have consumed large quantities of grain. At this rate a few pairs of mice wintering in a stack or granary would be very damaging to the farmer in one season. This is the species which most frequently falls a prey to the rough-legged hawk during twilight or to the owls which hunt by night. A pair of owls or hawks about a grain stack during the harvest will do much towards the extermination of these pests. Seeming to know their own powers of hiding, they are very bold and

unexcitable, and once in hiding are not easily dislodged as other more excitable species would be. As they are so seldom seen, and as the grain yield is always speculative, their destructiveness is not apparent, save in a granary, where the quantity of grain is known; but, if any farmer takes the trouble to look into the matter himself, he will not be long in securing convicting evidence of the strongest character against this pest and ample evidence in favor of the protection of their destroyers — the hawks and owls.

Of the second species, the red-backed mouse (*Arvicola Gapperi*) or Gapper's mouse, no special mention is necessary, beyond the description of the animal, which

depth along the fence lines, roadways and uncultivated fields, and although they seldom burrow in the grain fields, they pay them regular visits both to feed upon and carry off large quantities in their cheek pouches to be stored away in their burrows. The damage done by these rodents is, as in the case of the mice, not apparent, or at least, not credited generally to the agency of these animals, but if we estimate one pint of grain daily to each ten gophers, and with this number of animals along each fence line of a grain field, it would mean two quarts of grain daily destroyed. This amounts to almost two bushels of grain in a month taken by these forty animals, and this in the spring dur-



Common Striped Gopher. (*Spermophilus tridecemlineatus.*)

is, if anything, a trifle smaller than *riparius*, and the whole back is reddish-brown. It is found usually in company with the field mouse, and their habits are about identical, save the *gapperi* may be more numerous in the vicinity of fresh clearings, but it is never as numerous as the better known species.

The notoriety of the ground squirrels or *Spermophiles*, is far more general among agriculturists than that of the mice, to which animals they are second only in numbers. Being much larger animals, their destructive qualities, which are enormous, would prove the ruination of the country were they as numerous as mice. They construct burrows of great length and

ing seeding would mean a great drain upon the fall yield. Taking the annual increase of these animals to average five young pair, we would find 100 young gophers to cut down the growing grain through the summer and 140 gophers to attack the ripening and standing crop in the fall, and it would require nearly two bushels per week at the foregoing rate to feed this number of animals. I have placed the average at 40 gophers per field, which I consider a very small average, as in some larger fields this number can frequently be found upon one side of the field. When undisturbed for a time these animals become quite bold and unconcerned, and complaints have been made that the larger

species will at times seize upon young chickens and carry them off. Certain it is that they are fond of flesh, as they will kill and eat birds while in captivity, and for this reason I believe they do much destruction among our smaller ground-nesting birds. They are, however, credited with destroying quantities of injurious insects, chiefly in the larval form, but any beneficial qualities in this regard are quite offset by their destructiveness. It is therefore plain that agriculturists are very unwise to destroy the hawks which prey upon these pests and leave them to increase and continue their depredations unchecked.

The most generally known spermophile of the three species inhabiting the western

of wood, a small clump of grass of a fence-post, which usually conceals the entrance to the burrow. As this species frequents the grain fields and more open ground, it is the usual prey to the large hawks, which may be seen beating up and down the fields, and these hawks know that when a gopher disappears into his burrow he is full of curiosity and will soon come out again to see what frightened him. The hawk, by remaining motionless at the edge of the hole, is able to catch the animal suddenly upon his reappearance, if he is not meanwhile shot as a chicken thief.

Of the two remaining species, Franklin's spermophile (*Spermophilus Franklini*), gray gopher, gray squirrel or brush gopher,



Gray Gopher. (*Spermophilus Franklini*.)

prairies, and certainly the most generally destructive to grain crops, is the striped spermophile.

Spermophilus tridecemlineatus, more familiarly known as the striped gopher. This species ranges from the Red river valley across the province, and from the U. S. to latitude 53 deg. n. It is possibly most common in the district east of the gravel ridges and hills, and can be seen along every roadside and in almost every field in greater or less numbers. Scuffling along in a mouse-like fashion to the entrance to its burrow, where it elevates itself upon its hind legs and remains motionless as a stake until approached too closely, when, with a shrill whistle or trill, it disappears apparently into a block

as it is also called, is a much larger species than the striped spermophile, but is not generally so numerous and is destructive according to its numbers. The gray gophers range the entire fertile belt of the prairie country from the Northern States to Carlton House on the Saskatchewan river. They prefer the vicinity of rank herbage or brush, and their food is more of a wild nature, unless they happen to be in the vicinity of a grain field. At such times they can do great damage, if found in any numbers. This species will most frequently fall a prey to the red-tailed hawk and kindred species which sit about these brushy localities alert for straying rodents, and also to the diurnal hunting owls,

whose noiseless flight allows of an unsuspected approach. They are a much more awkward animal in motion than the striped gopher, and are, therefore, more easily captured. If they are once exterminated in a locality they do not return for some time, as their rate of increase is not so rapid as that of the other species. This species is distinguished from the succeeding by the long bushy tail and uniform gray color.

The remaining species is Richardson's spermophile (*Spermophilus Richardsoni*) a shorter-tailed species than *Franklini*, and the tail is not nearly so bushy. Its range in the more gravelly and hilly portion of the province from Dakota north to Carlton House on the Saskatchewan river and west of a line drawn through Carberry and Petrel. It resembles the prairie dog, (*Cynomys ludovicianus*) in both form and color. It is abundant in fields and fresh clearings, and even in populous districts in many places is exceedingly numerous. Many western farmers, who do not know the Franklin spermophile, complain of this species, and there is little doubt that it is on account of the excessive numbers that the damage done is so apparent. They are bolder and more savage than either of the other species, and this would make them an easier mark to the larger hawks. As all three species of spermophiles are diurnal (being most active in morning and evening), the owls (save the few diurnal hunting species) are unable to persecute them, and as they all hibernate during cold weather and store up food for inclement weather, they escape the persecution of the winter visiting species of hawks and owls, and therefore have that much better opportunity to increase.

The term gopher, as applied to the spermophile, is inappropriate, as the gophers are a different class of animal, the spermophile being more correctly speaking ground squirrels, while the succeeding species is the only gopher we have in Manitoba.

The only remaining grain-destroying mammal to be noted is the gray pocket gopher (*Thomomys talpoides*). A fine-furred, thick-set animal, approaching the

size of the striped gopher, but much thicker proportionately. The cheek pouches are separate from the mouth opening and can contain a considerable quantity of food. The legs are short and thick, while the forefoot is developed into a long claw, especially adapted for digging. The tail is short and almost devoid of hair. This animal spends most of its time below the surface, only appearing to throw out the earth which it is constantly loosening as it continues its tunnelling. This work, the result of which is seen in the mounds of fine earth thrown up in the fields, is doubly destructive, in that it buries much of the grain too deep to permit of its growth and also undermines the roots of much of the growing seed in the vicinity. It is upon the roots of these grains and shrubs that he animal feeds. Occasionally it pulls down the heads of grain into the burrow, but as a rule it is content to feed upon the roots and underground growth. The species is especially destructive to young trees, and will destroy whole orchards and groves by cutting off the roots of the trees. They will also destroy large quantities of turnips, carrots, potatoes and other vegetables. As this animal is chiefly nocturnal, it would be more a prey to owls than hawks, and, as it seldom comes far above the surface, about the only species which can combat them is the little burrowing owl, which seems to be extending its range into our country. Badgers and weasels persecute these gophers persistently, the badger digging the gopher out, while the largest weasel is able to enter the tunnels with ease, and this invariably results in a dead gopher. There are various methods adopted to kill off all these destructive animals at times, when their numbers increase abnormally. It can no longer be disputed that as an agency toward the perpetual limitation of their numbers, the hawks and owls, though long unjustly persecuted, are certainly deserving of our respect and protection. We can well spare an occasional young chicken or an old rheumatic fowl to these birds in return for the number of the pests they annually destroy.

506,712
186747

The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba



HISTORICAL SKETCH

—OF—

THE CHARITABLE INSTITUTIONS OF WINNIPEG

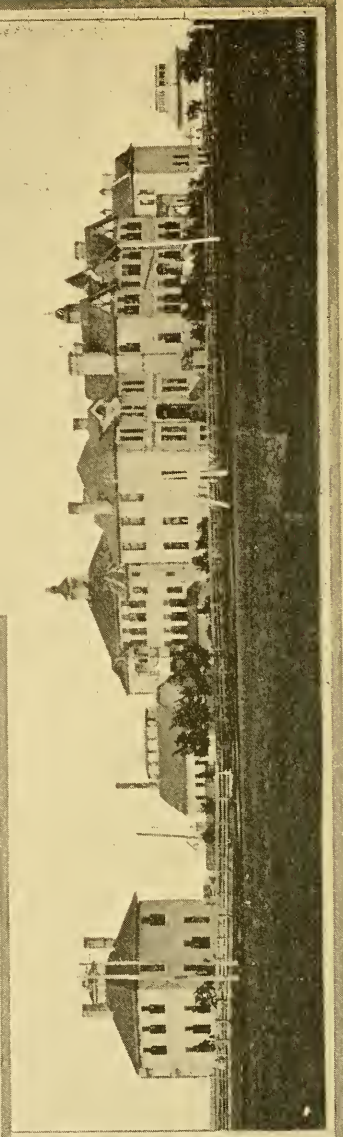
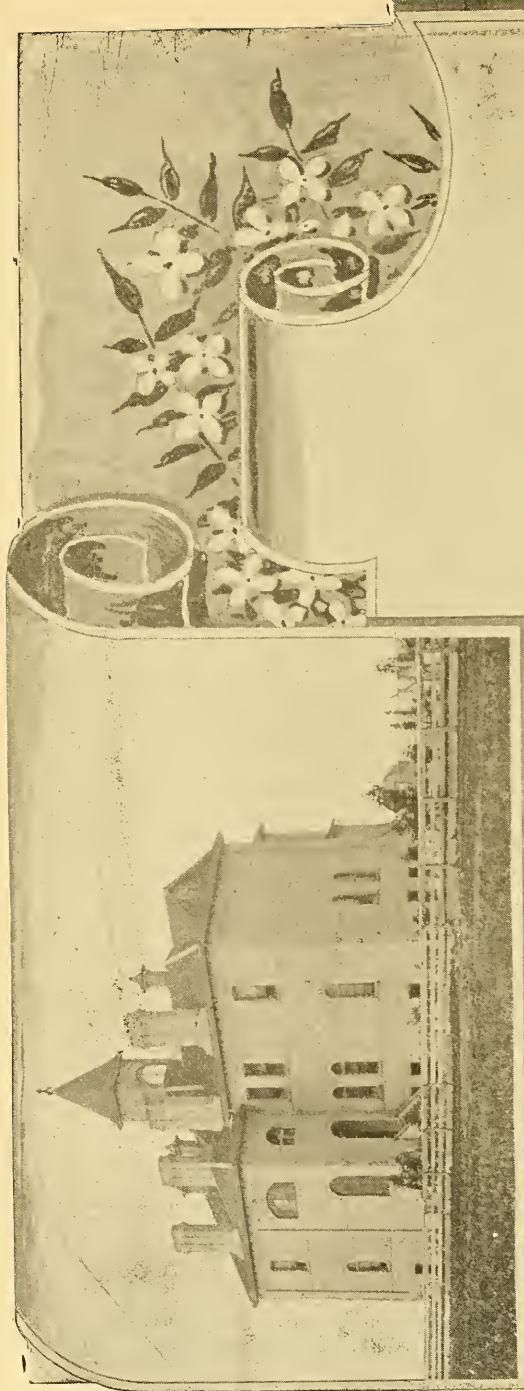
—BY—

MRS. GEORGE BRYCE

A Member of the Society



LIBRARY
OF THE
HISTORICAL AND SCIENTIFIC SOCIETY
OF MANITOBA



WINNIPEG GENERAL HOSPITAL

Charitable Institutions of Winnipeg

At a meeting of the Historical Society, held in the City Council Chamber, on the evening of Tuesday, February 21st, the following paper was read by Mrs. Bryce, wife of Rev. Dr. Bryce, of this city :—

In giving a history of the charitable institutions of Winnipeg, we naturally begin with the oldest and most important, viz.: the Winnipeg General Hospital.

Any one examining the public edifices of our city is sure to have his attention drawn to a group of buildings belonging to the hospital, occupying a block between McDermot and Bannatyne Avenues, and West of Nena. A closer examination of these buildings and their uses will show that the Winnipeg General Hospital, like the City of Rome, was not built in a day. Building after building has been added, according to the requirements of our city and Province, and we are pleased to think that we have such a memorial of the advancement of medical science in our midst.

The oldest of the group of buildings was opened to receive patients in 1884 but earlier records show that the hospital had a history of twelve years' duration previous to that date.

The Winnipeg General Hospital was organized December 13th, 1872, and its Act of Incorporation was passed May 14th, 1875. The board of management applying for the Act were George Young, Gilbert McMicken, W. N. Kennedy, Rev. W. C. Clark, Thos. Lusted, G. B. Spencer, George Bryce, A. G. B. Bannatyne, J. H. Ashdown, Stewart Mulvey, A. G. Jackes, J. H. O'Donnell, Jos. Royal, J. H. McTavish, and W. G. Fonseca.

Drs. O'Donnell, Jackes and Lynch were the medical men chiefly associated with the hospital in the earlier period of its history.

Anyone who remembers Winnipeg in those early years as a mere village, with its new population, mostly young men, constantly being added to from the East, its crowded boarding houses, its imperfect buildings, hastily erected to accommodate new arrivals, the absence of sanitary arrangements and the prevalence of typhoid fever, can speak of the necessity for an hospital even at that stage of the city's existence.

Yet it was not one of the new arrivals who was the chief benefactor in this matter, but one who had come to Red River when a mere lad, and who had spent most of his life there, the Hon. A. G. B. Bannatyne.

The first building used for hospital purposes was on the banks of the Red River, somewhere near the foot of Lombard Street. The second was a log house in Point Douglas, rented from the late Hon. John Norquay. The imperfections of both these buildings soon convinced the hospital board that they must arise and build. The Messrs. McDermot and Bannatyne donated the present hospital site, afterwards enlarged, and a building was erected on it in 1875, which was occupied as an hospital until 1882.

During the financial struggles of this early period the hospital board was more than once indebted to the ladies of the city for substantial aid. As early as 1873 a bazaar was held under the auspices of Mrs. Bannatyne for the benefit of the hospital.

In the fall of 1877 the increasing demands upon the hospital having brought it into financial difficulties, a meeting of the ladies was called and a statement of its affairs laid before them. The secretary treasurer showed that the hospital's annual cost of maintenance was about \$4,000, to meet which there was : The local Government grant, \$1,250; city grant, \$500; Dominion Government, for patients, \$250; Hospital Sunday, \$300; private patients from \$300 to \$400, leaving a large deficit to be made up from uncertain sources. The hospital was at the time \$700 in debt for maintenance.

The ladies willingly came to the rescue. The city was divided into districts, two ladies being appointed to canvass each. A generous response was made to their solicitations, and in this way about \$1,200 was raised. Later on the ladies held a bazaar, or, as it was called, an apron festival, by which \$400 more was realized.

About the same time a small addition was made to the hospital, costing \$150, the whole of which sum was kindly donated by Mr. Moberly, a contractor, then in the city.

Such are a few of the facts looming through the mists that usually obscure the dawn of history.

The years 1882 and 1883 were, perhaps, the most progressive in the history of the General Hospital. In the boom years the city had grown with abnormal rapidity and the resources of the hospital were inadequate to meet the increasing demands upon it. Something had to be done to place its affairs on a firmer footing.

The Act of Incorporation was amended in 1882, the board of directors at the time being Hon. A. G. B. Bannatyne, Alex. Brown, Acton Burrows, C. J. Brydges, G. F. Carruthers, Dr. Cowan, W. Hespeler, Arthur F. Eden, J. M. Macdonnell, Alex. McArthur, Joseph Mulholland, J. H. Rowan, T. C. Scoble, C. Sweeny and A. H. Witcher.

The number of attending physicians had been increased, and were now settled by by-laws to consist of six attending physicians, and not more than three consulting physicians. Those attending at the time were Drs. Lynch, Codd, Good, Kerr, Whiteford, and R. B. Ferguson; consulting physicians, Drs. Cowan, Jackes and O'Donnell. The resident surgeon now becomes a power in the hospital management, the first being Dr. Mewburn. The amended Act removed the limit of property that could be legally held by the corporation. It also empowered the directors to raise money by mortgages.

The life membership fee, which had heretofore been \$50, was now raised to \$100 and the name changed to Life Gover-

nor. The annual fee, which had been \$4, was increased to \$10.

FINANCES.

In January, 1881, the Dominion Government, which had, in former times, been rather stingy in its dealings with the hospital, passed an order in council, authorizing the payment of 60 cents per day for each immigrant patient treated. At the time of which I speak this was quite a source of revenue to the directors, over \$18,000 having been paid during the two years.

In 1883 the Charity Aids Act passed by the local Government secured to every hospital approved by the Governor in Council payment of 25 cents per day for every free patient treated. The City Council twice increased its grant during these two years. The original annual grant of \$500 was first advanced to \$1,200 and again to \$5,000. A by-law at the same time was passed, giving the city representation of one on the board of directors for each \$5,000 given. At the present day the grant is \$10,000. The municipalities began to send in contributions more regularly, and Hospital Sunday became an established fact, although it has always been difficult to have all the churches make their collections on the same Sunday.

Perhaps the most pleasing event during these two years was the establishment in 1883 of the suggestion of Mrs. W. G. Dennison, of the Women's Hospital Aid Society, the object being to supply the hospital with bedding, clothing and other necessary comforts. Although the ladies of the city had somewhat fitfully taken an interest in the hospital from time to time, and by donations had supplied its wants, the organization of this society not only assured a more regular supply of household necessaries, but also a careful supervision of the same, and was a great relief to the board of directors.

BUILDINGS.

The hospital building which had been in use since 1875, had during the boom years been found quite inadequate to the growing requirements of the city, and in 1881 a temporary location and building in Point Douglas had been purchased from the Dominion Government at a cost of \$5,000, to be used until the old building could be moved from the hospital site and a new building erected.

In addition to subscriptions of citizens to the building fund, the board received from the Hudson's Bay Company \$2,000 ; from the C. P. R. a similar amount and from the City Council a special grant of \$5,000. A mortgage loan of \$25,000 was incurred. After the usual troubles and vicissitudes attending on building operations at that time, the new hospital, costing \$63,115.95, represented at the present time by the general and administration buildings, was opened 13th March, 1884, and was a great boon to the sick and suffering, as well as to the attendants, as the Point Douglas building, although roomier than the old hospital, was not even so well suited for hospital purposes, and on account of an outbreak of smallpox within its walls in May, 1882, the patients had to be accommodated in tents on the prairie around it.

EQUIPMENT.

The increased number of surgical cases made it necessary at this time to purchase a complete set of instruments, which was done at a cost of \$762.

MEDICAL.

We have yet one more step in advance to record. A number of medical practitioners in Winnipeg, including nearly all the attending physicians at the hospital, having taken steps to establish a medical school, application was made by the faculty for permission for the students to attend lectures, surgical and clinical, in the hospital. By-laws were passed December 17th, 1883, regulating their fees and pro-

viding for their conduct and supervision while in the hospital. In 1884 then we find the General Hospital in a much better footing than it had ever been before, alike as to its finances, its buildings and the management of its affairs.

MORE RECENT YEARS.

In approaching more recent years it seems unnecessary to enter into the details of the hospital's history, as its printed records are available, and yet even a sketch would be incomplete without reference to the main features of advancement. The hospital building was no sooner completed in 1884 than the directors began to see that in the interests of medical science the work of the hospital would have to be extended. But burdened as they were with a mortgage debt, for a large amount of which some of them had become personally liable, it could not be expected that they would immediately add to their responsibilities.

The Jubilee years of Her Most Gracious Majesty, Queen Victoria, always bring showers of blessings, and of these showers a good many drops are sure to descend on the Winnipeg General Hospital. In 1887 the directors of the hospital made an appeal to the public for a jubilee fund wherewith to discharge the complete debt on the hospital property. The response to the appeal amounted to \$14,062.95, which not only wiped out the debt, but left a considerable balance in the hands of the directors to undertake whatever extension might be thought most desirable.

SCHOOL FOR NURSES.

The hospital had, up to this time, been indebted to outside sources for its supply of nurses, but in order that the nursing staff might be increased and a number be available for sending out to city and country, a school for nurses was opened in 1887. To provide proper accommodation for these nurses when off duty, a home was found to be a necessity. This home became an established fact in November, 1888, and its

occupation left a considerable amount of room in the hospital to be used for the accommodation of patients. The directors had also a maternity hospital in course of erection in 1888, which was finished in December of that year. This branch of medical work had, since 1883, been under the care of a society of ladies, called the Christian Women's Union. At this stage it was almost necessary, for the completion of the nurses' course, and that of the medical students, that it should be under the direction of the hospital authorities. The members of the Women's Christian Union were quite willing that it should be so transferred. Indeed, the proposal came from their side.

An operating theatre and a disinfecting kiln was also added to the equipment of the hospital in 1888 ; and a separate and roomy ward was set apart for the treatment of children. The latter was fitly named the "Brydges Memorial Ward for Children," in memory of Mr. Brydges. It was for the purpose of formally opening this ward that Mr. Brydges had gone to the hospital on the 16th February, 1889, when he so suddenly died. During the same year, 1889, the hospital and the board sustained another great loss in the death of the president, the Hon. A. G. B. Bannatyne, who had been in ill-health for several years.

The enterprises of 1887, even with the help of grants, left the board once more in debt, but by 1891 this was all paid off and they were ready to undertake further extension.

The next important building undertaken was an isolated hospital for infectious diseases, as the general building had now become too crowded to allow of wards being set apart for this purpose. This building was finished and ready for patients on the 26th January, 1893, and the following year increased accommodation for nurses was added in connection with it. There is but one more building to speak of, that called the Victoria Jubilee Addition, at present in course of erection to the West of the main building, and connected

with it by a corridor. This building will be devoted altogether to surgical cases, and will contain a roomy and well lighted operating theatre. To meet the expenses of this handsome addition to the hospital the Provincial Government and the City Council have each granted \$10,000 ; \$2,000 from Mr. W. W. Ogilvie is available, and it is hoped that the general subscriptions will bring the sum up to \$50,000. Of the lesser but very important equipments of the hospital—the two ambulances, for example—there is scarcely time to speak.

The hospital has always had a plentiful supply of water from its own flowing wells, pumped into the building by steam power. It also has its own plant for electric lighting.

CONCLUSION.

In this sketch the hospital buildings have chiefly been spoken of, and indeed it is among the buildings of the hospital that its history can best be studied. From their extension we get an idea of the number of sick that come there for healing, from their uses we get a knowledge of the different kinds of suffering that have to be relieved and the various methods applied for their relief.

Of those who have given thought and care to the commencement of the building up of the hospital, we can only mention the presidents, A. G. B. Bannatyne and Wm. Hespeler ; the secretary treasurers, George Bryce, Alex. McArthur, Acton Burrows, C. J. Brydges, J. F. Bain. Mr. Hespeler and Hon. Justice Bain are still in office. The following is the present medical staff of the hospital, which gives some idea of its growth :—

Consulting Staff.—J. H. O'Donnell, M.D.; Alfred Codd, M.D.; E. Benson, M.D.; Jas. Patterson, M.D.; J. M. Jones, M.D.

Attending Physicians and Surgeons.—General wards

physicians : W. J. Neilson, M.D.; W. S. England, M.D. ; R. M. Simpson, M.D.

Surgeons.—R. J. Blanchard, M.D.; H. H. Chown, M.D.; J. S. Gray, MD.; A. J. Macdonnell, M.D. Specialists for Diseases of Eye, Ear, Nose and Throat : J. W. Good, M.D.; W. Harvey Smith, M.D. Isolated Wards : E. S. Popham, M.D.; E. W. Montgomery, M.D. Maternity Wards : J. O. Todd, M.D.; A. W. Moody, M.D. Pathologist : Gordon Bell, M.D.

Resident Staff.—Medical Superintendent : Wm. Chestnutt, M.D., with three resident assistants. Lady Superintendent : Miss B. Holland, with thirty nurses in training, three nurse graduates and two probationers.

. During the last fifteen years the Act of Incorporation and by-laws have several times been amended to suit the altered circumstances of the hospital.

THE WOMEN'S HOSPITAL AID SOCIETY.

This society has already been mentioned in connection with the General Hospital, and it is to the hospital that it owes its allegiance. It was organized in 1883, the annual membership fee being \$2. Its object was to supply the hospital with bedding, clothing and other necessary comforts.

The first officers were : President, Mrs. Aikens; Vice-Presidents, Mesdames Brydges, Pinkham, Denison and Pitblado; Secretaries, the Misses Mingaye and Drever; Treasurer, Miss Mingaye. Committees were also appointed for various kinds of work

In order to enable the society to make a good beginning the storekeepers of the city supplied goods at very reasonable prices, and Mr. M. T. Hunter generously paid for these goods to the amount of \$500. Thus the newly erected hospital was well stocked with all the needed bedding and linen.

Since that time the society has had a very prosperous career. Having no buildings of its own, it has had to be in-

debted to friends for a place in which to convene. For a number of years Mr. Sprado has allowed the society to hold its monthly and committee meetings in one of the dining rooms of the Manitoba Hotel. The recent fire rendered this society homeless for the time being, but it is hoped that soon again it will be found in comfortable quarters.

For a number of years the society raised its funds chiefly by entertainments, an annual ball being given for the benefit of the hospital, but the sentiment of many of its supporters was found to be in favor of direct giving, and it was resolved in 1892 that in future the society should depend more for its income on the extension of its membership fees, and other larger or smaller subscriptions.

This plan was so successful that it seems to have been adopted by the society as its permanent source of revenue. Occasionally the funds are augmented by the proceeds of entertainments, but these are usually proffered to the society by their promoters.

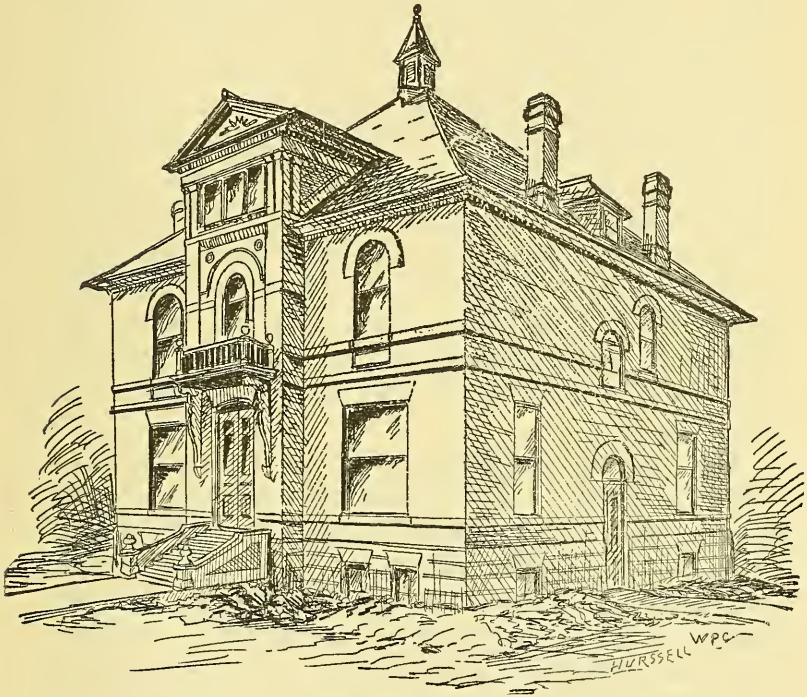
When a new building has been added to the hospital the draft upon the resources of the Aid society is larger than at other times, as the members have not always limited themselves to the ordinary provision expected of them, but have helped considerably with other furnishings. We may take 1897 as a normal year, when the cost of articles supplied by the society amounted to \$948.55. Two of the members, Mesdames Bell and Sprague, collected money during the jubilee year for a new ambulance, as it was necessary to keep one for infectious cases.

The presidents of this society have been Mesdames Aikens, Lynch, Pinkham, Farrell, F. W. Harris, Ewart, Street, Blanchard, Adams, Somerset Aikens, Drewry, Moffat, and Mrs. H. Bell, at present in office.

Secretaries : The Misses Mingaye and Drever; treasurers: Miss Mingaye, Mrs. Macfarlane; secretary treasurers: Miss Aikens, Mesdames Eden, J. G. Moore and Mrs. E. M. Wood, at present in office.

THE CHRISTIAN WOMAN'S UNION.

The Christian Woman's Union owes its origin, in March, 1883, to a few devoted women whose strong desire was to bring together women of different Protestant denominations and varied predilections and to unite them in some important work in which they could all be interested. The proposed



THE WOMAN'S HOME

work naturally took the form of work among women. A mass meeting of the women of the city was called and met in the old court house near the site of the present City Hall, an ancient landmark that has since disappeared. A board of management was chosen with Mrs. Galton, sister of Mrs. W.

R. Mulock, as president, she having been one of the leading spirits in the movement.

Collectors were appointed to raise funds and the city was divided into districts for this purpose. In order to receive a Government grant an Act of Incorporation was applied for early in 1894 under the name of the Christian Women's Union of Winnipeg. The Act was passed by the Legislature in April of that year and a grant of \$500 was given, now \$250. The annual fees are \$3.00 ; life membership, \$50. The ladies applying for this Act were Mrs. Mary E. J. Aikens, honorary president ; Mrs. Catherine Rowe, president ; Mrs. Eleanor Whitla, vice-president ; Miss Mary Jazdrowski, treasurer ; Mrs. Annie Monk, corresponding secretary ; Mrs. Jemima Irwin, recording secretary ; Mrs. Marion Bryce, 1st directress ; Mrs. Matilda Lynch, 2nd directress.

The first work undertaken was a home for young women earning their living in the city and absent from their own homes. The old Bannatyne residence on the river bank, with its grounds extending from Bannatyne to McDermot St., was rented for the purpose of the home, which was opened in the spring of 1883.

This institution was afterwards moved to a smaller house on Hargrave Street, but it was not taken advantage of by those for whom it was intended—it rather seemed to attract the idle and incompetent, so in a short time it was thought advisable to have it closed. In the meantime, with the glad approval of the leading physicians of the city, the society had opened a Maternity Hospital in the Bannatyne building.

The hospital was not designed only to benefit the class usually styled unfortunate, but also poor married women who were destitute of comforts in their own miserable shanty homes at that time so common. There were also private wards for ladies coming from the country and from distant towns for the advantage of good medical skill and nursing.

The Bannatyne building having been sold, the maternity

hospital was moved in September, 1884, to a large house formerly occupied by Sheriff Armstrong, at the foot of May Street, Point Douglas, and in 1886 it was again moved to the adjoining roomy house, the former residence of the late Major Morice.

These frequent changes of residence shewed that the board were never altogether satisfied with the hospital quarters, and indeed, they were always painfully aware that their accommodation came far short of the requirements of modern science. Although among nearly 200 adult inmates they were so fortunate as never to lose a single case by death, yet two slight outbreaks of fever warned them of the risk to life they were running. They felt the necessity of erecting a proper building, but the medical men began to see in the state of advancement of our city, and in the interests of the Medical College it was time for the Maternity Hospital to be placed under the sheltering wing of the General Hospital. The union quite agreed with them, and towards the end of 1887, after the second fever outbreak, the Maternity Hospital was closed and this chapter of the history of the Christian Women's Union came to an end.

Previous to this, on the 1st January, 1885, in a small building adjacent to the Maternity Hospital, the Children's Home was opened by the Christian Women's Union. It was primarily for the benefit of the little ones born in the hospital that the home was intended, but other needy children were admitted. The family soon outgrew the narrow limits of the premises, and in April of that same year the home was moved to a more commodious house on Assiniboine Avenue, foot of Hargrave Street. In September, 1896, it was again transferred to a larger building on Portage Avenue.

When the Children's Home was removed to a distance from the Maternity Hospital a separate committee was appointed from the members of the C. W. U. for its manage-

ment, and this was a stepping stone to its finally becoming an independent institution.

Those whose hearts went out to work among the children applied for and obtained from the Legislature an Act of Incorporation as the board of management to the Children's Home, June, 1897.

After the Children's Home had been removed from under its care, and the Maternity Hospital had become an adjunct of the General Hospital, the C. W. U. had a breathing space. There was one phase of work open to them akin to their former hospital work and springing out of it, but it was feared that this would not carry with it public sympathy. They hesitated, but there was money in the treasury, over \$1,000, and they felt that they should without delay put it to some useful purpose.

That the corporation was so wealthy came about as follows : From the opening of the Maternity Hospital there had been admitted from time to time patients from the immigrant sheds. The General Hospital authorities, it was understood, were paid at the rate of 60c. a day for each immigrant patient placed under their care and the board of the Maternity Hospital concluded that they should be paid at the same rate for each immigrant woman sent to them, and the bills were made out accordingly. Year after year these accounts were disputed by the Dominion Government, but finally the sum amounting to \$900, was paid, just when the society seemed to require it least.

It was not long before the C. W. U. became convinced that it was their duty to open up a refuge for women. The Maternity Hospital had served the double purpose of an hospital and a refuge and now the members of the union felt that an industrial home was needed for the kind of inmates that were likely to come under their care. But the inconveniences of a rented house for the purposes of the home determined the union to build, so as to have room for industrial

branches to occupy and improve the inmates. The money on hand enabled the board to pay ready cash for the spacious lots now occupied by the home. It is an ideal site on McDermot Ave., West of Kate Street, as the work is so closely connected with that of the General Hospital.

In 1889 the union was chiefly engaged in canvassing the city for the means to erect the present building, which is evidence in itself that a generous response was met with. The last instalment of a mortgage debt upon the property was paid in 1895. In March, 1891, the new home was opened with a reception given to a large gathering of friends. Since that time it has been found very suitable for the work with a few improvements made from time to time. As since the opening of the Salvation Army Rescue Home, the more degraded cases are not admitted to the C.W.U. home. It is suitable as a refuge for aged poor women as well as for respectable married women coming to the city for medical care, indeed, there are no hard and fast lines drawn with regard to admission, excepting several very necessary ones in the by-laws; each case is considered when the application is made. The home shelters about sixty inmates during the year. Such is a brief sketch of the history of the Christian Women's Union. It has sometimes been in financial and other difficulties, but a kind providence has always helped it over hard times. The presidents were Mesdames Galton, Rowe and George Bryce; vice presidents, Mesdames Whitla, Lynch, Wesbrook, Somerset and O'Loughlin; secretaries, Mesdames Irwin, Doupe, J. B. Monk, (Dr.) Kerr, (Dr.) Orton, Culver, C. H. Campbell, T. J. McBride, Atkinson and McClenaghan; treasurers, Miss Jazdowski, Mrs. M. T. Hunter and Mrs. (Dr.) Clark. The present officers are: Patroness, Mrs. Patterson; hon. president, Lady Schultz; president, Mrs. George Bryce; 1st vice-president, Mrs. J. B. Somerset; 2nd vice-president, Mrs. J. M. O'Loughlin; recording secretary, Mrs. A. V. McClenaghan; corresponding secretary, Mrs. J. J. Roy; treasurer,

Mrs. C. W. Clark; financial secretary, Mrs. Wm. Bathgate; Sunday service, Mrs. George McVicar. The C. W. U. has a Government grant of \$250 and a civic grant of \$300.

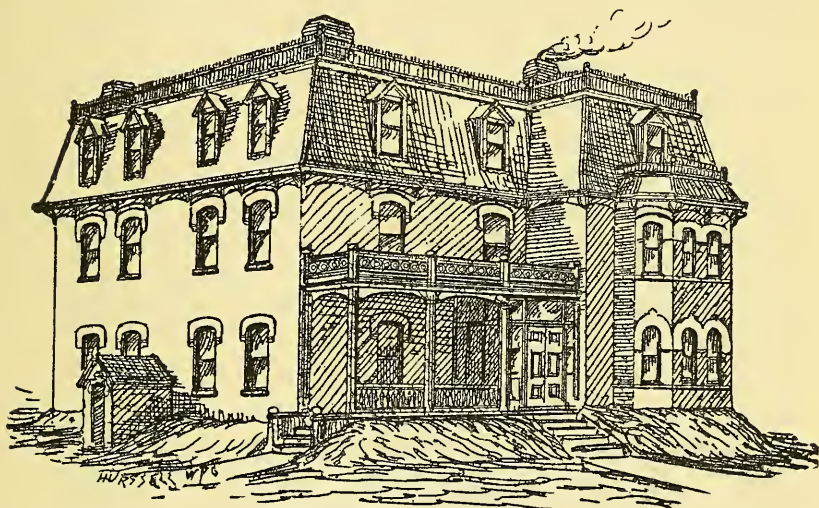
THE CHILDREN'S HOME.

Nothing appeals so strongly to the hearts of the benevolent as work among the children. To smooth the path of life for little footsteps will surely earn the blessing of Him who said, "Suffer little children to come unto me, and forbid them not, for of such is the kingdom of heaven."

It has been already said in the sketch of the Christian Women's Union that the Children's Home was commenced by that society in 1885, and conducted by it until 1887, when it became independent and obtained an Act of Incorporation of its own. Those who applied for this Act were the following officers: Mrs. Sarah McKilligan, first directress; Mrs. Georgina Smith, second directress; Mrs. Ella Ross, third directress; Mrs. Agnes Culver, secretary; Mrs. Lizzie Hunter, treasurer, and others to the number of thirty constituting the board of management. The annual membership fee was \$3; the fee for life membership, \$25.

The board was given power to contract with a parent placing a child under its care for absolute control of the child, unless the parent by paying a yearly amount towards its maintenance shows a desire to retain possession of his or her child. The children to be admitted into the home are boys under 6 years of age, and girls under 14, more or less destitute. Children over whom the board of management has absolute control are, if possible, given for adoption, and it may be of interest to know the terms on which adoptions are made: "When a person makes application for a child, two certificates of character, one from a clergyman and the other from a justice of the peace, are required to be furnished. Three months are generally allowed for approbation and, if everything is satis-

factory, an indenture, in duplicate, is signed by the contracting parties. The children must be well clothed and sent to school for a certain number of months in the year. Payments of five dollars per year are required until the child is 16 years old; fifteen dollars when the child shall have attained the age of 16 and twenty dollars when the child is 18 years of age. This sum is payable to the child, by the corporation, when the guardianship of the home ceases. A written annual statement of the condition and welfare of the



THE CHILDREN'S HOME

child is also required, so that the children are never lost sight of by the home during their years of minority."

The three buildings in which the children had successively been housed had all been found comfortless and inconvenient and at last, after much discussion as to a proper location, a very fine lot and private residence on River Avenue, Fort Rouge, was purchased in 1888. The house was almost rebuilt and extensively added to and when it was opened to receive the little ones there was a mortgage debt of \$3,000

upon it. This was a somewhat daring venture, but the promoters had great faith in the love of mankind for little children. Additions both to the lot and building have been made from time to time, and some years ago a pavilion was built on the grounds so that the children may be shaded from the sun when at their play. In the Jubilee year, 1897, a stone foundation was put under the home and a new kitchen and boys' dormitory were added.

In the home there is only room for 55 children, and it is nearly always filled to its utmost capacity. The children of school age attend the public school in Fort Rouge, and their teachers give a good account of them. They also accompany Miss Hynd, the matron, to divine service.

Almost ever since the home was removed to Fort Rouge Mr. E. F. Stephenson has conducted Sunday School there with his able coadjutor, Miss Nixon, and some other assistants. The Children's Home board have been most fortunate in their matron, Miss Hynd. Her loving, prayerful care and her individual study of each child has transformed a mere public institution into a true home for the little ones.

So many young children unable to do much for themselves necessitates the keeping of a staff of domestics, so that the institution is an expensive one, but it has the sympathy of the public and is well supported. Through the kindness of friends, too, the little ones never fail to have a merry Christmas time, and delightful sleigh rides during the winter, as well as their little picnics in the park and free rides on the street cars during the summer.

The chief difficulty the board has had to encounter has been the payment of the debt on their property, but this is now in a fair way of being discharged. They have still a mortgage of \$3,000, but they have \$2,000 in their building fund, and when the other thousand is reached the Children's Home will have a very valuable property without incumbrance.

Since the Act of Incorporation the officers have been : Patronesses, Lady Schultz and Mrs. Patterson; Lady Taylor, 1st directress, still in office; Mrs. A. M. Patton, at present acting directress; 2nd and 3rd directresses, Mesdames Taylor, Fisher, Cowley, Wesbrook, Patton, Hart, Ewart. Mrs. Culver, secretary now in office; Mrs. Nairn, assistant secretary. The board suffered loss in the death of its first treasurer, Mrs. M. T. Hunter, and of its second treasurer, Mrs. Jas. Fisher, when they had held office but a short time.

Mrs. Wickson has been treasurer since 1889. The society has a grant of \$500 from the Government and \$500 from the City Council.

THE PRISONERS' AID ASSOCIATION

was organized in 1890. Its object was to attend to the spiritual welfare of the prisoners of both sexes in Winnipeg during the period of their incarceration and to seek their reformation in every possible way, to provide for their comfort and to promote their interests on their discharge from prison, and to seek the improvements of prisons and police stations when found to be necessary.

Shortly after the organization of the association an Act of Incorporation was asked for and obtained.

This Act applies only to the City of Winnipeg and at the next sitting of the Legislature an amendment to the Act will be asked for extending the operation of the association to the Province of Manitoba.

The first officers were : Rev. Mr. Davis, president ; Mr. W. R. Mulock, treasurer ; Mr. Thomas Gill, secretary. The Rev. C. C. Owen is the present president. This association has a small Government grant.

ABERDEEN ASSOCIATION.

The formation of the Aberdeen Association was suggested on October 19th, 1890, in the first address given by the Countess of Aberdeen before a Winnipeg audience. During a trip taken by Lord and Lady Aberdeen through Southern Manitoba, they were struck by the lonely aspect of the prairie homes, and the dearth of reading matter everywhere apparent seemed to them a great privation, particularly for those who had been well educated and accustomed to read. The result of Lady Aberdeen's words on this subject was the formation of the parent branch of the association, at a meeting called on November 12th, 1890, at the Clarendon Hotel, where a number of ladies undertook to supply the lonely homes of the Northwest with instructive and entertaining literature, Lady Taylor was appointed president.

The task of supplying the whole of the Northwest with reading matter was found too much for the Winnipeg ladies to attempt and there are now twelve branches of the association throughout Canada, with headquarters in Ottawa. Even the literary resources of Canada were found too limited for the required supply, and a branch association was formed in England, with the Marchioness of Dufferin and Ava as president, and with free rooms in the Canadian Institute, London. Through the influence of Lady Aberdeen, the association is indebted to the post office authorities, the Dominion and Allan lines of steamers, and the Canadian Pacific and Grand Trunk railways for free transportation of parcels. The English railways give half fare rates.

But it is the work of the Winnipeg branch that we have chiefly to sketch on this occasion.

The local Government have kindly given the use of rooms in the Lands Titles Office for the reception and distribution of literature and from 300 to 400 parcels are sent out monthly. The secretary keeps up a correspondence with the re-

ipients of this literature and sometimes the description of the loneliness of prairie life given in the letters received by her are truly touching.

The association endeavors as far as possible to consult the taste of the different readers, and sometimes the senders are startled by such an instance as the following, which shows the necessity for the circulation of pure literature in our country. A young girl who had requested some reading to be sent to her home was asked by letter what kind of literature the family enjoyed most. She replied that they preferred sensational stories of the Jesse James type.

THE LITERATURE MOST USEFUL TO THE ABERDEEN
ASSOCIATION.

Weekly and monthly religious and church papers and periodicals of all denominations, in good condition ; agricultural, scientific and technical journals of the current year only ; fashionable papers of the current year only ; good magazines of any date, in good condition. Sets of magazines in consecutive numbers for the year are most valuable. Sunday School papers of all denominations for teachers and scholars, Christmas annuals and pictures, children's books of all kinds, standard works of history, biography, travel and fiction, all good books, French, German and Scandinavian and Gaelic literature for applicants speaking those languages ; daily papers are not required on account of their transient interest only. The denominational periodicals are sent to the charge of the different clergy in the Northwest to be judiciously distributed by them.

In the Jubilee year, 1897, packets of seed from the Experimental Farm, Ottawa, were sent through the association to its readers so that their homes might be beautiful by the growth of trees and flowering plants. A portrait of Queen Victoria, also sent through the association, now graces many of these homes on the plains.

The income of the association is derived from fees and subscriptions. The outlay for twine and wrappers amounts to quite a large sum during the year. Officers : Lady Taylor, president; Mrs. Wickson, acting president ; Mrs. Kirby, secretary; Miss Thomson, treasurer; Mrs. Wm. Clark, acting treasurer.

THE FREE KINDERGARTEN ASSOCIATION.

The Free Kindergarten Association, founded in 1892, gathers the poor children at the north end of the city into their school room in the old Swedish Church, Ellen Street. In the place of liberty to run about the streets, something good has to be given, so the ragged and hungry little ones are clothed, fed and provided with pleasant occupation of acknowledged educational value.

The work of the association is based upon the principles laid down by the founder of the kindergarten system, Frederick Froebel, and the promoters believe that the proper education of children during the first seven years of their lives does much to reduce poverty and crime in any community.

But the members of the Free Kindergarten Association do not limit their benevolent work to the children alone. They get acquainted with the homes of the little ones, visiting the mothers, tending the sick among them, and organizing mothers' meetings for their improvement. Special classes for sewing are held both for the mothers and little girls, and sometimes the members invite the mothers to a tea, a kindness that is much appreciated by these poor overwrought housewives. With the help of some of the gentlemen of the city Boys' Brigades have been recently organized in connection with the work, one for the smaller and one for the bigger boys. Already some signs of improvement are noticed among the rougher lads.

The services of Miss Barnett, the principal, have been in-

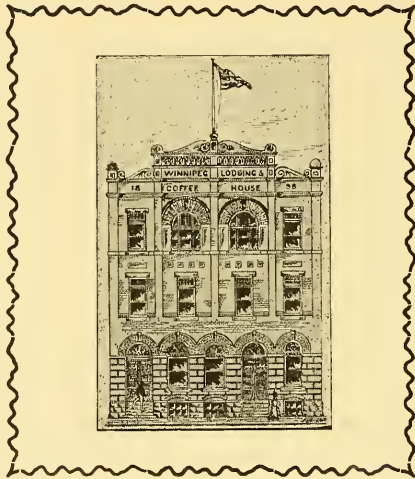
valuable, both in the school room and outside. She has the faculty of gaining the hearts both of the children and the mothers.

Miss Barnett has the assistance of two pupil teachers in her work. The school has an average daily attendance of sixty children. Some people think that when the kindergarten system is introduced into the public schools the work of this association will no longer be necessary, but this is quite a mistake. The Free Kindergarten members practice a kind of charity that would be quite outside the duties of the teachers in the public schools. The work of the association has been of great value among the foreign elements of our city. This association depends for its revenue on fees and subscriptions and many a weary step the members have to take in the interests of their sometimes empty treasury. We may imagine the joy of these ladies, when two years ago they became possessed of a piano at a moderate price. The City Council has promised a small grant (\$100) for this year, 1899. The presidents have been : Mrs. Dexter, Mrs. Fisher, Mrs. Godfrey Parker and Mrs. R. H. Bryce at present in office. Secretaries : Miss Colby (Mrs. Cook), Mrs. R. H. Bryce, Mrs. T. J. McBride, Mrs. Atkinson, Mrs. Chown, Mrs. Jardine, at present in office. Treasurers : Miss Dolly Maguire (Mrs. Hughes), Mrs. W. L. McKenzie, Mrs. Capt. Robinson, at present in office.

THE WINNIPEG LODGING AND COFFEE HOUSE ASSOCIATION.

This association for work among men was commenced by Holy Trinity Church in 1893, during the curacy of the Rev. J. Page. It was designed to provide a cheap boarding place for industrious men, and also to induce the idle to become industrious. The principle of the association is to give no assistance without some equivalent in work or payment. A

small building was rented in 1893 by Mr. Page and Capt. Graburn, with accommodation for about twelve men. A large building was rented in 1894 and soon after the work outgrew the bounds of a parochial undertaking, so that



THE WINNIPEG LODGING AND COFFEE HOUSE

it deserves a notice in a sketch of the public charities of Winnipeg. In order to place the institution on a broader basis a joint stock company was formed in 1898, with shares of \$10 each.

A substantial brick building was erected by this company on Lombard street, with a roomy woodyard for the employment of the men. The building was opened on the 1st of November, 1898. This lodging and coffee house, as it is called, is expected to be self-supporting, indeed, it is now more than paying its way—so it may soon be removed from the list of Winnipeg charities. These men have to pay for their beds 10c. and 15c, for their meals 5c., 10c, 15c., according to quality, making it possible to obtain 3 meals and a bed for 25c. a day. The new building has accommodation for 100

men. Since its opening it has had not less than 55 men sleeping there and sometimes it has over ninety.

The mission hall in the building is rented at \$12.50 a month.

Holy Trinity Church still looks after the spiritual welfare of the men and rents the mission hall for the holding of Sunday school, night school, Gospel services, etc. Mrs. Scott acts as deaconess in connection with the mission, and does untold good in a quiet way by relieving suffering and distress of all kinds. The association is desirous of having a lay worker to live in the building, and look after the spiritual welfare of the men. In the meantime this duty is taken in turn by some member of the brotherhood of St. Andrew, interested in the mission. Chairman of the association, Mr. J. H. Brock; secretary, Mr. H. Whitla; treasurer, Mr. E. H. Taylor.

SALVATION ARMY.

This body has been doing good work in Winnipeg since the early eighties, and it has at present two charitable institutions, a Rescue Home for Women, at 486 Young Street, and a Shelter for Men, 686 Main Street, with a wood yard, corner of Princess and Fonseca Street, in connection with the latter, for the employment of the men. The Rescue Home is also of the nature of an industrial home. As the Salvation Army does not publish any annual report of their institutions it is difficult to obtain information as to the means employed by them or the result of their work, but there is good reason for our faith in its beneficent nature. The Rescue Home has a Government and civic grant.

THE DOOR OF HOPE.

Since its establishment in the city the Women's Christian Temperance Union has engaged with great diligence in endeavoring to "rescue the perishing." Its latest enterprise is the Door of Hope. This institution was opened about two years ago under the auspices of the union, but recently it has been handed over to a managing board of ladies of the city. An experienced trained matron, Miss Boland, a short time ago came from New York to take charge of the home, which is situated at 468 Bannatyne Avenue. Its object is the reformation of the inebriate women we so frequently read of in the press reports of the police court and station.

The Door of Hope has met with a severe loss by the recent death of Mrs. George C. Mills, a most devoted temperance worker and one of the chief promoters of the institution.

The work of this institution is still in a tentative state, but we trust that its success will soon be assured.

GIRLS' HOME OF WELCOME ASSOCIATION.

The work of this association is designed to serve the double purpose of providing a good class of domestics for our community and of securing a shelter and protection for girls of that class coming without friends to the country. It also affords a boarding place for girls from the city or country when temporarily out of situations. A girl arriving at the home for the first time is allowed her board for 24 hours, afterwards she has to pay at the rate of \$2.50 a week.

The home owes its origin to Miss Fowler from London, who generously furnishes \$500 a year for three years and also her personal superintendence for the same length of time. The work of the home is conducted in harmony with the home

of the National Emigration Society of Montreal. The board of directors consist of 36 ladies with an advisory board of 7 gentlemen. Miss Fowler, who is sacrificing so much, naturally has an important voice in the management. The membership fee is \$1.00, the Government grant \$500. The chief difficulty the association has is to get a good class of domestics to come to the country. The members do not like to run the risk of furnishing the passage money, but in the short time the home has existed, it has been, and in future it ought to be, useful in connection with the Government immigration. The association does not yet possess a building of its own, and as the present roomy house on Assiniboine Avenue, allowed free of rent by the Hudson's Bay Company, is only fit for a summer residence, it is at present closed until the opening of the spring immigration. The officers are : President, Mrs. Parker ; vice-president, Mrs. W. H. Adams; secretary, Mrs. Bole ; treasurer, Mrs. Crotty.

THE CHILDREN'S AID ASSOCIATION.

In 1898 the local Legislature passed a statute called "An Act for the Better Protection of Neglected and Dependent Children." To insure the carrying out of this Act, an association was formed in this city called the "Children's Aid Association," and this is the youngest of our city charities. By the enactment, this association may be empowered by a county court judge or magistrate to take possession of any destitute orphan children, or any child that is being ill-used, neglected or corrupted by its parents or guardians. The name "child" applies in this Act to any boy under 14 or any girl under 16 years of age. The association is thus constituted guardian to such child.

The children are first taken to a temporary shelter on Mayfair Avenue, Fort Rouge, which has been rented by the

association and furnished at the expense of the Government and City Council, where they begin to learn the advantage of being clothed, fed and kindly treated. As soon as possible foster homes are got for them at a distance from their former evil environment, so that they may be likely to grow up respectable and useful citizens of the state. Since its recent commencement, the association has had 24 children under its care, 5 have been adopted and 7 placed in foster homes or otherwise provided for, and 11 are now in the shelter. The demand from the country for children is far greater than the supply. As the association is carrying out the enactment of the Government and also relieving the City Council of onerous burdens, liberal grants from each are expected. President, Mr. Daniel McIntyre; secretary, Dr. Blakely; treasurer, Mr. W. M. Johnstone.

WOMAN'S COUNCIL.

Most of the Women's Associations are affiliated with the local Council of Women of Winnipeg, organized by Lady Aberdeen. At the annual meeting of the council short accounts of each society are read and the members have thus an opportunity of getting interested in each other's undertakings.

OTHER CHARITIES.

It is not within the scope of this paper to give an account of the temporary work of the city relief committee or the benevolence and charity of the different organizations of the Freemasons, Oddfellows, Foresters, United Workmen and the like, which in their active charity or their bequeathment and other benefits do so much to relieve suffering. The latter are private charities, and their reports are not accessible. The

benevolent Scottish and other national associations are helpful in relieving the necessities of their poor and needy fellow countrymen, but their work does not require buildings and so, though it is very real, it is not easily seen.

Time forbids to notice the work of ladies' charitable societies, young people's associations and other bands of Christian workers connected with the churches. These are all doing excellent service, and exemplify one of the truest works of a living Christianity, which is to "remember the poor," and to "visit the fatherless and the widows in their affliction."



TRANSACTION No. 55

506.712
JULY 14TH, 1900

**The Historical and Scientific Society
of Manitoba**

**THE PRESENT STATUS OF NATURAL SCIENCE
IN MANITOBA AND THE NORTHWEST**

— BY —

REV. W. A. BURMAN, B.D.

PRESIDENT OF THE SOCIETY

WINNIPEG :

MANITOBA FREE PRESS COMPANY

1900

The Present Status of Natural Science in Manitoba and the Northwest.

I have been led to select this subject for consideration, **FIRST**—by a strong conviction of its importance.

In a new land like this, with so many things of a practical character constantly and urgently demanding attention, there is a danger of our overlooking, or underrating, those branches of knowledge, which, to a superficial observer, do not at first sight appear to have a commercial or practical value. Yet in no country can those branches of knowledge, commonly called the Natural Sciences, be of more importance than in our own,—a country almost altogether agricultural in its character. Here, if anywhere, there must be between man and Nature, either alliance or contest. We must either woo the forces of Nature, making use of them for the maintenance of life, the upbuilding of an empire,—the true prosperity of individuals ; or we must prepare to contest with the various adverse developments of those forces, for the right to live in, and to rule and enjoy, this portion of the world.

To either rule or combat these forces and influences, the first essential is knowledge ; and it is a truth, now fortunately receiving fuller recognition than ever, that the sciences now to be dealt with, cannot be ignored by the agriculturist or by an agricultural people like ourselves. Therefore, as President of this Society, which is Scientific as well as Historic, I am anxious to attempt to call attention to these most important sciences,—to indicate, as well as I can within the limits of a single paper, what has been, and is being, done ; and to incite it may be, some to attempt some field of labor, to which we have such abundant and promising invitations. *Abundant* they are—for all about us lies work, as we shall

see, most fascinating, and easy of access ; *promising*, too, because so rich in interest and varied in character; and fraught with even financial values to the country, which none can afford to despise .

SECONDLY—I do it as an attempt to meet, in part at least, the demand for information by present or would-be students of Nature here. There is a clamour for information regarding the natural sciences—methods of work, and for literature bearing upon the geology, flora, fauna, etc., of this country, which augurs well for the future of these branches. It is hoped that this paper, and especially perhaps the list of authorities and works to be hereto appended, may prove a useful contribution to supplying the present need.

LASTLY—I am led to this subject by a personal interest in Nature-study ; which has afforded me so much of both sincere pleasure, and genuine profit, that I would fain entice others to enter this domain, that they, too, may taste the delights of the enchanted land. Given a love of Nature, quickened powers of observation, with a keen sense of the beautiful ; and of the all-pervading presence of Him “who hath made all things beautiful in His time”—and I know no recreation that will so truly *recreate*, and yield such unalloyed and elevating pleasures, as can be found in the pursuit of some branch of Nature-study.

It is a great delight to all lovers of Nature to note the attention being given to Nature-study in our public schools. Whatever else it may do, it cannot fail to impress some young minds for life ; and to beget in them a passion for Nature, which shall inspire them to research and labours profitable to this great Dominion, and win for them the honour and esteem of a grateful people.

The Sciences to be reviewed are as follows :—Meteorology, Geology, Botany, Zoology, Ornithology and Entomology, with their several branches. I shall give, first, a brief history of the work done in the past in Manitoba and the Northwest, more especially, perhaps, the former. Indicate, secondly, what is now being attempted ; and, thirdly, what special lines of study seem to call for particular and early attention.

I. As to the first, it is clearly impossible in our limited space to do more than glance at the labours of the earlier

explorers, whose work is to be found scattered through various histories and reports.

The first to which I would refer was that of Sir John Franklin—a name of much personal interest to myself, as he was educated within a stone's throw of my birthplace, in an old school established by Edward VI.

Sir John Franklin came to Canada in 1825, and explored the country between Lake Superior and the mouth of the Mackenzie River.

Very full scientific collections were made, and the results as regards botany, may be found in the invaluable catalogue of the Geological Survey of Canada. Four large quarto volumes were issued; the first three in 1829, the fourth in 1837, giving descriptions of the wild animals, birds, fishes and insects collected in the Northwest—under the title of “Richardson's Fauna Boreali—Americana.” I believe Vol. 4, on Insects, has been republished in Canada by the Entomological Society.

The Palliser expedition, 1857-60, did much work and Dr. Hector (afterwards Sir James Hector) and Mons. Bourgeau, added largely to the knowledge of the geology and botany respectively, of the Northwest.

In 1857 also, S. G. Dawson, C. E., and Professor H. Y. Hind, began exploration in the Northwest, for the Canadian Government. Their report, published in 1859, contained a great amount of valuable scientific information. The expedition of Captain Back to the Great Fish River also deserves notice.

When the “transfer” became an established fact in 1872, the Geological Survey began a series of explorations which are still being continued. In 1872, probably, Dr. A. R. C. Selwyn, Director of the Survey, made a *geological* reconnaissance from Lake Superior, by way of English and Winnipeg Rivers, to Fort Garry. Notes of this were published, together with those of Dr. R. Bell, in the Report of Progress for 1872-3.

The next year these gentlemen extended their observations to the Rocky Mountains.

The “Sandford Fleming” expedition, in 1872, contributed largely to a fuller knowledge of the geology, flora and fauna of this Province and the West. Its results are recorded in the

Canadian Pacific Railway Report for 1874. Since then almost every year has seen extensive lines of work undertaken by the Geological Survey ; under its able Director, Dr. Selwyn, Dr. G. M. Dawson, his successor, and Dr. R. Bell, Professors J. Macoun, J. Richardson, J. F. Whiteaves, R. G. McConnell, J. M. Macoun, Dr. J. Fletcher, J. B. Tyrrell, A. P. Low, A. C. Lawson, D. B. Dowling, L. M. Lambe, J. B. Tyrrell, and others.

The Survey has taken up every branch of natural science; and the splendid Reports and other publications issued by it, are invaluable to the scientific world. In 1898 they already numbered 655 titles. For these I would refer to the "List of Publications of the Geological Survey of Canada," Ottawa, 1898.

The same work also contains a most valuable list of works reprinted by the Department, from the transactions of the Royal Society of Canada ; and scientific journals.

Without wishing to make any invidious distinction between the work done by the above authorities, I should like to mention as very helpful in geology, two papers by Mr. J. F. Whiteaves, one on "The Devonian System in Canada," delivered before the American Association, 1899 ; the other on "The Cretaceous System of Canada," Royal Society of Canada, 1893. These works are valuable as giving a list of the workers and literature upon these two systems, both of which are found in this Province and are there referred to.

In Palæontology, the Survey has issued a most interesting paper (1899) by Mr. L. M. Lambe, on Canadian Palæzoic corals.

In Botany, the "Catalogue of Canadian Plants," by Professor J. Macoun, is of special value, as it gives the known ranges of all plants, as ascertained up to the date of publication. This has been supplemented by various contributions by Mr. J. M. Macoun, giving additional data collected from 1894 to 1897.

Perhaps no individual worker has done so much actual field-work in Manitoba and the Northwest as Prof. Macoun. In 1872, he was with Sandford Fleming's party ; in 1875, botanist with Dr. Selwyn ; in 1879, he had charge of a party to explore West of Fort Ellice. In 1880, 1885, 1889 to 1891 and 1894 to 1897 he explored in the prairie regions and foot-

hills of the Rocky Mountains ; collecting plants, birds, mammals and reptiles. The plants he has already elucidated, and I have reason to believe this able observer has much-needed works upon our birds, mammals and reptiles well under way. He has already given partial lists in his valuable work on "*Manitoba and the Great Northwest.*"

It will now be better to take each branch in turn and attempt to sketch briefly its present status.

METEOROLOGY.

This is a most important subject to an agricultural country. I am unable to say when the systematic observation of the weather began in Manitoba, but it was probably about 1871. Prior to this some valuable observations had been made and recorded by the late Hon. Donald Gunn. These were published by the Smithsonian Institute. Reports on the Climatology also appear in the records of the Dawson and Back expeditions. The work is now done under the direction of the Dominion Meteorological Service, a branch of the Department of Marine and Fisheries. Observations are taken at 67 stations in Manitoba and the Northwest, extending as far North as Herschel Island, in the Arctic Ocean. These stations vary much in the amount of work done, and are classified accordingly, as follows:—

1. Chief Stations—all ordinary observations are taken every four hours. St. John's College, Winnipeg, until lately, belonged to this class.

2. Telegraph Stations—with observations thrice daily—the first and last being telegraphed at once to Toronto. There are six such stations in the Northwest Territories and one in Manitoba.

3. Ordinary Stations of the 1st Class—where records are made of barometrical pressure, temperature, direction and velocity of the wind, sunshine, precipitation, etc.

4. 2nd Class Stations, where barometer and sunshine records are not kept; otherwise same as 1st Class.

5. 3rd Class Stations, where records are kept of the fall of rain and snow, and the general state of the weather.

The work at most of these points is done voluntarily, by persons interested in this branch of science ; who deserve the thanks of the country for very valuable services rendered.

The reports from the nine telegraph stations are used in Toronto for use in the daily forecasts, which, while useful here, are of special value to mariners on sea and lake, in other parts of the Dominion.

The records from all stations are tabulated and printed monthly, and are most interesting to all students of the climatic conditions of the country.

GEOLOGY.

I have already said something about the work of the Geological Survey. The staff has done a splendid service to the country ; whether in field work, which has involved great hardship, and often perilous journeys, in face of all kinds of difficulties ; or in the research involved in the study of collections and the preparation of admirable reports. The present Directors—Dr. G. M. Dawson, Mr. Whiteaves (in Palæontology), Mr. Lambe, and Mr. J. B. Tyrrell, have been prolific writers. Some of their works will appear in the list to be given.

We must here pay a special tribute to the late Sir William Dawson, a member of this Society, whose grand personality and magnificent work in almost every branch of Natural Science, has made his name almost a household word in Canada. In common with the rest of the Dominion, the West has benefitted greatly by his labours and researches in the fields of Geology and Palæontology ; and we do well to honour his memory, and place on record, as we have done, our keen sense of the loss the whole country has sustained in his death.

Among local workers in Geology since 1880 have been the late Professor J. H. Panton, for a time engaged in educational work in this city. He made a careful study of the Cambro-Silurian limestone of Stony Mountain, and the Cretaceous rocks near Medicine Hat. Fossil collections were made from both these deposits. He published a very interesting paper, read before this Society (Trans. No. 3), on "Gleanings from the Geology of the Red River Valley."

Mr. A. McCharles did some collecting in fossils some years ago ; and the present respected Secretary of the Board of Trade, Mr. C. N. Bell, in his paper on "Our Northern Waters," has given some interesting information on the minerals, etc., of the Hudson Bay regions.

The most active worker, however, has been our esteemed member and one of the founders, of this Society, Dr. G. Bryce, who has done so much to keep this Society alive and up to its work. Apart from his historical researches, the Professor has done much in Geology and Mineralogy.

Since 1884 he has investigated the Huronian Rocks and mineral deposits of the Lake of the Woods, examined the valley of the Red River with Mr. Upham ; the coal deposits of Souris and Estevan ; the Tertiary sandstone of the Souris Valley ; the Cambro-Silurian formation of the Lower Red River and Stony Mountain, and also at Banff.

Notes of this work have appeared in the following papers of this Society :—"Surface Geology of Manitoba," "Older Geology of Red River Valley," and "The Lake of the Woods," and a paper on the "Tertiary Sandstone of the Souris," in the Dominion Monthly. Professor Kenrick, of St. John's College, in his capacity as analyst and assayer, has given great attention to our minerals. A list of minerals treated by him appears in the appendix. Professor Laird has, we believe, done much in the way of study in palæontology, etc., and we should welcome a paper from him on this, or any other branch.

This seems a fitting place to mention the part being taken by our University, and the public schools, in promoting the study of this and other branches of Natural Science ; which cannot fail to have an influence on the future of these subjects. Besides Chemistry and Physics, with which I am not dealing in this paper, the subjects taken up are :—Geology, Palæontology and Mineralogy, Zoology, and Botany (Structural and Systematic.)

The results of all this work may be thus briefly enumerated :—

1st. A general idea of the conformation and strata of the whole country from Lake of the Woods to the Yukon River.

2nd. The determination of large areas of coal, iron, gold and other precious minerals.

3rd. The elucidation of a large number of fossils of fauna and flora from Manitoba and the Northwest Territories, as follows :—From the “Devonian System,” 117 specimens (fauna only). From “Cretaceous System,” 179 species (fauna); and from the same 98 species of plants.

4. The figures for the Cretacean apply only up to 1893. Since that date, Mr. L. M. Lambe, of the Geological Survey, has made extensive investigations of the Cretaceous rocks of the Belly and Red Deer Rivers. These have revealed remains of a most interesting character, Reptilian, Crocodilian, Dinosaurian, etc. Last year Mr. Lambe completed Part I. of a work on the “Palæozoic Corals” of Canada (Geological Survey, No. 684,) describing many found in our region. The economic results are already very great and invite to a thorough prosecution of this work by our western people, as well as by the Dominion Government. While individuals, whose tastes may lie in this direction, can and should pursue the study of the geology of the country, with its various departments, to their own pleasure and the country’s good, I believe the time has come when the Provincial Government should make some provision for carrying out a thorough system of investigation into the geological formation and mineral resources of the country; the acquirement of all available material to illustrate the same; and to have a suitable building, properly maintained, in which can be stored and exhibited all that is needed to illustrate, not only the geology of our Province, but its flora and fauna also, as well as the ethnology of our native races so fast being lost for ever. This Society has done something in this line, but its resources and quarters have been far too limited for proper work.

It is little less than criminal to allow a Province which has reached such a stage as we have in Manitoba, to go on without a museum belonging to the people, in which may be stored, and safely preserved, valuable specimens and literature, bearing on both the natural history and ethnology of this Province.

Connected with it should be also a branch of the Agricultural Department, where could be exhibited everything that would tend to throw light upon the agricultural resources of the country, its forest products, etc.

I venture to say that a sum of not less than \$10,000 per

year can and ought to be given by the Government of the country for this work, until we have an institution worthy of us as a progressive and intelligent people.

It would mean less than five cents per head of our present population. Surely that amount can be spared. Indeed, I am one of those who think we cannot afford *not* to give this matter immediate and full attention. Its economic and educational value would be immense. There should be a fire-proof building on some central site, capable of extension and suitable in every way for the work to be done. In it, even this and kindred societies might be given shelter ; and I even believe it might be well for the city to co-operate and have within its walls quarters for the Free City Library, which must soon be provided, and which could find no better place than as a wing or portion of a Provincial Museum, of which every citizen might be proud.

I trust that every member of this Society and all intelligent citizens will urge this matter upon our Provincial and Municipal Governments, until there will be no doubt in the minds of those in power that this movement is as desirable as it is popular, and will therefore be heartily supported by the people.

I hope this Society will take definite action in this matter at once.

In this connection I venture to quote the words of a practical and eminent man of business, Mr. B. E. Walker, President of one of our leading banks.

His words demand the careful attention of every man interested in the development of this country, and fully support the position I have taken above :—

“Mr. Walker, in an interesting paper read before the Canadian Institute, makes a convincing plea for the promotion, by governments throughout the Dominion, of a greater amount of Geological, Palæontological and Botanical exploration. He proposes, also, state museums, which should be a sort of visible summary of the knowledge already acquired, or to be acquired in the future.

“What Mr. Walker suggests is, briefly this :—

“In conclusion I should like to say a few words as to what we might reasonably expect in the way of Dominion and Provincial surveys. We should have the Dominion and

Provincial surveys working out the topography in a far more minute manner and on a greatly larger scale than at present. We should never again send out a topographic party, a boundary party, or a land surveyor laying out a base line, without being accompanied by trained geologists and naturalists. The history of our own Northern Ontario is an example of what we have failed to accomplish in this respect. We should not only publish annually such broad truths of geology and natural history as are gathered during these rapid topographic surveys, but we should be engaged in our provincial surveys on reports dealing with the features of each county separately, and in our Dominion Survey in working out special problems of geologic or other scientific interest. For instance, in the United States there are many complete monographs dealing with the iron ores of different localities, or the coal, or natural gas, or the forestry conditions, or other problems of great commercial importance. Have we no curiosity about our own great areas of iron ore, our really wonderful coal fields, and our other minerals? Should we not appreciate intelligent monographs on the treatment of refractory ores, on modern mining machinery, on brick-making, salt wells, gas wells, and the many other things so intelligently presented to the people by the state in more favored countries? Of course we should. Let our government but try.

“And as to public museums. The Dominion Government at Ottawa and each province, at its city of chief importance, should have a museum belonging to and supported by the people. These museums should contain exhibits of the metallic and non-metallic minerals of the country, both those of economic and of merely scientific value, the forest trees, with the bark preserved, in, say, six feet sections, cut also and partly polished, and each specimen accompanied by a small map showing its habitat; the fresh water and sea fishes, mounted after the modern methods; the fur-bearing animals, the game birds, and the birds of our forests, fields and sea-coast, many of them mounted so as to tell a child their habits at a glance; the reptiles, crustaceans, insects, plants, indeed, as complete a record of the fauna and flora of the country as possible; the rocks of stratigraphic importance, and all the varieties of fossils which can be gathered in this country; the

archæological and ethnological evidences of the races we have supplanted in Canada, and much more that does not occur to me at the moment. I should not like to suggest a limit of expenditure on such museums. The necessity of a new building at Ottawa is admitted. The crime of leaving exposed to fire, in a wretched building never intended to protect anything of value, the precious results of over fifty years of collecting, has been pointed out in a recent official report."

We now pass on to BOTANY.

BOTANY.

In this science a considerable amount of work has been done by both Government explorers and private collectors. The work of Professor J. Macoun has been already referred to as most thorough and valuable. The catalogue prepared by him, and issued by the Geological Survey (for sale by Dawson, Montreal), is indispensable to the student of our native plants. The collections of Dr. Jas. Fletcher, now Botanist and Entomologist to the Department of Agriculture, are next in value as regards this Province. Large collections have, of course, been made by all the expeditions before referred to, and by later explorers connected with the Geological Survey. Mr. J. M. Macoun has made some journeys to the Northwest for this special purpose, and has added considerably to the available material.

Of local collectors I can only give a partial list. In the Territories, Mr. N. B. Sanson has made a fine collection of plants at Banff. Mr. T. N. Willing, Territorial Weed Inspector, Mr. P. C. Gregson, Waghorn, Secretary of the Northwest Entomological Society, Mr. A. Gaetz, Red Deer, Mr. E. B. Hutcheson, High School, Regina, Mr. J. F. Boyce, High School, Calgary, Mr. Hutchison, Oxbow, Inspectors J. A. Calder, Regina, and J. E. Perrett, Edmonton, and the Rev. C. W. Brydon, Willoughby, have all done work, and some have excellent collections. The Rev. I. O. Stringer has sent in a considerable number of plants from Herschel Island, off the mouth of the Mackenzie, where he has lived as a missionary.

In Manitoba a good many collectors have been at work in recent years, especially those connected with various schools. Without pretending to give anything like a complete list, I

may mention the following : Dr. Bryce, Messrs. A. E. Garrett and H. S. McLean, of the Collegiate Institute, Winnipeg; Inspector McIntyre, now resident in Winnipeg, who collected around Brandon ; Mr. J. Wadge, of that city ; Mr. Denike, of Cypress River ; Miss Cope, Carberry ; H. B. McGregor, Reston, and various members of the Botanical Club of Manitoba, of which I have the honour to be President.

Deserving of special mention is Mr. Norman Criddle, of Aweme, a young worker of great promise, who has made exquisite paintings of over 200 species of flowers. During the past year Mr. T. C. McCalla, of Hamilton, made large collections of plants at Banff.

My own work, covering some 18 years, has been chiefly devoted to the collection and study of the Phanerogams and Pteridophytes, of which I now have many hundreds of species. In the former, most orders are well represented, except Cyperaceæ-Juncaceæ, etc. A good deal of material has also been accumulated in the Bryophytes, but lack of leisure has prevented its being worked up.

The field covered has been Manitoba generally, except the extreme S.E. portions and Prince Albert, and thence to Battleford, and along the C. P. R. as far west as Banff.

A most inviting though rather difficult field of research is still open in the Carices, Lichens, Mosses, Fungi and Algæ of our Province.

Outside of the reports already referred to, the literature on the subject is not extensive. Gray's Manual (of the Northern U.S.) and that of G. Coulter, for the Rocky Mountains, in part cover the flora of the west, and are our chief authorities. Spotton's High School Botany is useful for Phanerogams, though it lacks in fullness. A complete Flora of Manitoba and the Northwest is still greatly needed. One of the objects of the Manitoba branch of the Botanical Club of Canada is the preparation of a preliminary list of plants found in the Province. Any help that can be given in that direction will be much appreciated. As a help in this direction the Club undertakes to determine any plants collected by its members.

ENTOMOLOGY.

Mention has already been made of the work of Dr.

James Fletcher in entomology. Beside a large amount of general work among the Lepidoptera, he has visited the Province to investigate the grasshoppers and insects injurious to agriculture and forestry. Reports on the latter have appeared in the Reports of the Experimental Farms maintained by the Dominion, and articles on the Lepidoptera have appeared in "The Canadian Naturalist," the organ of the Entomological Society of Ontario. This journal has also published valuable papers by local collectors and others on insects of the west.

In the Northwest a promising work has been begun by the "Northwest Entomological Society," Mr. P. B. Gregson, of Waghorn, being President. Its objects are—

1st. The investigation and classifying of the fauna and flora of the Northwest.

2nd. The study of the economic relations of entomology and botany to agriculture.

It is doing this work by means of papers, lectures, etc. It has now a membership of about fifty.

Mr. N. H. Cowdry, Mr. Willing, F. H. Wolley-Dod, Calgary; N. B. Sanson, Banff, and Mr. G. F. Dippie, of Toronto, have collected extensively in the region from Calgary to Banff, each in his own locality.

Mr. Coubeaux has collected in all orders of insects at St. Louis and Prince Albert, and Mr. Gregson south of Edmonton. The Society just referred to hopes to publish a list of the Lepidoptera of the Calgary district shortly.

In Manitoba we have the following workers:—

Mr. A. W. Hanham, Winnipeg (Lepidoptera and Coleiptera); G. Chagnon (now of Montreal), (Coleoptera); A. G. Dennis, Beulah (Lepidoptera and Coleiptera); Norman Criddle, Aweme (general); E. F. Heath, Cartwright (Lepidoptera); H. Hutchinson, Kinosota (Lepidoptera); L. E. Marmont, Rounthwaite (Lepidoptera); H. W. O. Boger, Brandon (Lepidoptera).

Mr. Hanham has made extensive collections around Winnipeg and in other parts of the Province, in Lepidoptera, Micro-Lepidoptera and Coleoptera, to which his attention has

been confined. The following list will give some idea of the extent of his work —

	Species.
Lepidoptera, Diurnals named	100
Sphingidæ and Bombycidæ, named. . .	120
Noctuidæ, named	370
Noctuidæ, unnamed	50
Geometridæ, named.	140
Geometridæ, unnamed	15
Micro-Lepidoptera, 30% only named..	130
	<hr style="width: 10%; margin-left: auto; margin-right: 0;"/> 925
Coleoptera, named	800
Coleoptera, unnamed	200
	<hr style="width: 10%; margin-left: auto; margin-right: 0;"/> 1000
Total species	<hr style="width: 10%; margin-left: auto; margin-right: 0;"/> 1925

This is a large number, and it will be a surprise to many to learn that we have such a wealth of insect life all about us.

Mr. Hanham has amongst his captures both Noctuidæ and Geometridæ new to science. The former have been named by Professor J. B. Smith, of New Brunswick (N. Jersey), the chief authority on American Noctuids, and the Geometridæ by Rev. G. D. Hulst, of Brooklyn, N.Y. Mr. Hanham published lists of our local butterflies in the Canadian Entomologist in 1895 and 1897. Since that time he has published lists of Manitoba moths, with notes (Noctuidæ, Sphingidæ and Bombycidæ). The Geometers will be published shortly in the same journal. Very interesting notes have also been written by Mr. Hanham on "Collecting at Light" and "Collecting at Bloom" Vol. 30 (98), p. 33, 65-188. (Mr. Hanham has also made a good collection of our land shells, which are rather numerous.)

Mr. Chagnon in 1896-7 published in "Le Naturaliste," a list of 300 species of beetles collected in Manitoba. Mr. Heath has been a frequent contributor to the Canadian Entomologist. He has been fortunate in his locality at Cartwright, which seems to be a meeting-place of forms from the

north, south, east and west. He has taken these *Papilio Oregonia*, hitherto considered peculiar to the Pacific Coast.

In addition to extending the range of this and other species, Mr. Heath has discovered a new moth, *Asterocopus borealis*, Smith, now in the U.S. National Museum, and probably also a new butterfly, a species of *Thecla*, as yet undescribed.

A list of works on our insects or useful to students of the same, will be published as an appendix to this paper.

ZOOLOGY.

The standard work on our Northwest fauna has hitherto been Sir John Richardson's "Fauna Borealis Americana." Professor J. Macoun has given much attention to the subject and as before stated, is working up the mammals, reptiles and birds for publication. In his "Manitoba and the Northwest" (1882), the Professor gives lists of species known to that date. The following synopsis of the mammals is taken from that work :—

	<i>Families</i>	<i>Genera</i>	<i>Species</i>
Carnivora (Flesh Eaters)	4	11	26
Ungulata (Hoofed Mammals)	1	8	10
Chiroptera (the Bats)	1	2	2
Insectivora (Insect Eaters)	1	1	5
Rodentia (the Rodents)	7	17	32
Total Orders	14	39	75

The "Contributions to Natural Science," published by the Smithsonian Institution, Washington, contain, I believe, a good deal of material upon our mammals, but I have not been able to consult them.

Local Investigators.—Mr. E. E. Thompson, formerly of Carberry, has given considerable attention to the mammals, and has published several works, some being papers prepared for this Society.

Some work has been done in the Northwest by amateurs, amongst whom are Mr. Coubeaux.

In Manitoba we are fortunate in having an enthusiastic worker, in Mr. G. E. Atkinson, of Portage la Prairie, who is now investigating the mammals of the Province.

There is much to be done in this field.

ORNITHOLOGY

We need not again refer to Professor Macoun's labours, beyond saying that in his work just quoted he gives a preliminary list of birds, numbering 235 species.

Elliott Cones made a collection in this Province about 1873 or 1874 and published a report on the same in 1874.

In 1874 the late Archbishop Tache published a list of birds.

In 1891 E. E. Thompson's list of 266 species from Manitoba was published by the Smithsonian Institute.

Mr. Atkinson, to whom I just referred, is a most enthusiastic ornithologist. He has collected about 1,000 birds in Manitoba. He has recently completed the mounting of 278 specimens, comprising about 190 species, intended for the Paris Exposition. Amongst his own collection are to be found 50 rare species. Some of these he declines to sell at any price, unless they are to be placed in a Provincial Museum.

Mr. Atkinson's two papers on "Game Birds" and "Birds of Prey," published by this Society, quite maintain his reputation as a practical ornithologist.

I conclude this sketch with a reference to ICHTHOLOGY—the study of fishes. In this field there is much to be done. Professor Macoun, whose work I must again quote (p. 377), gives a list of 42 species of fishes of the west, with some reserve, as no authorities on the subject were then attainable.

I fancy there is still the same lack of literature and that there is great need for a simple yet scientific treatment of our fishes. May I invite some member of this Society to take up the task? One must not forget to mention here the paper published upon our Manitoba fish by Mr. La Touche Tupper. In the account of Captain Back's journey to the Great Fish River, appear some notes on fishes.

Through the courtesy of Professor E. E. Prince, Commissioner of Fisheries, I have received a list of the most notable works on Canadian fishes. None of these deal specially with our Northern and Western fresh water fishes. In the appendix I place the titles of some papers which may be consulted on the subject.

It will be observed that I have made no reference to chemistry or the ethnology of our native races. Of the former I do not feel qualified to write, the latter is not only outside the scope of this paper, but much too large a subject to be handled now.

In conclusion, I must express my obligations to the various friends who have assisted me in the preparation of this paper, both the officers of the Geological Survey, Dr. Fletcher, and some of my co-workers in this Province. If I have inadvertently omitted to mention any name that deserves a place in this record of workers, I must beg the indulgence of the reader. I am quite aware of much imperfection in this paper, prepared as it has been amid the pressure of many duties, and am sorry I could not do the subject more justice.

I shall, however, be glad if this poor effort contributes in any small degree to arouse and keep alive any interest in the subjects of which it treats, in this land of great possibilities and opportunities to the student of Nature.

APPENDIX.

GEOLOGY, PALÆONTOLOGY, ETC.

1. Report of Palliser Expedition. Sir James Hector, 1857.
2. Dawson Expedition Report, 1859.

Publications of the Geological Survey, as follows:—

3. Report, 1872-3. Dr. A. R. C. Selwyn. Notes of a Geological Reconnaissance from Lake Superior to Fort Garry, by the English and Winnipeg Rivers. R. Bell, —“On the Country between Lake Superior and Lake Winnipeg.”
4. Report of Progress, 1873-74. Dr. A. R. C. Selwyn and R. Bell.
5. Report of Progress, 1874-75. R. Bell and J. W. Spencer.
6. Report of Progress, 1875-76. Dr. Selwyn, J. Marvin, J. F. Whiteaves, J. L. Le Conte, etc.
7. Report of Progress, 1877-78. R. Bell—Report on Country between Lake Winnipeg and Hudson’s Bay.
8. Explorations of Churchill and Nelson Rivers. R. Bell. Fossils, etc., by J. F. Whiteaves. Botany, J. Macoun.
9. Report of Progress, 1879-80. G. M. Dawson. Port Simpson to Edmonton, etc. R. Bell—Hudson’s Bay, etc. Fossils, Plants, etc.
10. Report of Progress, 1882-84. G. M. Dawson. Bow and Belly Rivers, R. Bell—Athabasca River Basin, etc. R. Bell—Hudson’s Bay and Labrador. List of Plants, Mammals, Birds, Crustaceæ, etc.
11. Annual Report, 1885. R. G. McConnell—Cypress Hills, etc. E. D. Cope—Vertebræ of Cypress Hills, etc. A. C. Lawson—Geology of Lake of Woods. D. P. Low—Lake Mistassini, etc.

12. Annual Report, 1886. J. B. Tyrrell—Northern Alberta.
J. Fletcher—List of Lepidoptera collected by the same.
A. P. Low—Between Lake Winnipeg and Hudson's Bay.
R. Bell—Attawapiskat and Albany Rivers.
13. Annual Report, 1887-8. G. M. Dawson—Exploration of Yukon District ; Appendices on Flora, Fauna, etc.
A. P. Low—James Bay and Country East ; Appendices, List of Plants, Fauna, etc.
14. Annual Reports, 1888-9. W. Upham—Glacial Lake Agassiz ; Manitoba.
15. Annual Reports, 1890-1. R. G. McConnell—Athabasca, etc. J. B. Tyrrell—N.W. Manitoba, etc.
16. Annual Report, 1894. D. B. Dowling—Basin of Beren's River ; Keewatin.
17. Annual Report, 1895. J. B. Tyrrell & G. B. Dowling—Athabasca Lake to Churchill River.
18. 1896. J. B. Tyrrell and J. B. Dowling—N.W. Coast of Hudson Bay, etc.
19. Dr. G. M. Dawson—Geology of Bow and Belly Rivers, 1882. Exploration in Yukon District, 1898. Geology and Resources of Region, new Log Parallel from Lake of Woods to Rocky Mountains, 1875.
20. D. Rüst — Radiolaria from Pierre Formation, N. W. Manitoba, 1892.
21. A. D. Cope—Vertebrata from Lower Miocene, etc., Cypress River, 1891. Eight New Species of Fossils, from Cambr.-Silurian of Manitoba, 1889. New Fossils from the Devonian of Manitoba, 1890. Orthoceratidæ of Trenton Limestone of the Winnipeg Basin, 1891. Ammonites of Cretaceous Rocks, Athabasca, 1892. Cretaceous System in Canada, 1893. New Species of Fossils from Silurian of S.E. Saskatchewan, 1891. The Devonian System in Canada, Roe, Amer. Assoc. Advancement of Science, 1899.
22. J. F. Whiteaves—Invertebrata of Laramie and Cretaceous Rocks of Bow and Belly Rivers, etc., 1885. Fossils of Devonian Rocks, Mackenzie River, 1891. Fossils of Devonian Rocks, Lake Manitoba, etc., 1892.

23. L. M. Lambe—Palæozoic Corals, 1899. Report Geol. Survey on the Fossils from Cretaceous Rocks, Red Deer R., Alberta, 1898.

Transactions of Manitoba Historical and Scientific Society :—

24. No. 3. J. Hoyes Panton, M.A.—Geology of Red River Valley.
25. No. 42. Rev. Prof. G. Bryce, LL.D.—“ Older Geology of the Red River and Assiniboine Valleys.”
26. No. 49. Same author—“ The Lake of the Woods.”
27. Ludwig Kumlein — U. S. National Museum, No. 15, 1879. Naturalist's Notes, Howgate Polar Expedition to Cumberland Sound, etc., 1884.
28. C. N. Bell—“ Our Northern Waters.”

Note.—The two last-named treat of all branches of Natural History.

BOTANY, ETC.

29. Catalogue of Canadian Plants, Geological Survey, 1883-
J. Macoun—Vol. I, Exogens. Vol. II. Endogens and
Aerogens. Vol. III., Musci, J. Macoun and N. C.
Kindberg. Hepaticæ, W. H. Pearson.
30. Contributions supplementing above, J. M. Macoun,
1894-7.
31. The following text-books will be found useful:—Gray's
Manual of Botany (5th ed. is best). Coulter's Manual
of Rocky Mountain Botany, 1885. Synoptical Flora
of N. America, Vol. I, Pt. 1, Fasc 1, 1895. Genera
of Plants of United States, Illust., Rowe, 1848. Il-
lustrated Flora of the U. S., Britton and Brown,
1896. Spotton's High School Botany.

List of Minerals of Manitoba and the Northwest analysed and
assayed by Prof. Kenrick, St. John's College, Winnipeg.

Gold Ores.—Native gold associated with quartz, feldspar
and other siliceous minerals, gold sands, auriferous
copper and iron pyrites, gold-bearing galena, arsenical
pyrites and tetrahedrite.

- Silver Ores.*—Native silver, nearly pure or alloyed with gold, silver glance, argentiferous galena, tetrahedrite and copper pyrites.
- Platinum Ores.*—Platinum associated with gold in magnetic sands.
- Mercury Ores.*—Native mercury, cinnabar.
- Copper Ores.*—Copper glance, copper pyrites, bornite, malachite, etc.
- Lead Ores.*—Galena.
- Antimony Ores.*—Antimony glance, tetrahedrites.
- Arsenic Ores.*—Arsenic pyrites, tetrahedrite.
- Zinc Ores.*—Zinc blende.
- Iron Ores.*—Magnetic iron ores, hæmatite, brown iron ore, spathic iron ore, ankerite.
- Nickel (and Cobalt) Ores.*—Magnetic pyrites.
- Manganese Ores.*—Pyrolusite, psilomelane, manganite.
- Ochres for pigments.
- Heavy spar.
- Gypsum.
- Mica for electrical purposes.
- Brine and salt deposits.
- Coal, lignite and peat.
- Limestones, dolomites, hydraulic limestones, clays, etc.
- Mineral Waters—Carbonated, alkaline, saline, hepatic, chalybeate, etc.

ENTOMOLOGY.

- A. W. Hanham, Winnipeg—Papers on the Lepidoptera, in the following Journals :—“Canadian Entomologist,” Vols. 27, 28, 29, 31. Do., do., in same journal, Vol. 30, Collecting at Bloom and at Light.
- Articles descriptive of N. W. Lepidoptera, by Mr. Hanham and others have also appeared in “Entomological News,” Philadelphia, Vol. IX., 1898, in Trans. Amer. Entom. Soc., 1899, and in the Journal of New York, Entom. Soc. Journ., 1898.
- G. Chagnon, in “Le Naturaliste” (Chicoutimi), 1896-7, gives a list of Manitoba Coleoptera.
- E. F. Heath, on Lepidoptera, in “Canadian Entomologist,” Vols. 27-31.

The above are all local collectors.

Dr. Jas. Fletcher, Ottawa Exper. Farm—Reports and magaz. monographs, too numerous to specify, upon various orders and genera.

General Works—likely to be useful to students in N. West : Kirby & Spence ; A. B. Packard—"Guide to the Study of Insects," and "Entomology for Beginners." Y. H. Comstock—"Introduction to Entomology." A. V. Riley—Directions for Collecting and Preserving Insects (Smithsonian Instit.). S. H. Scudder—"Butterflies of Eastern U.S. and Canada." W. J. Holland—"The Butterfly Book."

ICTHYOLOGY.

Canadian Fishes, especially Ontario. H. B. Small, Montreal, 1890.

Papers at London and Chicago Fisheries Exhibits. L. J. Joncas.

Papers—Canadian Institute and Royal Soc. of Canada, Prof. R. Ramsay Wright, Toronto.

Compilation on the Freshwater Fishes of Canada. J. A. Montpetit, Montreal.

Land-Locked Salmon, E. D. T. Chambers, Quebec.

MAMMALIA, ETC.

"Fauna Boreali-Americanus." 1831.

Reports of Palliser Expedition.

Report of Dawson Expedition.

Geological Survey Reports.

J. Macoun's "Manitoba and the Great N. West."

Manitoba Hist. and Scientific Soc., Transaction No. Thompson's "Mammals of Manitoba."

ORNITHOLOGY.

Richardson's "Fauna, etc." See above.

Notes on Birds Collected in the Interior of British America.

"The Ibis," 1861-2.

- Donald Gunn (Smithsonian Inst. Report), "An Egging Expedition to Shoal Lake."
- Mgr. Taché—List of Birds, 1870.
- Elliott Coues—Birds of Northwest, 1874. Report of Trip along 49 deg. to parallel, 1878.
- Dr. G. M. Dawson—Report 49th Parallel, List, 1875.
- J. Macoun—Ornithological Notes. List 109 species, 1881.
List in "Manitoba and Great Northwest, 235 species, 1882.
- Miller Christie—"Zoologist," Notes on Manitoba Birds, 1885.
- E. E. Thompson—Birds of Manitoba, pub. by Smithsonian Institute, 1891.
- G. E. Atkinson—Game Birds of Manitoba, Manitoba Birds of Prey. (Transactions of Hist. and Scientific Soc., Nos. — and 53).
-



506.712

TRANSACTION No. 56

JANUARY 25TH, 1900

The Historical and Scientific Society of Manitoba

On the St. Paul Trail in the Sixties

BY

W. G. FONSECA

A MEMBER OF THE SOCIETY

WINNIPEG:

MANITOBA FREE PRESS COMPANY

1900

On the St. Paul Trail in the Sixties

(Biographical Note.—Mr. W. G. Fonseca, the writer of the following paper, is a pioneer of the old Red River days. A native of Santa Croix, he was attracted to St. Paul, Minn., many years ago, and seeking new scenes, found his way to Red River Settlement in 1859. Here he engaged in business, married one of the Logan family, and settled on Point Douglas, now a part of the City of Winnipeg. Mr. Fonseca has ever been a public-minded citizen, and this paper is a reminiscence of the cart-trail from Fort Garry to St. Cloud, or St. Paul, and return in the days when Winnipeg had not yet come into existence.)

The following paper was read in the City Hall, Winnipeg, and before the Historical Society, on the evening of Jan. 25th, 1900, in the absence of the writer through sickness, by Mr. K. N. L. Macdonald, a Vice-President of the Society.

“*Tempora mutantur*” comes to the writer’s lips as he sees to-day the railways running over the prairies, parallel to the ruts of the Red River cart, and thinks of the slowness and difficulty of travel mingled with a strange romance and interest attaching to the trail and its primitive life, as compared with the present hurry, bustle, and commonplace of the puffing engine and the Pullman car.

One such journey comes to the writer’s mind, surrounded with more incident than others on which the writer crossed the plains. While in those days supplies still came by way of York Factory, brought by the Hudson’s Bay Company’s ship from Britain, and were carried by bands of hardy voyageurs in York boats by way of lake, river and portage, in the early sixties of the century the cart route over the prairie to St. Paul, Minnesota, was largely availed of by the Red River settlers. The Red River cart—aptly called the “prairie schooner”—took out loads of fur for the Hudson’s Bay Company to St. Paul, and came back laden with supplies for the Company or for the settlers.

BEFORE STARTING.

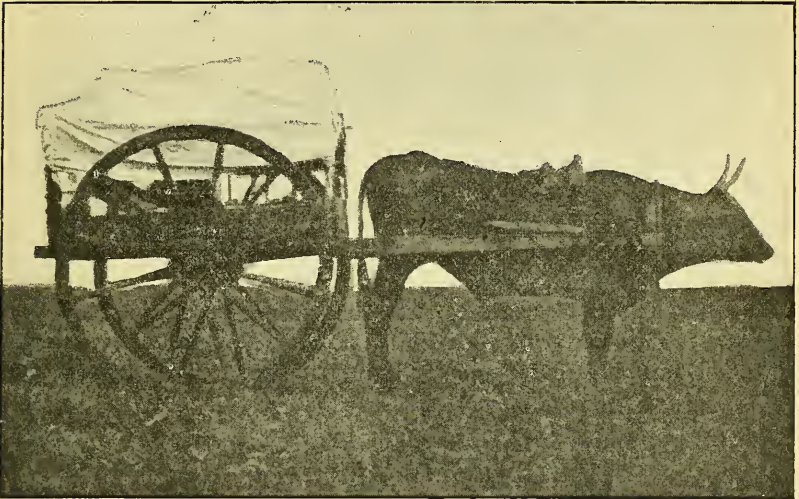
For company and safety many carts went on the same expedition and for days before the start all was activity. As

the trip extended over six or eight weeks, it was necessary to be well provided with food. The fare was simple but substantial. Flour, strong black tea and sugar were the staples, and the well-known pemmican. Pemmican is now a thing of the past, but was the sheet anchor of the Red River voyageur. Obtained by the buffalo hunters on their buffalo hunts, the flesh of the buffalo was cut up into slices, dried and beaten or flailed into powder; it was then packed in bags of raw hide, into which hot boiling fat and marrow of the buffalo carcass was poured. Thus it became air proof, and without salt or any preservative, the bag closely sewed up, could be thus kept for years. A finer sort of this article, called "berry pemmican," was made by mixing the flesh with the berries of the abundant saskatoon, or service berry (*Amelanchier Canadensis*). This was considered a delicacy. While some, like the late Bishop McLean, did not appreciate pemmican, he having declared before an audience of notables in London, that eating pemmican was to him like chewing a tallow candle, yet this important staple, worth thousands of pounds a year to the prairie travellers, was so important that the Hudson's Bay Company could not have carried on its wide and extensive enterprises without it. Supplies for the inner man having been provided, the axe, saw, drawknife, auger and square, needles to sew harness and moccasins are not forgotten, as well as a supply of material for harness. This was of two kinds. First, the "shagganappe," or prairie cordage, made by cutting the buffalo hide into narrow strips, from one-half to an inch in width; and second, the "babiche," or narrow strips cut from the deer skin and taking the place of twine. In addition sinews from the back of the buffalo were shredded and spun into what might be called prairie thread. All these have disappeared with the buffalo.

THE RED RIVER CART.

The object of greatest interest in the Red River trippers' outfit was the Red River cart. Made of tough, well-seasoned wood without a particle of iron about it, it was a marvel of mechanism. It consisted of two rough shafts, called by the settlers trams, twelve feet long, worked out of oak, and with cross-pieces firmly morticed into them. The two outer ones, being about six feet apart, form the foundation. Holes are

bored into the upper surface of the trams and two railed pieces are correspondingly bored and fitted upon the rails. Boards are fastened upon the three cross-pieces forming the bottom, and with tail, front and side boards fitted on the body of the cart, it is complete. The great lumbering wheels, consisting of nave, of spokes and felloes, are of oak, rough hewn. The felloes are about five inches wide, the wheel five feet high. They are very much dished, giving greater steadiness to the cart in going on a sidling road. They pass over soft



"THE PRAIRIE SCHOONER."

and swampy ground where wagon wheels would almost sink out of sight. The axle is, after the wheel, the most important part and is made of oak. The axle having to bear the weight of the heavy load, requires to be carefully made and then to be well trimmed and adjusted to prevent friction. The axle is lashed to the cart with dampened shagganappe, which shrinks, and so holds it firmly. Five or six of these axles are used up in the course of a trip. They are manufactured as they are needed on the way.

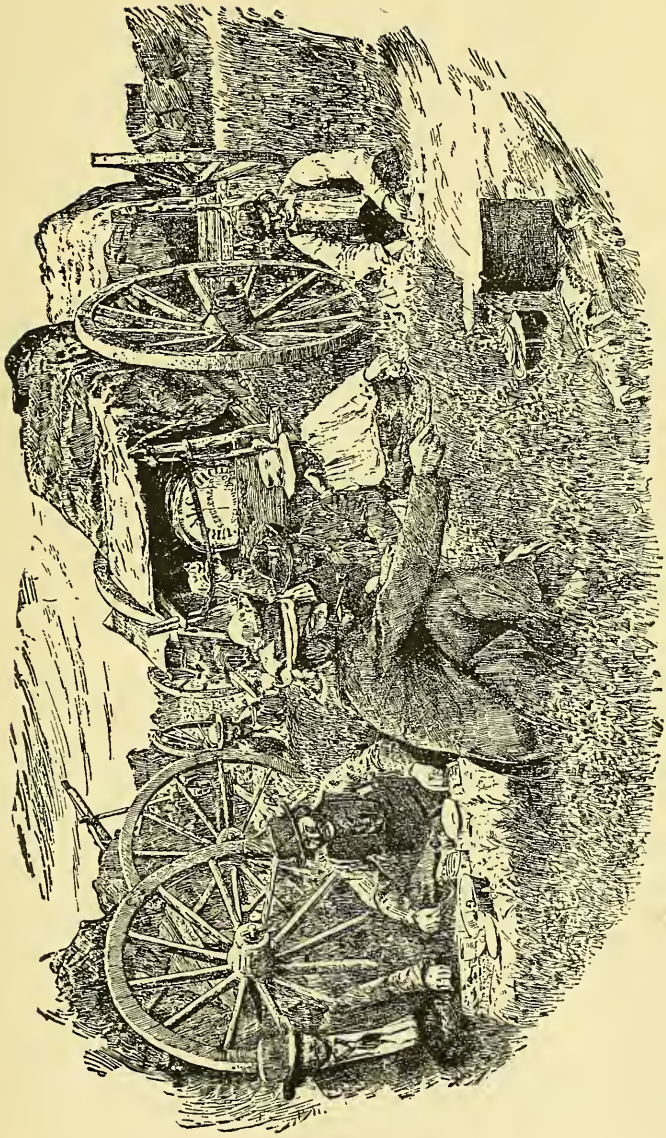
OX OR PONY.

In this cart is placed either an ox or an Indian pony. The

harness used for these is the same, consisting of the strips of buffalo hide, the shape of the collar for the ox being a little different from that of the horse, and so arranged that it will not gall the neck of its wearer. The holdback is so adjusted as to enable the beast of burden to hold back in descending a hill. The carts carry from 800 to 1,000 lbs., and require to be filled by a practised packer. Four carts are under the charge of one voyageur, and more than that number are fastened together, the leading rein of the ox or pony being tied to the tail of the cart ahead. The driver is provided with a gun and a supply of ball, powder and shot. As these are always at his hand he becomes a real Nimrod of the plains. It happens, quite often, going over prairie trails, crossing ravines or sloughs, that cart, load, or ox, may be overturned. To the greenhorn on the plains, or as the Indian calls him, "Moonias," such a disaster seems without remedy. But the skilful voyageur soon spliced his broken trams, replaced his broken railways, and this all done by the ready use of shaggonappe, so that the uninjured ox or pony was soon on his way again. The starting of the brigade of carts from Fort Garry, on the Red River, was a great event in the settlement. The first day's march did not exceed eight or ten miles, in order that the beasts of burden might not be overdone at the start.

THE CAMP.

After some hours of steady travelling, as the sun stood high in the sky, the welcome stop took place. This was made by some stream or lake. The oxen and horses let loose from their burden, bounded away to the water, into which they plunged neck deep, remaining there safe from the tormenting flies and mosquitoes, until hunger drove them to the pasture awaiting them. The voyageurs at once struck their camp. With the party were a number of women and children, and at once a fire was lit, and the kettle was soon simmering. While this was occurring the Red River bannock was in course of preparation. It was simply flour, water and salt. The dough was kneaded on a bag spread out on a buffalo skin, the cakes were flattened and baked in a frying pan over the fire, and were soon ready. When the water had boiled in the kettle, the pemmican bag was broached, a quantity of it was stirred into the boiling water, flour and salt were added, and



NATIVE CAMPING SCENE

thus resulted the celebrated "rubaboo," as it was called. When the mixture was thickened it then was called "rowseho," but for the journey the former was preferable. Hot bannocks and piping hot "rubaboo" were served around, the latter in cups, and the tea in tin cups soon began to disappear among the hungry company. The appetite stimulated by fresh air and exercise was surprising, and a dyspeptic being looking on at such a meal would turn green with envy.

A NOTABLE PARTY.

One day our midday camp was struck just beyond the crossing of the Big Salt River. We were just ready for lunch when a democrat wagon hove in sight containing a coal-black Sambo as driver, and three gentlemen. As they approached they looked long and enquiringly on the camping scene, with its grazing animals, carts, and a company of swarthy natives, in the middle of a vast prairie. On calling over on them, I found a distinguished party, consisting of Hon. Joseph Howe, Secretary of State for the Dominion of Canada, which was then talking of annexing the Red River Settlement, Mr. W. E. Sanford, of Hamilton, Ont., afterwards Senator, and Mr. William McGregor, of Windsor, since that time a member of the Canadian House of Commons.

I invited the party to lunch with me; fortunately we had bear steak, and pemmican in its two-fold messes. Curiosity, more than lunch, induced an acceptance. I carried a bottle of very old St. Croix rum, so far as I was concerned for the stomach's sake, not the palate. At the sight of the amber fluid the Hon. Mr. Howe clapped his hands, and turning to Mr. Sanford, exclaimed, "Sanford, there is corn in Egypt," which they tested heartily. This trip of Mr. Howe to Fort Garry was the one which Mr. McDougall accused him in Parliament of undertaking to prejudice the settlers against him. Mr. Howe plied me with questions touching affairs at the Settlement. The party proceeded northward, we south. Scarcely two hours had passed when the democrat returned. By an accident Mr. Sanford's gun had gone off and lodged its contents in the calf of McGregor's leg.

EN ROUTE.

Two hours was usually enough for the midday camp, but

if the day was hot a longer time was allowed. When the camp was struck the capture of oxen and ponies was always exciting. Knowing their advantage, they played a good game of hide and seek, and were coy to the advances of their masters. Sometimes to drive the refractory animals among the carts was a last resort. At such times the hot nature of the voyageur was apt to get the better of him.

When the start had taken place many an incident was sure to follow. Without bridges, ferry, or a boat, a heavily loaded train has serious difficulty in crossing streams. A heavy fall of rain may change fordable streams into booming rivers. In such cases a boat was improvised, from materials on hand. Four cart wheels were taken and placed dish upwards and the four points of contact securely fastened together. On the outer rims four pieces of wood were lashed, forming a square. Meanwhile six buffalo hides were soaked, when sufficiently soft sewed together, and spread out, upon which the frame work was placed. The edges were brought up and laced to the outer bars, one line fastened to the stern, another at the bow. A party would then swim across, carrying the bow line over; the boat was launched, and floated like a duck, with a capacity of 800 lbs. The whole transportation was accomplished, amidst a cloud of mosquitoes, sand flies, and all prairie annoyances, including mud. It was during this work one heard untranslatable language, as accident and adventure took place at the crossing.

Even when the crossing of streams was not so serious there was always the possibility of upset and disaster. Coming to the steep bank of a river to be crossed, a line was tied to the middle of the axle of the cart, and a turn of the line made around the trunk of a tree on the bank. Thus the ox and cart was led gradually down the deep decline until the water was reached. On the opposite bank corresponding arrangements were made to haul them up from the bed of the stream.

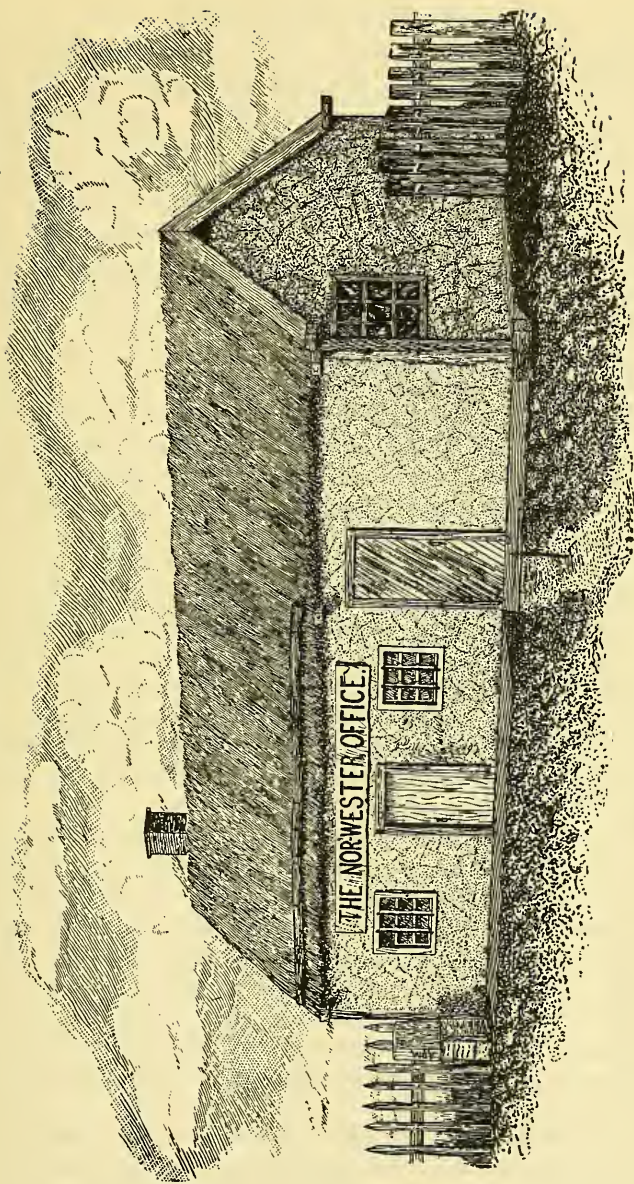
THE NIGHT CAMP.

The afternoon journey was usually continued for about twelve or fifteen miles, when the cheerful word, both to man and beast, was given to halt for the night. The cuisine was again put into operation, though the menu was somewhat changed. Instead of rubaboo, "re-chaud" was served, com-

monly corrupted "row-scho," from the Latin *re* and French *chaud*, to heat over. Pemnican cooked in a frying-pan, a little grease, pepper, salt, with a trace of onions and potatoes added, constituted this, a dish to set before a king. If the night was clear, and the moon flooded the prairie with her silver light, robes were spread. The sound of the fiddle invited the dance. The Red River jig was struck up, and one after another exercised himself to his heart's content, as the shouts of the audience stimulated him. Amidst peals of laughter and snatches of voyageurs' song dull care was forever banished from the camping ground, and you were compelled to acknowledge that the voyageur is "a fellow of infinite humor." But the best of company must part. Somnus touched the eyelids, wrapped in robes and blankets each sought to put himself at rest. The music of the spheres was rudely silenced by an appalling outburst of nasal energy, a pandemonium of discordant notes fills the air, happily "sweet oblivion" came to the most wakeful and he too may add his note to the general discord. Thus the day ended.

AN HISTORIC TRIP.

My return trip from St. Paul in 1869 happened to be one of considerable importance. Canada had acquired Rupert's Land from the Hudson's Bay Company, but the formal transfer had not been made. Hon. William Macdougall had been named as governor of the Northwest, and he had come by way of St. Paul in the autumn of 1869 to enter on his duties so soon as the formalities should be arranged. In the meantime Louis Riel, Jr., and the French half-breeds had risen in rebellion and seized the main highway along the Red River leading to Fort Garry. The story of this rebellion is beyond our scope. For years agitation against the Hudson's Bay Company had been going on in Red River. The "Nor'-Wester," the only newspaper of Red River, had been begun in 1860 by Messrs. Buckingham & Coldwell, and from this centre the spirit of dissatisfaction spread. The so-called governor was on his way. Mr. McDougall came from St. Paul through Minnesota and Dakota, along the usual trail. I had seen him and his party by the way and now the boundary line of 49° was being approached.



FIRST NEWSPAPER OFFICE OF WINNIPEG, 1860.

“LE GOUVERNEUR.”

Nearing Pembina, the governor expectant, family and suite give us the go-by. The glossy blacks cross the line ahead of us. The coming members of the to-be new government make home within the historic enclosure of the H. B. Co.'s post October 18th. On the 19th I set out, leaving the train behind. I had four passengers with me, Dr. O., D., madame and two children. Arriving opposite the house of a friendly half-breed, he signalled me to stop, beckoning with his hand. I entered his house. When he had cautiously closed the door, he enquired, seemingly with much interest, "Where are the carts?" Continuing, he said, "They have seized McKay's train at St. Norbert and are on the qui vive for yours." My train was loaded with the government household furniture and supplies. "You see, monseigneur, they think McDougall is bringing guns, powder and balls to fight the Metis. You will find a barricade across the road, all Canadians are turned back, and to-morrow twenty men will be here to turn McDougall and his men back to Canada." My democrat being covered with white cotton, would no doubt be an object of suspicion, indicating the arrival of strangers. Communicating what I had heard to the Doctor and Madame, doubt and uncertainty flitted like a cloud across their otherwise cheery countenances. We found Pembina in a state of jubilant expectancy. The war muse had inspired a composition of verses in the style of the Marseillaise, which were scattered broadcast. I secured a copy.

Next morning, the 20th, I called on Mr. McDougall. Felt it my duty to inform him what had been communicated me. Handed the martial verses to him in which he figured, volunteered some advice respecting the government's goods. I was quite convinced that the train would be seized. Such portion of it as carried my own goods gave me no concern. It also carried a number of trunks belonging to Captain and Mrs. Cameron. If those should share the impending fate, I feared grave consequences would ensue, which were afterwards realized.

I supposed that I had made my report to a sensible and judicious gentleman, but was egregiously mistaken, as the sequel will show. In my good offices the governor-expectant interpreted treachery, as stated in one of his North-West re-

ports; he writes: "The person in charge of the government train called upon me and gave me such information as convinces me that if he is not in the pay, he is in the confidence of the insurgents." Mr. McDougall rose from his seat, drew himself up to his full height and struck an imposing attitude, as with outstretched arm and rigid finger, he ordered the train to proceed on the Queen's highway, declaring that he would see that no half-breed dare molest it. That was the last he ever saw of the train or its elegant freight. The melodrama of the Big I and Little U ended, I bowed myself out, regretting "Love's Labor Lost."

THE OBSTACLE.

In rolled the carts, thirty-six in number. The men were anxious to get home, it being very late in the season, especially Modeste Lagimodière, a cousin of the late Louis Riel. Before leaving Pembina I secured a cap, capote, belt and a pair of moccasins for future emergency, should it arise. This day, the 20th, we were to meet twenty armed men. Upon Mr. McDougall's arrival at the Hudson's Bay Company's post, Mr. Provencher was despatched to Fort Garry to prepare the way for the governmental party. But he was not allowed to pass the barricade. Captain Cameron being an officer of Her Majesty's Royal Artillery, supposing that he would meet with no opposition, although advised not to proceed until there was an assurance of success, set out. The barricade was guarded by a strong band of armed men. Jehu-like, the captain drove his chariot against the obstruction as though he would crush all opposition in his way, but, unfortunately, it stood the shock. Angered at this humiliation, the order rang out, "Remove that blasted fence," which has since passed into a proverb. French admiration of gallantry found expression on the other side of the barricade. Inexorable, however, are the orders. The captain, unharmed, is turned from the promised land, but the agents of the audacious Riel are as deaf to threats as to reason. Resistance would amount to foolhardiness. The man Lucien, one of the guards, is a Hercules. His enormous strength is irresistible. I saw him, when on a return trip from St. Paul, place a barrel of alcohol, containing forty gallons, on his shoulder without assistance, cross a submerged bridge when the pathway of logs were afloat on

the stringers, requiring prodigious strength, and repeat the feat six times.

A THIN DISGUISE.

In the meanwhile we bade adieu to Pembina, and we were on our way to the barricade. The order of march was as follows : First, the white covered democrat, next a Red River cart carrying our camping outfit, driven by a halfbreed boy ; a saddled pony followed. Being on the lookout, when about twelve miles from Pembina, I discovered a dark line away on the horizon, and as I felt sure there were the twenty men on their way to give Mr. McDongall a surprise, I ordered a halt. Then looking the doctor full in the face, I said, "There they come !" A quiver passed over his features. Madame's cheeks blanched slightly. I confess I felt some concern myself. I gave the doctor to understand we had no time to lose. Pointing in the direction they were coming, "See, the cavalcade is advancing rapidly ; we are already observed !" The reflection of our white covered vehicle cannot escape those keensighted hunters even at this distance. "What is to be done ?" inquired the doctor. "Be sure you throw off all reserve, be friendly, shake each heartily—"by the collar," interrupted the doctor. "This is no time for jokes, sir ; action, action. I am sorry to announce that your much-cherished Dundrearys must be sacrificed to the god of necessity." This was a stunning blow. They were to be envied. Requesting him to step out, madame handed me a pair of dull scissors. Those black, wavy, silken, flowing, magnificent whiskers, the pride of manhood, the object of careful shaping and culture, the flag nature had stuck to the mast, had now to be lowered. The tonsorial operation began, and perceptibly a moisture gathered in the corners of the victim's eyes. Was it want of skill, or an altered presence ? Sentimentalism just now, however, was out of place. The horsemen are approaching. The capote is brought into requisition. It fits well. Cap, belt and moccasins are all arranged. The metamorphosis is complete. It was then arranged that the doctor would drive the cart, the boy ride the pony, and I manage the democrat—so we proceeded to meet the rapidly approaching band. They deployed across the road, and in less than one-half hour our progress

was arrested, we were face to face with a squad of twenty armed and well-mounted men.

THE BRIGANDS.

They presented an imposing scene on the lonely prairie. I recognized Le Pierrie, Pierre Lavallee and others, all picked men. Alighting from the democrat, the transformed son of Aesculapius doing the same, I met with a gracious reception, which was acknowledged by the process of clasping and shaking twenty hands. As I approached, each man lifted his cap. There is an innate characteristic politeness about these Metis which the rude nomadic life they lead cannot eradicate.

In the intensity of my exertion I gave the metamorphosed gentleman a side glance, and was gratified to find him throwing heart and soul into his shake.

As soon as opportunity offered, I asked : "Where are you going, gentlemen ?" "To Pembina." "You must be on very important business." "Yes. Sent by the provisional government to turn Mr. McDougall and company back." "At this season ? Impossible ! He has women and children with him." "Such are our orders." "Before doing so, ask him to explain his position." "Very well—but our orders are strict." The distinguished manners of the doctor and his home-like appearance attracted considerable attention. Lavallee rode up to me, and exhibiting a rare delicacy, bending low down, asked in almost a whisper, "Who is this gentleman ?" "A friend I am taking to the settlement. He is a good doctor and will be useful to us. Do you think, Mons. Lavallee, I can pass him and family through ?" "Oui, oui, Mons. Riel is very particular." "Prenez garde," cautioned the captain of cavalry. "Pickets are posted along the line of road, you will not see them, but you will be seen."

The restiveness of their well fed steeds broke off further interview. Bowing adieux, amidst the goodwill expressed, bon voyage from twenty voices, which we heartily echoed back, their horses bounded away under the stimulating effects of whip and spur. A short time placed the cabaleros beyond hearing. We mutually congratulated each other, upon the safe crossing of Rubicon number one. Madame insisted that to her presence success was due. The doctor was equally positive that his equipment was all potent. What of

myself ? I meekly nodded assent to Madame's views, and expressed a hope that the inspiration, from whatever source, would see us through.

Towards evening the dreaded barricade hove in sight, which we found, by close inspection, was guarded by about 150 armed men. That formidable obstruction, "That Blasted Fence," that closed sesame which had defied entrance to a gallant officer and a plenipotentiary, and had so far kept Canada out in the cold ! Could we have hoped that these poles would yield to any charms we might possess ?

INTO DANGER—AND OUT.

Approaching the obstruction with less address than had been done by others in the face of Riel's swarthy soldiers, we were immediately surrounded. Then began a second enactment of hand-shaking and a general fraternizing, during which the doctor achieved a brilliant triumph. An aged veteran, Captain Landry, approached, demanded where we were going ; we having respectfully asked to be allowed to pass, the bars were immediately set aside and we were on the other side of Jordan. Bowing our thanks, a movement was made forward. The veteran instantly waved his sword, which intimated "not so fast," strangers were not allowed to go unchallenged. Was "Paradise lost ?" Captain Landry explained in polite French that the provincial government, which assembled at St. Norbert, compelled to take us for examination. If I had not been present the party would have been turned back. A guard stepped forward, took hold of the bridle, led the way down a narrow avenue flanked on each side by tall poplars. We should have seen something romantic in the surroundings under different circumstances. To add to the gloom which had begun to overshadow us, a cold, cheerless rain began to fall ; the air became chilly and raw, there was a dismal look about things.

The gloom was instantly dispelled on reaching the rectory. Father Ritchot, a burly, brusque gentleman, a Chesterfield in manners, received us most graciously, and we were treated to an excellent tea. In due time we reached Fort Garry and home.

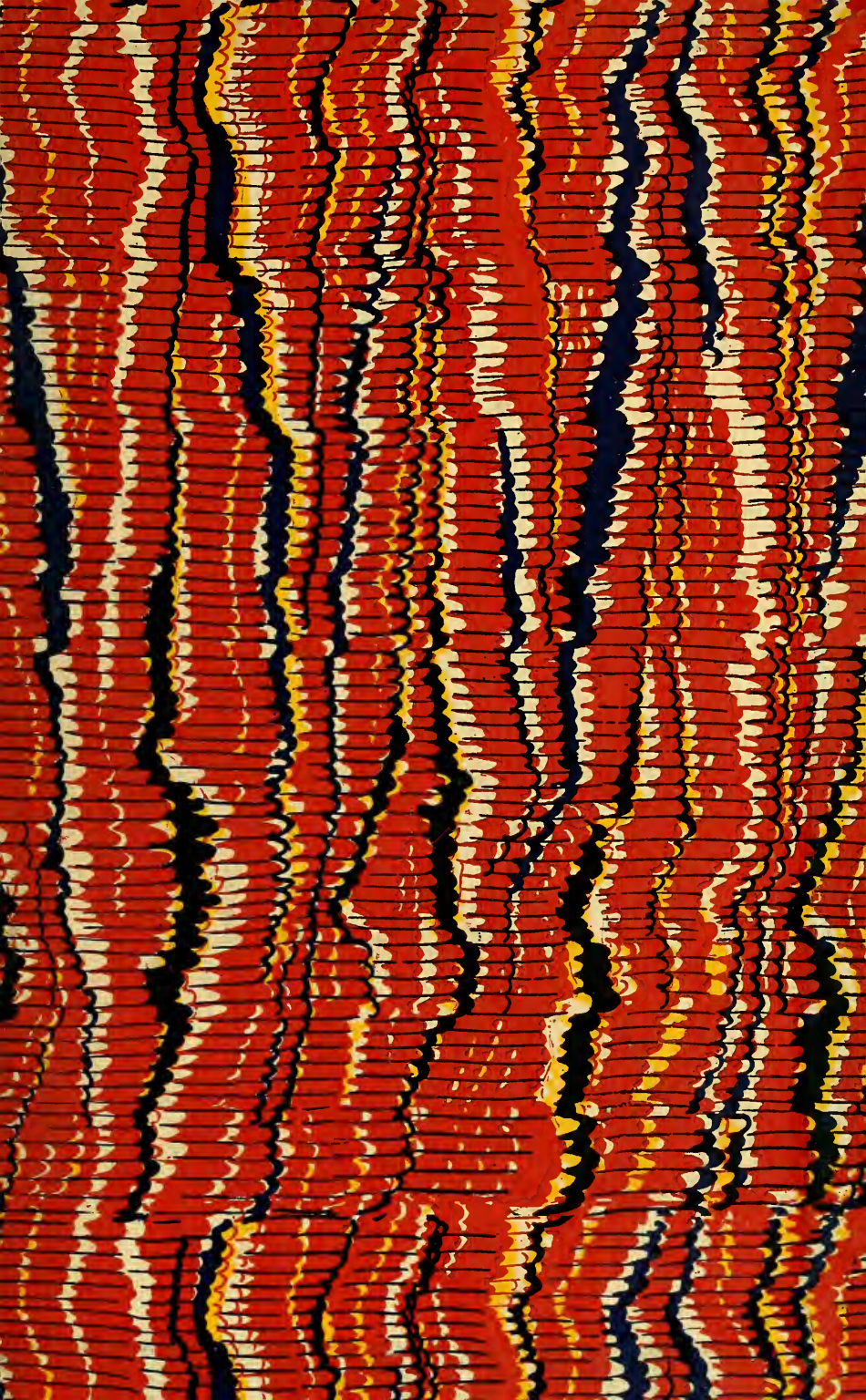
A cordial vote of thanks to Mr. Fonseca was moved by Dr. Bryce, seconded by W. J. McLean and unanimously carried. After other business the meeting adjourned.



Graham







SMITHSONIAN INSTITUTION LIBRARIES



3 9088 01299 3101